Melusine.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVIII.

1895.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
Comment guion et ses gens
disconsuient les galeses des
savazes suy niev et dom
Melusine.

Compiled (1322-1324 A.D.) by

JEAN D'ARRAS

Englisht about 1500.

Edited from a unique manuscript
in
the library of the British Museum
by
A. K. Donald.

Part I.
Text, Notes, and Glossary.

London:
Published for the Early English Text Society
by Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co.,
Paternoster House, Charing-Cross Road.
1895.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proem</th>
<th>Cap. I. How Melusyne &amp; her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to comm to the Feste that he made of hys sone</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. III. How a forester came to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruyllous wildbore that euer was sen before</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn with hym</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vncle</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. VI. How Raymondyn came to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladyes with her</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. VII. How Raymonديد, by the couseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttere</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong Erle demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert and how he bought it</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned came and deluyed to Raymondyn his yefte</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers &amp; retourned toward his lady</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider / ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 52
Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner / ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 54
Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 54
Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne laye ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 56
Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladies, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of Melusyne / ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 58
Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of them ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 107
Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of theire moder Melusyne and entred theire ship / ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 114
Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 143
Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came byfore the kinge, he beying in his bed syke ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 151
Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 157
Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kynge of Assay tofore lucembourgh / and how he was take ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 201
Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Assay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 204
Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Assay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourgh to Counseylle ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 211
Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourgh / ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 214
Cap. XXIX. How the kyng of behayne sent a messager toward the king of Assay his brother / ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 215
Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost ... ... ... ... 218
Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco didde do take the body of kynge Federyke that he had slayn and commanded it to be brent ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 227
Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slayn in bataylle ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 232
Cap. XXXIII. How the kyng Zelodius & the other Saraeons were brest and bruyled ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 233
Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kynge Federyk of behayne ... ... ... ... ... ... 235
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE OF CONTENTS.</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cap XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglantyne, daughter to the kyng of Behayne</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes &amp; esquyers jousted after dyner</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the gaunt, in garande</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayllezes, by consentement of hys fader &amp; moder</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymondin cam in garande toward geffray</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete tooth fyred thabbe of Mayllezes, &amp; brent bothe thabbot &amp; al the monkes there</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her lord, wyted her</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn &amp; Melusyne felle bothe in a swoune</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament /</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete tooth ran ayenst the gaunt &amp; ouerthrow hym within hys spere</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. L. How the gaunt fled &amp; Geffray folowed hym</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. LI. How Geffray went &amp; entred into the hoH for to fyght with the gaunt</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. LII. How Geffray foude the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the gaunt kept in pryson</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the gaunt deed vpon a Charyott</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cap.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LV.</td>
<td>How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncl</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI.</td>
<td>How Geffray went to Lusynen toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII.</td>
<td>How Raymmondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys synnes to hym</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII.</td>
<td>How Geffray went to Romme &amp; confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIX.</td>
<td>How Geffray reedyfyyed the monastery of Maylleses</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX.</td>
<td>How the king of Armanye watched the sperhauk</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXI.</td>
<td>How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXII.</td>
<td>How the king was bete &amp; ouerthrawen and knew not of whom</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes and Illustrations | 373 |
List of Proverbs in the Romance of Melusine | 387 |
Glossary | 389 |
Index of Proper Names (Persons) | 401 |
Index of Proper Names (Places) | 407 |
Melusine.

[A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe, compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated to the Duke of Berry and Aauergne, and translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of Frenche into Englishe.]

In the begynnyng of all werkes / men oughten first of alle to calle the name of the creatour of all Creatures, whiche is very & trew maister of alle things made & to be made, that oughten somwhat to entende to perfection of wele. Therfore att the begynnyng of this present historye / though that I ne be not worthy for to requyre hym / besche ryght deuoutly his right highe & worthy mageste / that this present history he wyl helpe me to bring unto a good ende / & to fuldoo it att hys glorie & praysynge. And to the plaisire of my right high, mighti, and doubltid lord Ihohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duue of Berry & of Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after the veray & true Cronykles, whiche I haue had of hym and of the Erle of Salesbury in England, & many other bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to accomplyssh hit. And bycause that his noble sustir Marye, doughtir to the kyng Iohanue of Fraunce, duchesse of Bar, had requyred my said lord for to haue the said historye / the whiche in fauour of her hath doon as moche to his power as he might, to serche the very

1 This title is added in xviith cent, handwriting.
Melusine was written in 1387.

Melusine was written IX 1387.

and was commenced on St. Clement's Day, Nov. 23, 1387.

at the command of her brother John, Duke of Berry and Auvergne,

trouth & true historye / and hath commanded me for to do drawe alle alonge thstory whiche herafter foloweth /. And I as of herte dyligent / of my pouere witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth 4 of hys graceyoues commandement. Wherfore I humbly & decently beseech & pray to my Creatour, that my said lord wil take it in gree / and also all them that schall rede or here it / that they wil pardonne me yf I 8 haue said eny thinges that ben not to theire good gree. Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the Wens-day, saynt Clementis day in Wynter, the yere of our lord Ml. ccc. lxxx. viij. beseching alle them that shaH 12 rede, or here it redde, that they wil pardonne me my fawte, yf their be eny. fior certaynly I haue composed it the moost justly that I coude or haue mowe, aftir the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to 16 be trew.

* * * * * * * * *

Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst /

1 fol. 2.

David said that the judgments of God are un-fathomable.
It is foolish, therefore, not to believe that marvellous things are true,

for the Creature cannot comprehend the designs of God.

And the prophete saith, that the Juggements and the punyshinges of god ben as abysmes without bottom & without ryuage. And he is not wyse that suche thinges supposeth to comprehende in his wit / & weneth that the meruaylles that ben throug the universall world, may nat be true, as it is said of the things that men calle ffayrees / and as it is of many other things wherof we may not haue the knowleche of alle 28 them. Now themne the Creature ought nat therefor for to trauelle, by outrageous presumyng to knowe & to comprehende in his wit & ynderstanding the Ingements of god / but men oughten / thinkyng / to be meruaylled 32 of hym / and meruaylling / to considere / how they may
Men should rather think how worthily to praise him.

Reasonable creatures

should believe what is seen,

and should give credence to travellers

who see many marvells.

Adam alone had perfect knowledge;

but the author daily learns more and more,

and tells what he has seen, that his history may be believed.

1 fol. 25.

Believe Travellers' Reports of Marvels.

worthily & devoutly praye and glorify hym that Ingith so, and ordeynith suche things after hys pleasure & wille without any gaynseying.

The creature of god that is rasonable, oughte moche besily to understande aftir the sayeng of Aristote, that the pynges which he hath made & creatid here bynethe, by the presence pat they haue in themself, certyfyen to be suche as they are / As sayet paule seyth in theepistle that he made to the Rommaines / sayeng in this manere / that the thinges that he hath doon, shalbe knowne & seen by the Creatures of the world / that is to wete, by the men that can rede & adiounst eyth to pactoures whiche haue ben byfore vs / as to wete & knowe the landes, the provinces & the strange Countrees. and to haue ouerseen & vysyted the dyuere Roycames / haue founde so many of dyuere meruaylles aftir common exstimacion, that thumayn understanding is constrained of god / that soo as he is without ryuage & without bottom / soo are the thinges meruayllous & wounderfull in many dyuere landes. aftir their dyuere nature / that saaf theirre Inggement. I suppose that neuer no man / but only Adam. hadd parfytt knowlege of the thinges Inuysible or that may not be seen. Wherfore I me bethink fro day to day to proufytte in science, & to here & see many thinges / which men suposen not to be true. the which, yt they be trew / I putte them fourth into this termes byfore you / to thende the grette meruaylles that ben conteyned in this present hystory may be blyued. Wherfore I think to treate to the playoure of god / and after the commandement of my said right mighty lord. /

Late vs now leve the Auctoures with peas / and retourne we to that we haue herde say and telle of our auncyent and olde tyme / and that this day we haue herde say what in the land of Poitou was seen in Poitou.
OF GOBLINS AND FAIRIES IN POITOU, [CH. 1.

dede / for to couloure 1 our hystory to be trew / as we hold hit soo / and for to shew & publysshe it throug the true Cronykles / as we suppose to doo /.

We haue therefor here say and telle of our auncyents, 4 that in many partes of the sayd lande of Poytow haue ben shewed vnto many oon right famylerly many man-nyeres of things / the whiche somme called Gobelyns / the other fayrees, and the other 'bonnes dames' or good 8 ladyes / and they goo by nyght tyme and entre within the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore / and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of theire cradelles. and somtyme they tourne them out of 12 theyre wit / and somtyme they brene & roste them before pe fyre / and when they departe fro them, they leue hem as hoole as they were byfore / and somme gyne grette happe & ffortune in this world. And yet haue 16 I herd say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipful & of credence, that somme other fauntayses appyeren by nyght tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of wmen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body / 20 whiche dide scoure pannes & potts, and dide suche things as a mayde or seruaunt oughte to doo / lyberaly & without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith for certayn, that in his tyme he had a frend that was 24 auncyent & olo, whiche recounted for trouth / that in hys dayes he had seen many tymes suche things. and saith yet the said Geruayse, that the sayd fayrees toke somtyme the fourme & the fygure of fayre & 28 yonge wmen / of whiche many men haue had som doughtirs, and haue take to theire wyues by meanes of som cenenautes or promysses that they made them to swere vnto them / the som / that they shuld neuer see 32 eche other / on the satirday / and that by no maner wyse they shuld nat enquer where they were by-comme / the other / that yt they had eny children /

1 Fr. contouer.
that there husbands shuld neuer see them in theyr child bede / And as long as they kept theyre couenauntas they had good fortune and were ever in pros-
4 peryte / but assone as they fayll'yed of theyr promysses or couenauntes they fell down fro 1 theyr good happ & fortune / and affir these thinges so happed to have broken theyr couenauntes / the other were conuerted & 8 tourned into serpentes. And yet more sayth the 2 said Gervaye, that he blyueth this to be permytted & doon for som mysedede that were done ayenst the playsure of god / wherfore he punysshed them so secretly & so 12 wounderly wherof none hath parfytye knowlge / but alone ly he / and they may be therefore called the secrets of god, abysmes without ryuage and without bottom / For none knoweth nothing perfyttly to the 16 regarde of hym / how be it that sometyme of his pro-
ymysion ben many thinges knowne / not only of oon / but of many other. It is seen often whan a man hath yssued out of hys countre / and hath seen many 20 wounder & meruyllous thynges whiche he neuer wold haue bylueed hit by here sayeng, without he had hadd the sight of hit / but as for me that haue nat walked ferre, I haue seen somme thinges that many oon shuld 24 nat blyuen without they sawe it. With this seyth the said Gervaye, & setteth fourth an ensample of a knyght, named Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the province of Asy / the whiche knight by aventure on an 28 euen founde oon of the fayree in a medowe / and wold haue had her to his wyf / and in dede she assentid to hit / by suche couenaunce that neuer he shuld see her naked / and were longe togider / and the knight grew 32 & wexed prosperus fro day to day. It happed long tyme after that / that he wold haue seen the said Nymphe naked / as he dede / in so moche that the said nymphe putte her heed in to a watre and was

1 MS. has 'for.'
and his wife was changed into a serpent, whiche was neuer seen after that / And the knyght fro day to day waxed pouere and deelyned from his prosperyte. As for prouerbes & exemples I wil none bryng more vnto you / and 4 that / that I haue doon / it was bycause yet I suppose to treate how the noble ffortresse or Castell of Lusyg-ningen was bylded & made of a woman of the fayree, and the manyere how / after the juste & true cronycle / 8 without to applye ne adiouste to it nonething / but that it be approued Iuste & trew, and of the propre or owne matere / And ye shall here me spek & say of the noble lynee whiche yssued of the said woman / that shall 12 regne for euer vnto thend of the world / aftir that it appiereth that it hath euer regned vnto this tyme present. But bycause that I byganne first to treate of the fayree / I shall telle you how & of whens cam 16 the said woman whiche bilded the noble ffortress of Lusygen, beforsayd./

Hereafter folowen the names of the estates of the children whiche yssued of Melusyne, and were 20 bygoten of Raymondyn in wedlok. And first yssued kyng Uryan, whiche regned in Cypre. Aftir hym cam King Guyon, which regned myghtily in Armenye. Item, King Regnal, whiche regned right myghtily 24 in Behaygne. Item, Anthony that was duc of Luce-mbourgh. Item, Raymond that was Erie of fforest. Item, Geffray with the grette toth, that was lord of Lusygenyn. Item, there yssued also theodoryk, which 28 was lord of Partenay. Item, sfoymonde, that was monke into thabbe of Mailliees,2 the whiche Geffray with the grette toth brent the said Abbey, & thabbot also with an hundred religyous or monkes./

It is true that there was somtyme in Albany3 a kynge that was moche worthy & valyaunt / And as sayth thystory / he had of hys wyf many children /

1 fol. 3b.

The children of Melusine and Raymondin were

Uryan, King of Cyprus; Guyon, King of Armenia; Raymond, King of Bohemia; Anthony, Duke of Luxembourg; Raymond, Earl of Forest; Geoffrey, of Lusignen; Theodoric, of Partenay; Froment, of Maillieres.

Once upon a time, in Albany, lived a brave King

2 Fr. Maillieres.

3 Fr. Albanie.
& that Mathas whiche was fader to filorymond was hys first sone / and this kinge had to name Elynas, and was right worthy & mighty knight of his land. / 4 And it happed that after the deceas of his first wyf / as he chaced in a forest nighe to the see, in the which forest was a moche fayre fontaynne / that sodaynly he had so grett athurst / that as constreyned he tourned 8 & yede toward the said fontaynne. And whan he approuched to the said fontaynne / he herde a voyce that songe so melodiously & so swete / that he suposed none other / but it had the voyce of an Angel / but soone after 12 he knewe that hit was the voyce of a woman. Themne descendid he & alyghted fro hys hors to thende he shuld not make gret affray / and walked fayre & softly toward the fontayn in the most covered wyse that he 16 coude. And whan he camme nygh to the fontayne / he sawe there the fayrest lady that euer he the dayes of hys lyf had seen to his aduys or semynge. Themne he stode styl al abasshed of the grett beaulte that he 20 perceyued in the same ladye, which euer songe so melodiously and so swete. And thus he stood styl / asmoche for the bewte of the ladye / as for to here her swette & playsaunt voyce / and hyd hym in the best 24 wyse that he coude vnder the leveis of the trees / to thende that the said lady shuld not perceyue hym / & forgate all the chasse and grett thurst that he had afore. And byganne to think on the songe & on the beaulte of the lady. In so moche that he was as ranysshed & knew nat yf it was daylight or nyght, ne yf he slept or wakned. /

Thus as ye shall now here was kynge helynas so abused / aswel of the right swete songe / as of the bewte of the said lady that he ne wyst whether he slept or waked, For euer styl she songe so melodiously that it was a swete & melodyous thing to here / Thenne

1 'honstreyned' in MS.
KING ELYNAS MAKES LOVE TO PRESSYNE. [CH. I.

the kynge Elynas was so rauysshed & abused\(^1\) that he remembered of nothinge worldly / but aloneyl that he her\(^2\) & sawe the said lady, and abode there long tyme. Thanne camme rannyng toward him two of hys houndis \(^4\) whiche made to hym grett feste,\(^2\) and he lept & mevyd hym as a man wakyng from slep / and thenne he remembered of the chasse, and had of new so grett athurst / that without hanyng aduys ne mesure he yede 8 fourth vpon the rynage of the fountaynne, and toke the basyn which heng therby & drank of the watre. And thenne he beheld the said lady whiche had lefte her songe & salued\(^3\) her right humbly / beryng vnto her 12 the gretest honounr & reverence that he might. Thanne she that coude & wyst moche of wele & of honour, rendred to hym his salutacion right graciously, 'Lady,' said Elynas, the kinge / of your curtoysye be 16 nat you dyspleased yf I requyre of you to knowe of your estate / of your beyng & what ye are / For the cause that mouthe me therto is suche / as now I shall reherse to you. Right dere lady vouche ye saaf to 20 wete & knowe that I can & know\(^4\) so moche of the beyng of this countree, that there nys within this foure or fyue myle neyther Castel ne flortres, but \(\text{pat I knowe / except that same fro whens I departed this 24 day by the mornyng\(^6\), whichie is two myle hens or thera-}
aboute. Nor there nys neyther lord ne lady within this Countrey but that I knowe them wel, and therfore gretly I mervaylle & wounderly am abasshed, fro whens 28 may be suche a fayr and so gent a lady as ye be / so exempt & vnpurveyed of felawship. and for godis loye pardonne me / For grette outrage is to me to demande of you therof / but the grette desire & good wylle that 32 my herte bereth toward your graciously persone, hath caused hardyynes with in me for to doo it.'/

\(^1\) Fr. *abusé.* \(^2\) Fr. *feste.* \(^3\) Fr. *salua.* \(^4\) Fr. *censay et connois.*
Sire Knight,' said the lady / 'there is none outrage /
but it commeth to you of grette curtoysye &
honour. And nowe you, sire knight, that I shall not
be longe alone when it shall playse me / but from me
I haue sent my seruaunts, while bat I dysported me.'
Thenne cam fourth to\(^2\) that won\(^{3}\) oon of her seruaunts,
wel arayed, whiche rode on a fayre Courser, and att his
8 right hand led\(^{+}\) a palfroy so richely enharnashed\(^3\) that
the kyng Elynas was moche abasshed of\(^{4}\) the grette
richesse & noble aray thate was about the said palfray.
Thanne said the seruant to his lady: 'Madame, it is
12 tyme when it shall playse you to comme.' And she
fourthwith said to the kinge: 'Sire knight, god be
with you, and gramecy of your curtoysye.' thenne she
went toward the palfray / and the kinge hyed hym,
16 & helped to sette her on horsbak moche prately.\(^5\)
And she thanked hym moche of hit, and departid /.
And the kyng yede to his hors, and lept on his bake.
thanne camme hys mency, whiche sought hym, and
20 sayd that they had taken the herte. And the king
said to them / 'that playseth me.' Thenne he byganne
to thinke on the beaute of the said lady, and so moche
he was surprysed of her lone, that he ne wyst what
24 contenauance or manyere he shuld hold / and said to
his meyne / 'goo you alle before / and I shall folow
you soone.' They yede at hys commandeinent their
way / and wel they perceyued & knew that he had
28 found som thinge / And the king hastily tourned his
hors, & toke the way that the said lady had ytaken / &
folowed her.

Thystory recounteth to vs, that so long folowed the
32 kinge Elynas the lady, that he found her in a
forest, where as were many trees high & strayt / and
[it] was in the season that the tyme\(^6\) is swete &

---

\(^1\) Fr. à.  \(^2\) Fr. enharnacié.  \(^3\) Fr. de.
\(^4\) Fr. doulcement.  \(^5\) Fr. temps.
graciously, & the place within the forest was moche
delightable. And when the lady herd the noyse
of the hors of the kynge Elynas, that rode fast, she
said to her servaunt: 'Stand we styl, and late vs abyde
this knight, For I hylyne that he cometh vnto vs for to telle to vs a part of his wille, wherof he was
nat as tofore aduyed, For we sawe hym lepe on his
hors all thoughtfull.' 'Madame,' said the servaunt / 8
'at your plaisure.' Thanne camme the kinge nigh vnto
the lady / and as he had neuer seen her before, he
salewed her, moche affrayenge, For he was so sur-
prysed of her loue that he coude nat holde conten-
auence. Thanne the lady, that knew yncouge as it
was, and that 3 she shuld comme to her entrepryse / said to hym: 'Kynge Elynas, what goost thou sechyng
after so hastily / hane I oughte borne away of thyn 16
owne?' / And when the kinge herd hym named, he
was moche abashed, For he knew nat what she was
that spak with hym / and neuertheles he anserde to
her: 'My dere lady, nought of myn owne ye withbere / but only that ye passe & goo throug my land / and it
is grett shame to me / sith that ye be a straungere, 4 that
I ne doo you to be conuayed worshipfully throug my
land / whiche I wold moche gladly doo yf I were in
place, & had tyme & space for to doo it.' Thenne
ansuerde the lady: 'Kynge Elynas, I hold you for
escused, & pray you yf ye wyl of vs none other things/
that ye lene ne lette nat your retourne for that cause.' 28
And Elynas ansuerde / 'wel other thing I seke, lady' / 'And what is it?' said she / 'telle it to me
hardlyly.' 'My right dere lady, sith that it is your
wille & plaisir for to knowe it / I shall telle it to you. 32
I desire moche more than any other thing in
the world forto haue your good lone & your good grace.'
'By my feith,' said she, 'kyng Elynas, to that haue ye

1 Fr. delectable. 2 Fr. surpris. 4 Fr. estrangère.
not faylled / yf that ye think theron but wele & honour, For neuer man shal haue my lone in hys anauntynge.' 'Ha, my dere lady, I ne think on my 4 lyf on none cas dyshoneste.' Thenne perceyued the lady pat he was esprised\(^1\) of her lone, & said to hym / 'yf ye wil take me as your wyf by mariage, and be sworne vnto me that ye shal nat see me duryng my 8 childbed, nor to payne your self in no manere of way for to loke on me att that tyme / And yf this ye wil doe & swere / I am she that shal obey to you as a wyf ought to obey her husband.' Thanne pe kinge anoone, 12 and with good wille, sware & promysed to hold that byfore is said. Without longe rehercynge they were spoused, & ledd longe a good lyf togidre. But al the land of the kinge Elynas was moche abassshed who was 16 this lady / how be it that she gouerned her wel right wysly & valiauntly. But Nathas, that was sone to the kyunge Elynas, hated her ouermoche. and [it] happed that she was at her childbed of thre doughters / the 20 whiche she had borne\(^2\)ryght graeously alle her tyme, & was deliuere of them thre at ende of ix. monethis / the first borne was named Melusigne, the second Melyor, and the iiij\(^{th}\) Palaatyne. The kyunge Elynas 24 was nat thanne present at that place, but kyunge Nathas his sone was there, and beheld hys thre sustirs, that were so fayre that it was menuylle. and thanne he went toward the kinge his fader / and thus he said to 28 hym: 'Sire / Madame, the queene Pressyne your wyf, hath made & is deliuere of thre doughtirs, the most fayre that euer were seen / comme & see them.' Thenne kinge Helynas, that remembred nat of the promyss 32 that he had made to Pressyne his wyf / sayd / 'fayre sone / so wyf I doo.' And yede aperitly\(^3\) & entred anoon wit/in the chambre whereas Pressyne bathed her thre doughtirs. and whan he saw them / he said in

---

1. *empris.*
2. *Melusigne, Melyor, and Palaatyne.*
3. *Fr. apertement.*
and greets her joyfully.

She reproaches him for breaking his promise, saying he has lost her for evermore,

but that she knows Nathas is the cause of all;

whereupon she disappears with her three daughters and is never seen again.

King Elynas is much afflicted at the loss of his wife Pressyne and his daughters,

and laments for seven years.

His people think him mad, and make Nathas their king,

whom they marry to the Lady of Ycris;  
* fol. 6.

and from the two is born Florymond,

with whom the history is not concerned.

Pressyne goes with her daughters to Avalon, or the Isle Lost,

this manere: 'god blesse the moder & the daughters,' & theke of them grette Ioye. And when pressyne herde hym, she answerde to hym, 'Fals kinge, thou hast sayd thy covenunt, wherof grette euyl shal come vnto the / and hast lost me for evermore. And wel I wot that thy sone Nathas is cause therof, & departe I must fro the light.' but yet I shall be auenged me on thy sone by my sustir & felow, my 8 lady of the yle lost.' And these things said / [she] toke her thre doughtirs & had them withher / and neuer aftir she was seen in the land /

Thystorye saith to vs, that whan the kinge had lost 12 pressyne his wyf, and his thre doughtirs, he was so wofull & so abasshed that he wyst not what he shuld doo or say. but he was by the space of seuen yere that he dede none other thing, but compleyned 16 & sighed, & made grette playntes & piteous lamentations for lone of Pressyne his wyf, whiche he louyd of lawfull love, and the people in hys land said that he was assoted, and in dede they gaue & betoke the 20 governement ounr them & of alle the lande to Nathas his sone. Which governed vautilantly, and held hys fader in grette charyte. And thenne the barons of Albanye gaf to hym vnto hys wyf agentyl woman, 24 whiche was lady of Ycrys. And of these 4 two yssued Florymond, whiche afterward toke moche of peyne & traneyll. Neuertheles, oure hystorye is not enterprysed ne begonne for hym / and therfore we shall hold oure 28 peas of hym, and we shall retourne to oure hystorye.

Thisorye saith, that when Pressyne departed & yede with her thre doughtirs, she went in to Avalon, that was named the yle lost, bycause that al 32 had a man ben there many tymes / yet shuld not he conne retourne thither hymself alone / but byhapp &

---

1 Fr. soudainement.  
2 Fr. leal.  
3 Fr. assoté.  
4 Fr. tant y esté de foys.
grett aventure. And there she nourysshed her thre douhtirs vnto the tyme that they were xv. yere of age / and ledde them euery mornnyng on a high 4 mountaynne whiche was named, as thystory saith & recounteth, Elyneos, whiche is asmoche for to say in englissh as filoryysshed hyH. For from thens she sawe ynough the land of Albany. and ofte said to her 8 thre douhtirs, waymentyng & sore Aveyng: 'See, my fayre douhtirs, yonder is the land wher ye were born / and ye shuld haue had your wele & honour, ne had be the dommage of your fader, that bothe you & me hath 12 putte in grett myserye without ende vnto the day of dome, whan god shal punyssh the eyyl folk / and the good he shall enhaunse in theire vertues.'

Melusyne, tholdest douhtir, demanded of her moder Pressyne: 'What falshed hath doon oure fader, wherby we must endure so longe this greef & sorow?' Thanne the lady, theyre moder, byganne and Pressyne tells them the whole story. to telle & shew vnto them all the manere of the 20 faytte, so as ye haue hered tofore. And thenne whan Melusyne had herde her moder, and that she vnder-stode all the faiyte or dede, She tourned the talke of her moder, & demanded of her the commodytees of 24 the land / the name of the Cites, tounes, & Castels of Albany / and rehercyng these thinges they al descendid doun fro the hyH, & retourned to the yle of Avalon. And thanne Melusyne had & drew apart her two 28 sustirs, that is to wete Melyor & Palatyne, & said to them in this manere: 'My dere sustirs, now loke & byhold we the mysrye wherin oure fader hath putt both oure moder & vs all, that shuld haue be so wel att 32 ease & in so grette worship in oure lyues. what think you good of your best aduys for to doo / For as for

1 Fr. montaigne floric. 2 Fr. Ybernic. 3 Fr. faulce. 4 Fr. revist sa mère en auttres parolles.
my parte I think to avenge me therof / and as lytel myrth & solas that he hath Impetred\textsuperscript{1} tooure moder by hys falsched / as lytel joye I think to purchase vnto hym //. Thennne her two sustirs answerd to her 4 in this manere: 'Ye be our oldest sustir, we shall folowe & obey you in all that ye wil doo & shall ordonne theirof.' And Melusynye said to them / 'ye shew good loue, & to be good & lawfull\textsuperscript{2} to our moder, S For by my feyth ye haue said right wel, and I haue aduyseyd yf it semeth you good that we shall close or shett hym on the high mountayne of Northomberland, named Brombelyoys / and in myserye he shalbe there 12 all\textsuperscript{3} his lyf; 'My sustir,' said either of bothe sustirs / 'lette now hye vs for to doo this / For we haue grette desyre to see that our moder be avenged of the vnlawfulnes that our fader dede shew vnto her.' 16 Thanne the thre doughtirs dide so moch, that by theyre false condycion they toke theyr fader, & closed or shett hym on the said mountayne. And after that they had so doon, they retourned to theire moder, 20 and to her they said in this manere: 'Moder, ye ne oughte to retche\textsuperscript{4} ne care more of the vnlawfulness\textsuperscript{5} & falsched of our fader / For therof he hath receyued hys payment, For\textsuperscript{6} neuer he shal yssue ne departe fro 24 the mountayne of Brombelyoys, wheron he is closed & shett by vs / and pede he shall waste hys lyf & his tyne with grette doloure and woo.' / 'Ha / ha / alas!' said theire moder Pressyne to them / 'how durst you 28 so doo / euyl herted doughters, & without pyte / ye haue not doon wel, whan he that begat you on my body ye haue so shamfully punysshed\textsuperscript{7} by your proude courage. For it was he of whom I toke all 32 the playsaunce that I had in this mortaH world,
Melusine and her two sisters are punished.

whiche ye haue taken fro me. therfore, knowe ye wel that I shall punyssh you of the meryte efter youre deserte. thou, Melusyne, that art tholdest, & that oughtest to haue be the moost knowyng / all this is comme & doon throguhe thy counseyH, For wel I wot that this pryson hath be gyuen to thy fader by the / and therfore thou shalt be she that shalbe first punysshed therof. For notwithstanding the unlawfulness of thy fader / bothe thou & thy sustirs he shuld haue drawen to hym, and ye shuld shortly have ben out of the handes of the Nymphes¹ & of the fairies, without to retourne eny more. And fro hens fourthon I gyue to the / the gyfte that thou shalt be eueri saturday tourned vnto a serpent fro the nauyyl downward / but yf thou fynd ony man pat wil take the to lys wyf / and that he wil pronymte to the that newer on the Saturday he shall see the, ne pat shall declare ne reherce thy faytt or dede to ne personne / thou shalt lyne thy cours naturell, and shall dey as a naturel & humayn woman / and out of thy body shall yssue a fayre lynee, whiche shalbe gret & of highe proesse. but yf by hap or som anenture / thou shuldest be seen & decyuyed² of thy husband / knowe thou for certayn that thou shuld not retourne to the tournent & peyne wher as thou were in afore / and euer thou shalt abyde therinne vnto the tyme that the right highe Iugge shal hold his jugement. And thou shalt appiere by thr days befor the fortresse or Castel whiche thou shalt make, and thou shalt name it aftir thy name / at eueri tyme whan it shall haue a new lord, and lykwyse also whan a man of thy lynee shal dey. And thou, Melyor, to the I gyue a Castel in the grette Armenye, whiche is fayre & riche, wher thou shalt kepe a Sperohak vnto the tyme that the grett maister shall hold his Iugement. And al

¹ Fr. japhes. ² Fr. deccellée.
and all knights who shall watch there a certain time without sleep, shall have any gift they desire, except herself in marriage. Those that persist in this last request shall be unfortunate to the ninth generation. Palatyne is to be imprisoned on Mount Guygo, with the treasure of King Elynas, until one of their lineage shall deliver her, and obtain the treasure.

The sisters then go their several ways.

Be not displeased that I tell you these things. I will now proceed to the history itself, but will first tell you how King Elynas ended his days.

After living a long time upon the mountain, he died.

noble and worthy knightes descended & comme of noble lynee, that wil goo watche there the day byfore the euen, and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx. day of Iung, without eny slep, shal haue a yeft of the of suche thinges that men may haue corporellly / that is to wete, of erthly jinges without to demande thy body ne thy lone by marlyage nor other wyse. And al thou that shal demande the 8 without cesse, and that wyl not forbere & absteynne them perof / shalbe infortunate vnto the ix. lynee, and shul be putt from theire prosperityes /. And thou shalt be closed, palatyne, & shetthe on the mountayn of 12 Guygo, with al the tresoure of thy fader, vnto the tyme that a knight shal comme of our lynee whiche shal haue al that tresoure to help therwith for to gete & conqyvre the land of promyssion / & shal delyure 16 the from thens /. Thenne were the thre sustirs full heuy of herte & sorrowfull, & departed fro theire moder. And Melusyne went & toke her way al alone thughe the forest & thikk busses. Melyor also departed, & yede toward the Sperhaak Castel in the grette Armenye. And Palatyne also went to the mounteyne of Guygo, wher many a man hath seen her / . And I myself herd it say of the kinge of 24 Arragon and of many other of hys royaume. And be nat you displesed yf I haue recounted vnto you this aventure, For it is for to adioust more of feyth, & for to veryfy thishory, And fro hens fourthon I 28 wil entre into the mater of the very & true hystory. but first I shall telle to you how the king Elynas fynyysshed his dayes in this world / and how Pressyne his wyf buryed hym within the said mountayn in a 32 moche noble tombe, as ye shal here herafter. /

Onge tyme was the Kyng Elynas on the said mountayne in so mochi, that deth which bringeth 2eny

1 Fr. Iung.
persoune to an ende toke hym. Thanne camme ther Pressyne his wyf and buryed hym there / and on hym made to be sette oon so noble & so riche a tombe, but 4 neuer before ne syn that tyme was seen none suche ne so riche. For on the tombe were riches without comparacion as of precyous stones and other Jewellis / and about it were grett & highe Candelstykkes of fyn gold, 8 and lampes & torches whiche brennen both day & nyght continually. And on the said tombe stood vp right a Statue or ymage of Alabaster, kerued & made aftir the lengthe, lyknes, & fourme of Kinge Elynas / 12 and the said ymage held in her handes a table1 of gold, whereon was writon the forsaid aventure. And there the lady Pressyne stablysshed a stronge geaunt to the saugarde of the tresoure byfore said / the whiche 16 Geaunt was wounder fyers & horryble, and al the Coun tre therabout he held vonder his subjection. And also aftir hym many other geaunts kept it vnto the tyme & commyng of Geffray with the grett toth / of 20 the whiche ye shall more here herafter. Now haue ye herde of the KingElynas and of Pressyne his wyf. And from hens fourthon I wil bigynne & shew the trouth of thystory of the meruaylles of the noble Castel 24 of Lusignen in Poitow. And why & by what manere hit was bilded & made./

Thystery recounteth to vs that there was somtyme in the Brut Brytayne2 a noble man which fell at 28 debate with the nevew of the king of Bretons. and in dede he durst therfore nomore dwelle within the land / but toke with hym al his fynaunce & goodes, and went out of the land by the high mountaynes. And as 32 telleth thistorye he founde on a day nighe by a fon tayne a fayr lady to whom he told al his Fortune & aventure / so that fynally they enamoured3 eche other,

1 Fr. tablier.  
2 Fr. la brute bretaigne.  
3 Fr. s'amouërent.
he marries her, and in her land builds many towns and castles;

and the lady shewed to hym grett loue, & dide vnto hym moch comfort. and he began within her land, that was wast & deserte for to byld & make fayre tounes & strong Castels. and was the land within 4 short tyme peupled razonably / And they dede calle the land forestz, bycause that they founde it full of grett wodes & thikk bushes, And yet at this day it is called Forestz. It haped that this knight & this lady 8 fel at debate togidre. I ne wot not goodly how ne wherfore / but that right sodaynly departed the lady fro the knight, wherfore he was woful & heuy. and notwithstandinge he grew & encreased euer in worship 12 and in prosperite. The noble men thanne of this land / seyng that they were without a lady purveyed hym of oon to hys wyf, a moche gentil & fayre woman, sustir to the Erle of Poitiers, which regned at that tyme, & 16 he begate on her many children males. emonge the whiche was oon / that is to wete the iiijde borne, whiche was named Raymondyn, and was fayre, goodly & gracyous, moche subtyl & wyty in all thinges. And 20 that same tyme the said Raymondin might be xiiij yere of age./

Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to comme to the Feste 24 that he made of hys sone./

The Erle of Poyters held a grett feste of a sone that he had, and wold haue made hym to be dowbed a knight. And no more children he had, but 28 only a fayre mayde that was called Blanche / and the sone had to name Bertrand. [Thanne the Erle Emery] manded & desyred a moch fayre company for loue of the knighthode of his sone / and amonges other he bode 32

2 Fr. iceluy temps.
3 Fr. pour. 5 omitted by the translator.
& prayed the Earl of Forests to come to the feast,
& that he should bring with him three of his sons, the oldest, For he wold see them. Thanne the Earl of
4 Forests went at his mandement in the most honourable wyse that he coude, and with hym he led three of his sons. The feast was grette, and there were made and dowbed many a knight for loue of Bertrand, son
8 to the Earl of Poyters, that was that day proffered to thonourable & worshipful ordere of knighthode. And also was ther made and dowbed to a knight, the best
12 of the Earl of Forests, for he joustted moche wel & fayre. And was the fest contynued and holden the space of viij dayes. And the Earl of Poyters made & gaf many & moche fayre & gret yeftes. 1And at the
departyng of the feast the Earl of Poyters demanded
16 of the Earl of Forests, & prayed hym to leue with hym Raymondin his newew, and that he shuld never care for hym For he wold puruey for him wel. And the
erle of Forests graunted it / and thus dwelled the said
20 Raymondin with the Earl of Poyters his uncle, that loved hym wel. And after toke the feste an ende
doche honourably & frendly. And as now cesseth
24 thistory to spek of the Earl of Forests, whiche re-
tourned with his two sones & al his fellowship vnto
his Countre. And begynnethoure hystory to pro-
cede fourth / and to spek of the Erle Emery, and of
Raymondyn./

28 Cap. III. How a forester camne to denounce
to the Erle Emery how there was within the
Forest of Coulombyers the most meruayl-
lous wildbore that euer was sen byfore. /

32 Thystorye certyyfeth to vs and also the veray
Cronykles that this Erle Emery was grauntfader
1 In French version Cap. III. begins from this point.

The grandfather of Earl Emery was St. William.
to saynt William that was Erle, and left all worldly processions for to serve our Creatour, and take on hym the ordre & Religion of the whit manteltes, an ordre or Religion so called. And thereof I will not make grett locucion or talking; But I will procede fourth on our mater, and to spek of the Erle Emery. Thistory thanne telleth to vs that this Erle was moche worthy & valyaunt a knight / and that loued euer 8 noblesse, And was the most wyse in the science of Astronomye that was in hyss dayes, ne byfore syn that Aristotles regned. That tyme that the Erle Emery regned / thistory sheweth to vs that he coude many a 12 science, & specially he was parfytte in the science of Astronomy, as I haue said tofore. And knowe ye that he loued so moche his nevew Raymondin that he might no more. and so dide the child his vncele, and peyned 16 hym moche to playse & to serue hym at gree, and to doo hym playsir in all maners. It is wel trouth that this Erle had many houndes and many haakes of al maneres. and [it] befell as thistory recounteth that 20 oon of the Foresters camme vnto the Erlis Court, & demanded or told that in the Forest of Coulombiers was the moost meruayllous wildbore that had be seen of longe tyme byfore, and that at hym shuld be the best 24 & fayrest dysport that any gentylman shuld euer haue. ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle, ‘these tydynges plaize me wel. late the hunters & houndes be redy to morow by tymes. & we shall goo to the chasse.’ ‘My lord,’ 28 said the Forester, ‘at your playsire.’ And al thus he departed fro the Erle / and made redy al that apar-teyned to the chasse for to hunte at thoure that he had apoynted./
Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn with hym.

And when the day was come that Erle Emery with grette foyson of barons and knightes departed out of the Cite of Poyters / and Raymondyn rode euerebyside hym on a gret Courser and the swerde girded about hym and the sheld ehege on er hys sholder. And when they were come to the Forest they byganne fourthwith to hunte, And the wildbore was founde that was fel & proude, & deuoured & kyld many houndes and toke his cours through the Forest, For he was strongly chaffed, and they byganne for to folowe hym waloping a good paas, but the wildbore doubted nothinge / but meuyd & wered hym in suche a manere that there ne was so hardly a dogge ne hound that durst abyde hym,

ne so hardly a hunter that durst hold the spere styl anenst hym for to hit & broche hym. And thanne camne bothe knightes and esquyers / but neuer on was there so hardly that he durst sette foot on the grounde for to withstande & hane launched at hym. Thenne camne the Erle that cryed with a highe voyce. sayeng. 'shal this swyne2 abasshe us aH.' And whan Ray mondyn herde thus spek hys vnle, he was in hymself vergoynouse3 and shamed / and alighted from his courser and sette feet on grounde / and holding the swerde naked, yede courageously toward the said bore, and gaf to hym a strok with grette anger / And the bore dressed toward hym and made hym to faH on hys knees, but soone he stood up, And as preu4 hardy and valyaunt wold haue broched and thrust hys swyrde within the booris heest / but the bore felleed, and so fast he ranne that there was neyther man ne hound but that he lost the sight of hym, but alone Ray mondyn that was on horsbak, and so fast he folowed

Earl Emery, his nephew Raymondyn, and many knights
1 fol. 100.
go to the forest.

They come upon the boar,

but the dogs and the knights are afraid of him.

Raymondyn, ashamed, dismounts, and attacks the boar,

which runs away;

Raymondyn follows on horseback,

Fr. filz de truye. Fr. vergongue. Fr. preus.
the bore that he outrannte al thooy that were at the chace, & lefte them behinde and founde hym self alone. Wherof the Erle, his vnclle, was aferd / les that the bore shuld distroye hym. Wherfore the Erle waloped 4 aftir hys nevew Raymondyn and with a high voyce escryed hym. 'Fayre nevew, love this chasse, and cursed be he that announced it to vs, For yf this swyne hurt you I shall neuer haue joye in my herte.' But Ray- 8 mondy, whiche was chaffed, doubted not of hys lyf, ne toke heede to none euy Fortune that might befall 2to hym therof / but euer withoute cesse folowed the said bore, For he was well horsed. And the erle folowed 12 euer hys nevew. What shuld anayll yf herof I shuld make a longe tale. Alle thicre horses byganne to be chaffed and very, & abode fer behinde, saaf only the Erle and Raymondyn, whiche chaced the bore so longe 16 that the nyght felle on them./ Thanne the Erle & his nevew stode styly and rested hem vnder a grette tree. And the Erle gan to sey to Raymondyn, 'Fayre nevew here shall we abyde tyl it be mone shyn.' And Ray- 20 mondy, said to hym, 'Sire, aftir your wille shall I doo.' And soone aftir roes the moone fayre and bright./ Thenne the Erle that knew moche of the science of Astronomy dido loke & behelde the skye and 24 sawe the sterres full bright & clere, and the moone that was moche fayre without tache or spot, ne none ob- scourte or darknes was seen about it /. he ganne sore to wepe. And aftir grette & deep sighynes said in this 28 manere. 'Ha / ha / right mighty and veray god, how grette ben the meruylls that thou haste lefte here bynethe / as to knowe parfytly bothe the vertues & the nature of many wounder and dyuerse condycions 32 of thinges, and of thicre significacions or betoknynges. This might not be perfghtly knowen, yf thou shadd nat vpon the men somwhat of thy full & deuyne grace,
And especyally of this meruayllous aduenture, the which I now see by the sterres whiche thou hast cre- ated & sitte by ordre on the firmament or skye / and that I knowe by the high science of astronomye / of the which by thy grace thou hast lente to me oon braunce of knowleage wherof I oughte to preyse / to thanke and to regracy the hertily in thy highe mageste, wher to none may be compared. O veray & highe sire, how might this be rasonably as to know-lege humayne without it were by thy terrible jugement, For no man shuld not mover haue & receyue wel for to do euery eny. And notwithstanding I see & perceyue wel by the highe science of Astronomy / of whiche somme wynderstandyng I haue / to me leued of thy pure grace what hit seignyfeth or betokneth, wherof moche meruailled I am.' These wordes said / the Erle byganne to wepe and to sighe more strongly than he didde byfore. Thanne Raymondin whiche hadd kyndled the fyre with hys fyreyron and that had herde the moost part of all that the Erle Emery had sayd / said to hym in this manere / 'My lord, the fyre is wel kyndled,commey and warme you. and I byleue that within a while we shall haue somme tydynges of your meyne, For as my thought ryght now I herd barking of dogges.' 'By my feith,' said the Erle. 'of the chace I gyue nomore force / but of that I see' / And thanne he behelde vpward vnto the sky and wept ful sore / And Raymondyn pat so moche loued hym, said to hym / 'Ha / ha / my lord, for godis loue lette that thing be. For it apparteyneth not to so highe a prince as ye be, For to putte or sette hys herte therto / ne for to en- quyre of suche artes, ne of suche thynges. but wel it behoyth to you, and thatshalbe wel doon to regracye, and to thanke god of that he hath purveyed you and promoted vnto so highe and so noble a lordship as

1 Fr. gracier.  2 fol. 11 b.  3 Fr. presté.
youre is. And as me semeth it is grette symplenes to take ony sorowe or heuynes of suche thinges that may not helpe / hyndre ne lette' / 'Ha / ha / fol,e,' said the Erle, 'yf thou wyst and knew the grette meruaylles & 4 wounderfylll aventures that I see, thou shuldest be al abasshed.' Thanne Raymondyn, that thought none euyl, answeryd in this manere. 'My right dere & doubted lord, I pray you to telle it to me / yf it is thinge that I 8 may knowe.' 'By god,' said the Erle, 'thou shalt knowe it / and I wold that neyther god ne the world shuld demande of the nothinge of it / and that that-aventure shuld befaH to the, on myn owne self / For 12 from hens fourth I am old and haue freundes ynoughbe for to hold my lordshipes. but yet I love the so moche that I would that so grett a worship were hape to thee / And the aventure is suche / that yf at the same 16 oure a subget dide 1 slee hys lord he shuld becomme the moost mighty and moost worshiped thaiuer camme out of hys lynage or kynrede, And of hym shuld procede and yssue so subtle a lynee / that of it shuld be 20 mencioun and remembraunce made vnto thende of the world. And know thou for certayn that this is trouth which I telle to the.' Thanne ansuerde Raymondyn that neuer he shuld movye byleue that it were trouth / 24 and that it were ayenst al right and reason / that a man shuld haue wele for to doo euyl, and for to doo suche a mortal treson. 'Now byleue thou it surely,' said the Erle to Raymondyn, 'For it is as I teH to the.' 28 'By my feith,' said Raymondyn / 'yet shall I nat by- leue it.' And as the Erle Emerye and Raymondin spak of the said aventure togidre, they herd al alonge the woH a grette affray / and Raymondyn toke thanne 32 hys swerd that lay on the erthe. and lyke wyse dede the erle, And abode longe thus thinkinge for to knowe what it was, and stode byfore the fyre / on that syde as them semyd that the stryf was. And longe in suche 36
CII.

RAYMONDIN SLAYS HIS UNCLE, EARL EMERY OF POITIERS. 25

a state they abode tyll that they sawe a wounder grette & horryble bore moche chaffed commyng to toward them. Thanne gan sey Raymondyn, 'My lord, clemme you vpon som tree lest that this wyld bore hurte you, and lette me dele with hym.' 'By my feth,' said the Erle / 'god forbede that I leue the in suche aventure al alone.' And when Raymondyn herde this, he went 8 & stode before the bore haung his swerd on his feet,\(^1\) and wilful\(^2\) for to dystroye & slee hym / and the wild bore tourned hym and went toward the Erle. Thenne byganne the dolour of Raymondyn / and the grette 12 hape that therof cam afterward to hym, As the very & trew history recountedh to vs.

**Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his uncle.**

16 3\(^\text{a}\) In this part recountedh thy story, that when Raymondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe hym that he shuld not hurte his lord / the bore anoone hurted to hym, & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche 20 seeyng the wyld bore comme / lefte his swerd, and toke a short spere, and strayght held it dounward before hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the chasse, broched the bore thrugh the brest / but the 24 Erle feld doun on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn, holdyng his swerde in his hand, camme toward the bore, and wold haue smytte hym betwene the foure\(^4\) legges, For he leye vpsonn the beliy vpward, and suche 28 a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore, that the blade of hys swerde brake / so that the poynte of it sprang ayenst the Erlis stomak, & wounded hym sore / in so moche that he deyed therof. And Raymondyn, which 32 was sore chaffed / seeyng hys wepen broken, and not

\(^1\) Fr. l'espee au poing, mistranslation for 'in his fist.'  
\(^2\) Fr. par bonne voulenté de la destruire.  
\(^3\) fol. 128.  
\(^4\) Fr. quatre.
yet perceyuyng his mortal werk / toke the spere, &
so strongly broched it throughe the bore, that he slew
him. But whan he dide loke toward his vnkle, and
that he sawe hym all bloody / he went, and wold hau[e
4]
had hym to stand vpon his feet, but it was for nought.
he thenne pulled out of hys brest the piece of the
sward, and knew that it was hys dede / Moche
meruayllously thanne byganne Raymondin to sighe & 8
to complayne, & wept and lamented piteously, sayeng
in this manere: 'Ha / ha / false fortune, how moche arthou peruerse & euyl, that hath doon to be slayn by me
hym that loued me so moche, and that had doon to me 12
so moche good? Ha / god fader almighty / wher shal
now be the land where this harde & false synner shal
mowe abyde / For in certayn all they that shall here
spak of this grett mysdede shal juge me / & with good 16
right, to dey of a shamfull deth, For a more false ne
more euyl treson dide neuer no synner. / Ha / erthe
cleue & open the / & deuoure thou me fourthwith, and
leth me faH with the moost obscure & derk angel 20
within helie, pat somtyme was the fayrest of all other
in heuen, For wel I haue deserued it.' In this dolour
& woo was Raymondyn a longe space of tyme, & was
moche poughtfull & wroth / and bethought hym self, 24
& saide in this manere / 'My lord & vnkle, that lyeth
deed yonder, sayd to me / that ye sche an aventur
shuld comme to me, that I shuld be worshiped more
than any man of my lynage. but I now see wel al the 28
contrary / For truly I shalbe pe moost unhappy &
dishonoured man that euer was borne of woman / and
by my feth I haue wel deserued it / it is wel raison
& right. But notwithstanding 2syth that now it may 32
none operwyse be / I shal dystourne me out of this
land, and shal goo som wher for to purchase myn
aduenture, sche as god wil send to me in to somme
good place, where as I may take & do penitence for my 36
synne.' And thanne Raymondyn camme to hys lord / and sore wepyng, kyssed hym with so heavy & woeful herte / that thenne he had nat mow say one only word / 4 for all the gold in the world / And soone aftir that he had kyssed hym, he layed his foot on the sterop and lepe vpon his hors / and departed, holding his way through the myddel of the Forest, moche dyscomforted, S & rode apas vnknowing the way, ne whether he went / but only by hap & att aventure, And made suche a sorowe that there nys no personne in the world that coude thinke ne sey the vth part of hys dolour /.

When Raymondyn departed fro his lord, and that he had lefte hym deed beside the fyre, and the wild bore also / he rode so longe through the Forest, ever wepyng and complaynyng so sore that it was gret pite for to see & here hym / that about mydnyght he aprouched nygh to a fontaynne of fayerye, named pe fontayne of soyf / And many one of the Countrie per about called hit the fontayne of fayerye, 20 bycause that many a meruaylle fell & happed there many tymes in tyme passed. And was this fontayne in a wounderfull & meruayllous place / and ouer it was a roch of meruayllos height / and al alonge the said 24 Fontaynne was a fayre medowe, nygh to the high Forest. And wel trouth it is that the moone dide shynne at that tyme ryght clere & bright, And the hors ledd Raymondyn whiche way that he wold, For no heede nor 28 talius he had of nothing, for cause of the gret dysplaysaunce that he had within hym self. And notwithstanding that he slept, lys hors ledd hym in this state so longe that he was comme wel nygh to the 32 fontayne. And at that same tyme were there [thre] ladyes, that played & dysported them / amongis the whiche oon was auctorised of the other as maistresse & lady ouer them, Of the whiche lady I wil now spek 36 aftir that thisstory telleth.
Cap. VI. How Raymondin came to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladys with her.

T

Hystory saith, that so longe bare the hors Ray-mondyn thus pensefull & heuy of herte of the myshap that was comme to hym, that he ne wyst where he was, ne whither he went / ne in no manere he ledd hys hors / but his hors ledd hym where that he wold, S For Raymondin touched not the brydeH / and herd ne saw nought / so sore was hys wit troubled. And thus he passed byfore the fontaynne where the ladyes were, without hauyng eny sight of them, but the 12 hors that sawe them, was sodaynly afayed, and fledd thens, rannyng moche fast. And thanne she that was the gretest lady of them thre, sayd in this manere : 'By my feth, he that rode now & passed byfore vs, 16 semyth to be a moche gentyl man / and, nevertheles, he maketh of it no semblaunt / but he sheweth the semblaunt of a vylayne or kerle, that hath passed so before ladyes without to haue salewed them.' And 20 all this said she feynyngly / to thende that the other shuld nat perceyue to what thinge she tended, For she wyst & knew wel how it was with hym, as ye shal here say in thystory herafter. And thanne she gan 24 say to the other : 'I goo to make hym spek, For he semeth to be asleip.' She departed fro the other two ladyes, and yede to Raymondyn, and toke the hors by the brydell & made hym to stand styl, and 28 said in this manere : 'By my feth, sire vassal, hit commeth to you of grette pryde or of grette rudesse for to passe byfore ony ladyes without spekyng or somme salutacion / how be it that bothe rudesse & pryde may be in you.' And the lady cessed as thenm of her wordes / but Raymondyn herde nor undersstood, ne

1 Fr. pensif. 2 'a sheep' in MS.
ansuerd her not. And she, as angry & wroth, sayd ones ayen to hym: 'And how, sire musarde, are ye so dyspytous that ye dayne nat ansuere to me?' And yet he answered never a word. 'By my feith,' sayd she within her self, 'I bylene nonne other / but that this yong man slepeth vpon his hors / or ellis he is eyther dombe or def / but as I trow I shal make hym wel to spek, ye he ever spak byfore.' And thenne she toke and pulled strongly hys hand, sayeng in this manere: 'Sire vassal, ye slep.' Thanne Raymondyn was astonyed & affrayed, as one is whan another awaketh hym fro slepe / and toke hys swerd, wenyng to hym that it had be hys vnclis meyne, that wold haue take and slayn hym. And the lady thanne perceyued wel that he yet had not seen her, and, al lawghing, bygan to say to hym, 'Sire vassal, with whom wyly you bigynne the bataille? / your enemies ben not here, And knowe you, fayre sire, that I am of your party or syde?' And whan Raymondyn herd her spek, he be-held her, and perceyued the gret beaulte that was in her, and toke of hit gret meruayH, For it semed to hym that neuer byfore he had not seen none so fayre. And thenne Raymondyn descendid from hys hors, and bowed hys knees, and made reuence vnto her, and said: 'My dere lady, pardonne to me myn Ignoraunce & vylonny that I haue doo toward you, For certaynly I haue mystaken onernoche anenst your noble per-sonne. And neiwertheles, I ne sawe ne herd neuer what ye haue said tyly that ye toke me by the hand, and knowe ye, that I thoughte moche at that tyme on a thinge that sore lyeth nygh to my herte / and vnto god I pray devoutly that amendes I may make vnto you / and that of hys grace I may at myn honour be out of this peyne, whiche hurteth myn herte sore.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the lady / 'it is wel said, For as for to bygynne any thinge, the name of god most first
be called to mans help / and I byleue you wel / that ye herd not what I haue said / but, fayre sire, whither goo you att this tyme of nyght / telle hit hardly to me / yf goodly ye may dyscouere it. And yf you 4 knowe not the way / wel I shal dresse you to it / For there nys neyther way ne patli but that I knowe it wel, and therof ye may trust on me hardly.' 'By my feith,' said Raymondyn, 'gramercy, lady, of 8 your curtoysye. And ye shal knowe it, my dere lady, sith that youre desyre is for to know it, I haue lost the high way syn almost yestirday none vnto now / and I ne wot where I am.' Thanne perceyued she that 12 he 2 kept hys faytte secret fro her / and said to hym:

'By god, fayre frend Raymondyn, ye shuld not hyde nothereg fro me, For I wot wel how it standeth with you.' And thenne when Raymondyn herd that she 16 named hym by hys owne name, he was so abasshed that he wyst not what he shuld ansuere. And she pat sawe wel that he was shamuH of that she had named hym, and that she wyst so moche of hys secret & 20 CounseyH, sayd to hym in this manere: 'Forsouthe, Raymondyn, I am she after god that may best consellyle the / and that may furthre and enhaunsse the in this mortal lyf. and all thin aduersytees & mysdedes 24 most be tourned in to wele / nought ayaylthe to the for to hyde them from me. For wel I wot that thou hast slayn thy lord / as moche by myshap / as wylfully / how be it that at that ouere thou supposest not 28 to haue doon it. and I wot wel all the wordes that he told vnto pe of the arte of Astronomye, wherin duryng hys lyf he was right expert.' When Raymondyn herde this he was more abasshed than he was tofore / 32 and said to the lady: 'Right dere lady, ye telle to me the tronth of alle things that ye say; but moche I meruaylle me how ye may so certaynly knowe it / and

2 'she' in Ms.
who told it so soon to you?" And she ansuerd to hym in this manere: "Be not thou abasshed therof, for I knowe the full trouth of thy faytte. And wene nor suppose thou nat that it be fauntesye or dyuels werk of me and of my wordes, for I certye the, Raymondyn, ¹ that I am of god, and my byleue is / as a Catholique byleue oughte for to be. And I lete the 8 to wete that without me and my counseyl / thou mayst not comme to thende of thy faytte. but yf thou wilt byleue stedfastly all that thy vnclé Emerye said vnto the, hit shalbe profytable to the, with the help of 12 god and of me. And I say so moche that I shal make the for to be the gretest lord that euer was of thy lynage, and the gretest and best lyuelod ² man of them all." Whan Raymondyn vnderstoed the promysse of 16 the lady / he remembred the wordes that hys lord told vnto hym. And consydering within hym self the grete parels ³ wherein he was as exilled and banysshed out of hys Countre & fro his frendes, said [to hym- 20 self] ⁴ that he shuld take thanuente for to byleue the lady of all that she shuld doo or say to hym, For but ones as he said he shuld passe the cruell paas of the deth. And to the lady he ansuerde full humbly in this manere: "My right dere lady, I thanke you moche of the promysse that ye do and proffire to me. For ye shall see & knowe that this shal not abyde or tarye by me for no trauyll that ye can aduyse / but that I 28 shall euer doo your playsire, yf it be possible to be doo / and that a cristian man may, or ought to doo, with honour." "By my feyth, Raymondin," said the lady / "that is said of free herte, For I shall not say 32 nor counseille you nothing / but that good & wele shall comme therof. but first of alle,' said she / 'ye most promyse to me that ye shall take me to your wyf. and make you no doubte of me / but that I am of

¹ Not by witchcraft," she replies, ⁰ fol. 16. and advises him to believe what Earl Emery foretold, and promises to make him a great lord.

He thanks her, and undertakes to do her pleasure.

She asks him to marry her;

² Fr. terriam. ³ Fr. perelz. ⁴ Fr. s'advisa.
And thanne Raymondyn yede & ganne say, & sware in this manere, 'Lady dere / by my feith / sith that ye ensure me that it is soo / I shall doo aftir² my power all that ye wyl commaunde me for to doo / And 4 iudide I lawfully³ promytte you that so shal I doo.' 'Yet Raymondyn,' sayd she, 'ye most swere another thinge.' 'What it is, my lady,' said Raymondyn, 'I am redy / ye if it be thinges that goodly I may doo.' § ye,' said she / 'and it may not trye to you to no dommage⁴ / but to all wele. Ye musto promytte to me, Raymondyn, vpon all the sacrements & othes that a man very catholique & of good feith may doo and 12 swere, that newe while I shalbe in your company, ye shal not peyne ne force your self for to see me on the Saturdays / nor by no manere ye shal not enquier that day of me, ne the place wher I shalbe.' And whan 16 she had thus said to Raymondyn, he yet ageyn said to her in this manere: 'On the parel of my soyle I swere to you / that newe on bat day I ne shal doo nothing that may hyndre ne adommage⁵ you in no manere of 20 wyse' / 'and I,' said she, 'ne shal doo nor thinke to none other thinge but in what manere I shall move best encresse in worship and honour, both you and your lynee.' And Raymondyn yede & gan sey to her 24 in this manere, 'Soo shall I doo it to the playse of god.'°

'T Hanne,' said the lady / 'I shal now telle how ye most doo / doubt ye not of nothing: but goo 28 fourthwith vnto Poyters, And whan ye shal come there / many one ye shal fynd commyng fro the chasse that shall axe to you tydnynges of the Erle, your uncle. and to them ye shall anuer in this manere / "how / 32 is he not yet come ayen?" And they shal sey "nay." and thanne ye shal say, "I newe sawe hym syn that

---

¹ Fr. de par Dieu. ³ Fr. leaulment. ² Fr. promise. ⁴ Fr. prejudice. ⁵ Fr. soit en vosvre prejudice.
the chasse was at the strongest, and when ye lost hym" / and semblant ye most mak to be abasshed more than any other. And soone after shul comme the 4 hunters and other of hys meyne, and 1 shal brynge with them the corps deed within a liter / & his woundes shal seme to every man aduys to be made by the wildbores teth. and they shal say alle, that the wildbore 8 hath slayn hym. And yet they shall say that the Erle kyled the sayd bore / and many one shal hold it for a hardly & valiaunt dede. thus the dolor & woo shal bygynne to be moche grete. The Erle Bertrand, his 12 sone, & hys doughtir Blanche, & alle oper of hys meyne, bothe lesse & grete togidre, shal make grete sorowe / and so shall ye doo with them. and ye shal putte on you the blak gowne as they shal. And aftir 16 this nobly doon, and the terme assigned & take whan the barons shal comme for to doo theire obeysaunce & homage vnto the yong Erle, ye shal retourne hither to me the day before the lordes & barons make theire homage / and that tyme att this same place ye shal fynde me.' Thanne as Raymondyn wold haue departed from Melusyne to haue take hys leve of her / she said to hym in this manere: 'Hold, my redoubted frend? / 24 for to bygynne & assemble our loue, I gyue you these two rynges, of whiche the stones ben of grette vertue. For the one hath suche approprieté, that he to whomme hit shal be gyuen by paramours 2 or loue, shal not dey 28 by no stroke of no manere of wepen, ne by none armes / as longe as he shal bere it on hym / And the other is of suche vertue, that he that bereth it on hym shal haue victory of all his euyl willers or enemyes / al 32 be it pleying in Courtes, or fyghtynge in fieldes, 3 or ellis whersoever it be: and thus, my frend, ye may goo surely.' Thanne toke Raymondin leue of the lady, and embraced & kyssed her swetly & moch frendly

1 fol. 17.

When Emery's body is found they will think the boar killed him,

and will mourn,

which Raymondin must do too.

After doing hom- are to the new earl

he is to return to the Fountain.

Before Raymondin leaves Melusine she gives him two rings;

one has power to keep him safe from hurt,

the other will insure victory to the wearer.

Then Raymondin leaves his lady .

2 Fr. par amours.  3 Fr. en plaídoire ou meûle.
cap. vii. how raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to poitiers.

Raymondin lepte vpon his hors, and the lady dressed and putte hym in to the high way of poitiers, and [he] departed fro the lady. And at departyng Raymondin was ful sory, For he loued alredy so moche her felawship, that wel he wold euer haue be with her. Thenne thinkynge, he byganne fast to ryde toward the Cite of Poyters. And the said lady retourned toward the said Fontaynne, where the two other ladyes were, & abode her there / of which ladyes thystorye leneth here to speke.

Now saith thystorye, that Raymondin rode so fast that soone he was comme into Poytiers, where he founde many one that were retourned fro the chasse, which demanded of hym, 'where is my lord?' 'how,7' said thanne Raymondin / 'is he not comme?' / and they answered 'nay.' And he said to them, 'I sawe hym neuer syn that the grete chasse bygan, and that the bore scaped fro the houndes.' And while that they spak of this materre among them alle / the hunters & other folk arryued there fro the chasse, som now and thenne, the whiche all said as Raymondin had sayd. And som said that neuer they had seen suche & so meruayllous a chasse, ne so horryble a bore. And many one said that the bore was comme fro somme other land, For none so grete / nor that ranne so fast sawe they neuer. Thanne was euery man meruaylled / how
the Erle taryd so longe, and they went to the yate for to see if he camme, & abode hym per a longe space. and euer camme folk that said as the other had sayd / 4 and that they lay all that nyght in the sayd Forest, For they had lost theyre way. Thanne was all the people of Poyters woofull & heuy for loue of theyr lord, that taryd so longe / and speycally the Countesse, the said 8 Erlis wyf. but more woofull & heuyer they were within a lytel while after/.

Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttere.

12 Hystorye telleth vs, that so long they abode at the gate with Rayniondyn, that they sawe commynge toward the Cite a grete multitude of people. and as they dye approch' & camme nyght, they herk 16 and vnderstod the piteous voyces of them, wherof they were all meruaylled / and bygan many one to doubte lest that they shuld haue hadd som trouble or somme empeschement. And so longe they abod, that they 20 whiche bare the corps of theire lord camme vnto them, sore lamentyng & piteously waylyng, sayeng to them in this manere: 'wepe ye, and wepe ayen, & clothe you aH in blak, For the bore hath slayn our good lord, 24 the Erle Emerye.' And after the corps camme two hunters, that bare the grette bore, and thus they entred into the Cite, makyng grete sorowe. And alle the people of the Cite, seeyng theyre lord deed, by-

1 fol. 18 b. but still no Earl Emery, whereat the people mourn.

A crowd is seen approaching the city gate; their piteous voices make the townsmen marvel.

They arrive, bearing their lord's body;

two hunters follow, bearing the boar.

The citizens, weeping.

2 fol. 19. arrive at the palace, where they lay their lord,

2 Fr. empeschement.
sorowe, I passe it ouer lyghtly. The Countesse & her children made ouergrete sorow / and so dide the Barons and aH the Comynaltee of the land. And knowe ye also / that so dide Raymondyn, as it foloweth.  

Raymondyn made grete sorowe and greter than eny other, and sore repented hym of hys mysdede, And so moche / that yf it had not be the hop & com-fort of his lady, he had not mowe with/hold hym self, 8 but pat he had sayd vnto them al hys auenture, for cause of the grete contricion that he had of the deth of hys vncele and lord. But I wil not spek long of this matere. Soone thobsequye was doon moche nobly & 12 richely within the Chirche of our lady of Poytiers, after the custome that was at that tyme, And ye muste knowe that the good folk of the land that had lost peir lord were full of heuynes and of sorow / and they 16 fourthwith toke the said bore, and byfore the said Chirch of our lady they brent it / And as it is wel trouth that there nys so grete a sorowe, but that within foure dayes it is somewhat peased / the barons of the 20 land thanne yede and swetly comforted the Countesse and her two children aftir their power / and so moche they dide that her grete sorowe was somewhat peased. But pe sorowe of Raymondyn grew & wexed more and 24 more, as wel bycause of his grete mysdede / as for the grete lome of whiche he loued hys vncele. It was thanne ordeyned & concluded by the CounseyH that alle the Barons of the land shuld be sente fore, & boden to 28 comme at a certayn day for to doo thier homage to theyre gracious lord, the sone of the said late Erle. And assone as Raymondyn knew of it, he toke hys hors and alone yssued out of Poytiers and entred within the 32 Forest, for to goo & hold hys couenaunt vnto his lady.  

1 Fr. trois jours.
Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche never he had seen before.

4 T[h]istory telleth to vs that so longe rode Raymondyn that he camme into the Forest of Coulombyers, & passed throught the lytel toune, & went vpou the mountayne and yede so longe that he perceyued 8 the medowes whiche were ynder the roche, that was aboue the Fontayne of Soyf, and sawe a hous made of stone in a manere of a ChapeH. And knowe ye that Raymondyn had be there many [a] tyme, but never tofore 12 he had seen it / and went never to hit ; And before the place he perceyued many ladyes, knyghtes, & Squyers whiche made to hym grete feste and praysed hym gretly. Wherfor he meruaylled gretly, For one of them 16 said to hymme: 'Sire, alight & come toward my lady that abydoth aftir you within her pauyllon or tente.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondyn / 'hit plaiseth me wel so for to doo.' Soone he descendid from hys hors & 20 yede with them, which conueyed hym toward the lady moche honourably. And thanne the lady camme to mete hym, & toke hym by the hand and ledd hym into her tente, And satte both vpon a bed 2 of parement 24 moche riche / and all the other abode without. Thanne bygaune the lady for to raisonne 3 with Raymondyn, & said to hym in this manere: 'My dere frende, wel I wote that wel ye haue hold 4 alle that I introduysed, or 28 taught you of, And therfore fro hens fourthon I shall trust you the more.' 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn / 'I haue founde so good a bygynnynge in your wordes, that nothing ye shall commande to me that humayn 32 body may or oughte to comprehende or vndertake / but that I wyl & shal doo it after your playsire.' 'Raymondyn,' said she / 'for me ye shall vndertake and he in her.

Raymondin rides to Coulombiers, where he sees a new chapel, and knights and ladies.

1 fol. 20. He is asked to dismount, and is led by his lady to a tent.

His lady expresses confidence in him.

2 Fr. couche. 3 Fr. à arésonner. 4 Fr. tenn.
no thing; but that of it ye shall come to your worship." Thenne camme there a knyght whiche kneeled before her / and after his reverence made / dressed his wordes toward her, & said: 'My lady, al thing' is redy / ye shall come when it playse you.' And the lady ansuerde & said / 'Couere your heed, fayre sire.' Thanne the lady & Raymondyn wesshe their handes & sette them at a moche ryche table. and within the 8 sayd paullon were many other tables dressed, where dide sette many knightes and ladyes / and when Raymondyn saw this appereyll, he mervaylled moche / and demanded of his lady fro whens so grete a felowship 12 was comme vnto her. And to his demande the lady ansuered nothing. Wherfore Raymondyn asked of her aynen, 'My lady, fro whens are commes vnto you so many of gentyl men and ladyes?' 'By my feyth, Raymondyn, 16 my frend,' sayd the lady, 'it is no nede to you for to be mervaylled therof, For they be all at your commandement, & redy for to serue you / & many other also that now ye see not.' Thanne held Raymondyn 20 hys peas / and so many courses & of dyuerse metes were before them brought, that mervayll it was to see it. And whan they had dyned, they weshe their handes / and graces said & all thinges doon / the lady 24 toke Raymondyn by the hand & ledd hym beside the heed, & euerychon voodel the paullyon, and wheras they lyst went, or wher they oughten for to haue goo, eche one aftir theyre estate /.

Thanne said the lady to Raymondyn: 'My frend, to morowe is the day that the barons shal come for to doo their homage vnto the yong Erle Bertrand. And know you, my frend, that there must ye be / & 32 shal doo as I shal telle you, ye it playse you so to doo / Now understond & reteyne wel my wordes. Ye shal abyde yer vnto the tyme that all the Baronnes shal haue doo their homages, and thenne ye shal putte your self 36
fourth before the said Bertrand, and of hym ye shal demande a yevette, for the salary & remuneration of alle the servayse that enuer ye didde vnto his fader. And 4 telle to hym wel, how that ye ne demande of hym nothre toune, ne Castel, nor other thing of no grete value. and I wote wel that he shal acorde or graunt it to you. For the barons shalte counselye hym for to 8 doo soo, And as soone as he shal haue graunted your requeste / demande of hym to haue on this roche & about it / as moche of ground as the hyde or skynne of a hert may comprehende./ and freely he shal gyue it 12 to you. In so moche that none shal now lette nor empesche you therof, by reason of homage, nother by charge of rente or other ordynance, and whan he shall haue graunted it to you, take perof his lettres, 16 vnder hys grete Seyle, and vnder the seelles of the peris,2 or lordes pryncipal of the land. And whan that at this ye shal haue doo / on the morow next folowing after that / as ye shal comyng honward 20 agayn / ye shal mete on your way a good man, which shal bere within a sac the skynne of a hert / and ye shall bye it / and for it ye shal pay asmoch as the said man shal aske you for it / and after ye shal make it 24 for to be cutte in the smallest and narrowest waye that is possible for to be cutte, after the manere of a thonge. And after, lette your place be deluyered vnto you / the whiche ye shal fynd all marked & kerned, and all 28 the trees pulled to the ground, there as it shal plaize me for to be / And as for to byryng the two endes of the sayde thong3 of the hyde togidre about the said place / if it happe that greter ground may be comprysed within it ye shall doo it to be leyd downward vnto the valey / & there, at both thendes of the said thonge or leder / shal spryng out of the roche a fayre fontayne, whiche in tyme to comme shalbe full necessary

and at last he is to ask from Bertrand a gift of the rock, and as much land as a hart’s skin can cover, 1 fol. 21.

and to get a charter for it, signed and sealed.

Raymondin is to buy a skin of a man he will meet, and have it cut into a thong, then get the land delivered, and lay the thong down, when a fountain will spring out where the ends meet.

2 Fr. pers. 3 courreic.
and conuenable. Goo penne fourth, my dere frend / and doo hardlyly doubts all that I haue said. For all your werkes shalbe of good expedicioun, and without eny trouble or lettyng / and on the mornne next after that your yefte shalbe graunted and your lettres delyuered to you, ye shall retourne hither to me.' Raymondyn thanne ansuerde, 'My lady, after my power I shal fulfylle al yoynsire' / And thenne they embraced S and kyssel eche other / and toke leue one of other./ Here cesseth thystorye of them / and begynneth for to spek of Raymondyn, whiche toke hys hors, and rode toward Poitiers as 1 hastily as he myght./

Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym. /

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[CH. X.]</th>
<th>RAYMONDYN ASKS A GIFT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Then he is to return.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raymondyn sets out for Poitiers, 1 fol. 21 b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raymondin rides to Poitiers,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where he finds many barons,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who render hom-age to the young Earl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| T Hystorye telleth to vs, that Raymondyn rode so longe that he camme vnto Poytiers, wheras he founde many a high baron, which were commne there for to make homage to the yong Erle Bertrand / and they 20 dyde grete honour and reuereence to Raymondyn, and preyed hym right moche. And the next morow they yede all togidre vnto Saynt Hylary of Poyters, where the deuyne seruyse was doon right worshipfully, And 24 atte that seruyse was the yonge Erle reuested lyke a Chanoyne, as theyre prymat or Abbot / and dyde hys denoyre as it apparteyned / and that of custome was for to be doo. Thenne cam the barons 2 tofore hym / 28 and there one after another, and eche one after hys degre rendred to hym hys homage. And thenne, after alle these things were doon / Raymondin putte hymself fourth before the barons / and with meke & 32 humble contenaunce or manere, said to them: 'Emong
you, my lordes, nobles, Barons of the Countre\(^1\) or Erledom of Poytwo, vouchesaf ye to here & knowe the requeste whiche I wyl putte & make vnto my lord

4 the Erle. and yf it seme you\(^2\) to be lawfull & raisonnable / I beseeche that it playse you for to pray hym to graunt it to me.' And the Barons answered with right a good will, 'we shall doo it.' Thanne they altogidre 8 went before the Erle, to whom Raymondyne spake first moche humbly, sayeng in this manere: 'Right dere sire, humbly I beseeche and require you, that in remuneration, or reward, of alle the seruyses that ever 12 I dide vnto my lord, your fader / on whos sowle god have mercy, ye vouchesaf of your benigne & noble grace for to gyve to me a yefte, the whiche shall cost you but lityl. For knowe you, Sire, that I ne demande 16 of you neyther tounne, Castel, nor fortresse, ne nothinge of grette valew.' Thanne answерde the Erle, 'yf it playseth to my barons / ful wel it playseth to me.' And the Barons said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, 20 syn it is thyng' of so lytyl valewe, as he speketh of, ye oughte not to refuse it to hym / For he is wel worthy therof, and wel he hath deserved it.' And the Erle said to them, 'Syn it pleseth to you for to coun-

24 seyll me soo / I graunt it' / 'demande now,' said the Erles to Raymondyne, 'what ye wyl.' 'Sire,' said he, 'gramercy.'\(^3\) Other yefte I ne axe of you, but pat ye wyl gyue to me, about the fontaynne of soif that is 28 nygh to the roches & wodes / as moche of grounde as the hyde or leder of a hert shall mow comprehende or 32 goo aboute, bothe of lengthe & brede.' 'Forsouthe,' said penne the Erle / 'this I ought not to refuse to you. 32 I gyue it to you,' said the Erle, 'freely, without redenaunce nor homage to be doon to me, nor to my successours for euermore.' Thenne Raymondyne kneled

Raymondyne tells the barons he intends to make a request to the Earl.

He says he asks nothing of great value,

only as much land as a harts skin can compass.

\(^1\) Fr. messigneurs, nobles barons de la conté.

\(^2\) Fr. se il vous semble.

\(^3\) Fr. grans mercis.
and gives letters of gift,  
sealed by the Earl and Barons.  

They hold a feast  
until they go to rest.  
At mass Raymoundyn prays for a good end to his enterprise.

Cap. XI. How Raymoundyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert / and how he bought it /

**Note:** The text appears to be a historical or narrative passage, possibly from a medieval manuscript. The text is written in Middle English and refers to the Barons having a feast, events at a church, and interactions with a man carrying the skin of a hert. The passage includes references to letters of gift, seals, and religious observances.
hertis skynne that I haue within my sack, for to make good huntyng cordes for your hunters." 'By my feyth,' said Raymondyn / 'ye / yf thou wilt selle it; 4 and at one word¹ what shall I paye for hit?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the man, 'ye shall paye to me for it ten shelynges, or ellis ye shall not haue it.' 'Frend,' said thanne Raymondyn to the said man / 'bryng it 8 home with me and I shall pay the there.' And he answerd, 'With a good wille.' Thanne he folowed Raymondyn vnto his hous, and there he delyuered hys hyde / and Raymondyn payed hym for it. And anone after, Raymondyn sent for a Sadelmaker,² to whom he said: 'My frend, yf it plese ³you, ye muste cutte this hyde in fourme of a thonge, in the narowest & smallest wyse that is possible to be doo.' The Sadler did cutte 16 it, and after they leyd it agayn within the sac thus cutte. What shuld I nowe prolonge the materes.⁴ It is trouth that they whiche were commytted for to delyuere to Ramondyn his yeft, rode, and Ray- 20 mondyn with them, toward the fontayne of soyf, so long that they cam vnto the roche that standeth over the said fontayne, where as grett tranchis or keruyng⁵ was made within the hardre roche / and they fonde al 24 about it gretre trees throwen down to the ground, wherof they were gretly meruaayled, For it was ouf of mans mynd that euer trees were cutte there aboute. Raymondyn, that thanne wel knewe that his lady had 28 wrought there, held hys peas. And whan they were within the medowe they toke the thonge out of the sac /.

¹ Fr. en uny mot. ² Fr. selier. ³ Que seme ores plus long prolongation.
Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned came and deluyered to Raymondyn his yefte.

Wan they that shuld deluyer the yefte saw the hyde cutte so smalle, they were of it alle abasshed and said to Raymondyn pat they wyst not what to doo. And there incontynent camme to them two men clothed with cours cloth / the whiche said in this manere. 'We are comme hither for to helpe you.' Thanne they toke out of the sack the hyde and bare it vnto the bottomme of the valley, as nigh the roche as they coude / and there they dide sette a stake in the erthe, and to this stake they fasted the one ende of the hyde / and as they went they sette stakes for to hold with the said thonge rounde aboute the roche / and whan they were comme ayen to the first stake, there was yet agrete remenant of the thonge / and for to sette and fournysshe it they drew it downward to the valey / and so fer they went with it, that they camme to the ende of it. And ye must knowe that after that, it is said in the Countre, and as the very and true history witnesseth there sprange at [the] ende of the said thonge a fayr fontayne, the which rendred so moche of watre that a ryuere wexed or grew therof. Wherof many a mylle dyde grynde corne / and yet now grynden. Thanne they that were there sent for to deluyere to Raymondyn the place, were moche abasshed aswel of the fontayne that they see spryng sodaynly before them, as of the grete compass of the ledler, whiche conteyned wel the space of two mylles of grounde.

Thistoire to vs recounteth that they whiche were ordonned for to deluyere the said yefte, as byfore is said, were moche abasshed when they sawe the watre spryng sodaynly & ranne al along fourth by the valey. And also they were meruaylled of the grete grounde that the thonge compassed, but neuertheles
they deluyered to Raymondyn the ground that was
gyuen to hym after the texte or tenour of hys lettres.
And as soone as they had deluyered it, they wyst neuer
4 where the said two men that were comma there for to
helpe hem becamme, ne whither they were goon.

Theym they departed alle togidre, for to haue re-
tourned vnto Poyters, where as whan they were
8 comma, they dide telle and recounte vnto the Erle and
to his moder this meruayllous aventure. And thamne
the lady said to her somne in this manere: 'Byleue thou
neuer of no thinge me / of that I shall say1 / but yf
12 Raymondyn hath founde somme aventure in the Forest
of Coulombyers, For the same Forest is somtyrne full
of moche meruayllous aventure.' And the Erle an-
ansered: 'by my feth my lady / I byleue well that
16 ye say trouth / and long syn I haue herd say that
aboue the fontayne that is vnder the same roche,
men hath seen fa? & happ many a wounder and mer-
uayllous aventure. but as to hym, I pray to god
20 that he may enjoye it to hys honour and prouffyt.'
'Amen,' said the ladye. As they spake thus togidre,
Raymondin arryued / whiche kneeled soone byfore the
Erle and thanked hym of the worship & curtoysy that
24 he had doon to hym. 'By my feth, Raymondyn,'
said the Erle, 'ye thanke me of a lytil thing', but
betrte I shall doo to you, with godis grace, in tyme to
comme.' 'Now, my frend Raymondyn,' said the Erle,
28 'it is told to me of a grete and meruayllous aventure
whiche is happed as of present in the place that I
haue doon to be deluyered to you by my yefte. Wher-
fore I pray you that ye wil telle to me the pure & very
32 trouth of hit.' 'My fethy,' sayd Raymondyn. 'My
right dere lord / yf they that at 2 your commandement
haue deluyered the place to me haue not told you
of more than they haue seen / they haue doo wel.

1 Fr. Ne me croy jamais de chose que je dic.
Nevertheless it is truth that the space of grounde compassed aboute with the hydr conteyneth two mylles. And as for the two men whiche camme there clothed with cours cloth, and hau to compasse & to mesure the place / and also of the ruyere whiche soundred1 soddayny / of alle this, my lord, it is pure trouth.' 'By my feith, Raymondyn,' sayd the Erle, 'ye telle to vs a great meruaylle /. In good feyth, 8 Raymondyn, lyke as it semeth to vs and supposen, ye most nedes hau founde som adventyre, and I pray you that ye wyl declare it vnto vs, for to haue vs out of the melencolye of it.' 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 12 'yet hau I not founde but wel & honour / but my ryght dere lord, I loue my self for to be & there to dwelle more than in any other place, bycause that it is commonly renommē2 anenturous and welhappy coun- tre / and so I hope that god shall send to me some good aventure which by hys plaisire shall be to me worshipfull & prouffytable bothe to my sowle and to my body. And, my ryght dere lord, enquyre ye me nomore therof / 20 For certaynly, as of present, I can telle you nomore of it /.' Thanne the Erle, that moche loued hym, held therof hys peas, bycause that he wold not angre hym. And this doon, Raymondyn toke hys leue of the Erle 24 and of his moder. And for as now I shall say no more of them, And shall say how Raymondyn re- turned toward his lady, where as he wyst that he had lefte her /

Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward his lady./

1 Fr. est sourz. 2 Fr. renommē.
lady, departed at this ooure fro Poitiers hastily al alone, and rode tyll he camne vnto the high Forest of Coulobiers, and descended fro pe hylle down in to the valey and camne to the fontayne where [he founde] his lady, that moche joyously receyued hym, and said to hym in this manere: 'My frend, ye begyune wel for to kepe and hyde our secretes: and yf ye perseuere thus, grete 8 wele shall therof comme to you / and soone ye shall see and perceyue of it.' Thanne spake Raymondyn and sayd in this manere: 'Dere lady, I am & shalbe ouer redy for to doo aftir my power all your playsires.'

12 'In dede, Raymondyn,' said the lady / 'tyll ye haue wedded me / ye ne may no ferther see ne know of my secretes.' 'Lady dere,' said Raymondyn, 'I am alredye therto.' 'not yet,' said the lady / 'For first ye must goo vnto Poitiers for to pray the Erle and his moder and alle your other parentes and frenedes,' that they wil comme and honoure you with their personnnes at youre weddyng, in this place, on monday next commyng: to 20 thende that they see the noblesses that I think and purpose for to doo for to enhauence you in honour & worship / and that they take no suspicion but that ye be maryed after your estate and degree. And wel ye may teH to them that ye shall wedd the daughter of a kinge / but no ferther ye shall not dyscouere of it. and therfor kepe you as dere as ye haue the love of me.' 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn, 'doubte you not therof.'

28 'Frend,' sayd the lady, 'haue ye noo care that for what folke that ye can brynge / but that they all shalbe wel and honourably receyued & wel lodged and wel festyed / bothe of delcyous meetes and drynkes, and 32 of allmaner athinge acordyng / as wel to them as to theire horses. Therfore, my frend, goo surely and be not doubtous of nothing.' They thenne kyssed eche other / & Raymondyn departed fro the lady / of whiche

1 omitted in MS. Fr. ou il trouva.
Raymondin goes to Poitiers,

where he finds the Earl with many of his barons.

Raymondin invites the Earl to his wedding at the Fountain of Soif;

The Earl is abashed at not being taken into confidence before.

But Raymondin says that love has done what it liked with him.

They ask his lady's lineage,

which he cannot tell.

thistory sylenceeth / and bygynneth to spek of Raymondin which goth toward Poitiers.

Now telleth to vs thistorye that so longe rode Raymondin after that he was departed fro his 4 lady that he camme to Poitiers, wher he fonde the Erle and his moder & grete foyson of Barons with them, whiche were right wel glad of his commyng / and demanded of hym fro whens he camme. And he ansernde 8 to them that he camme fro his dysporte. And after that they had spoken longe tyme of one thing and of other, Raymondin yede byfore the Erle & kneled & sayd to hym thus: 'Right dere lord, I moche humbly besech 12 you, on alle the seruyses that ever I shall nowe doo to you, pat ye vouchesaaf for to doo to me so moche of honour as to comme on monady next to my weddyng, to the fontayn of Soif. and that it playse you to 16 bryng thither with you my lady your moder, and alle your barons also.' And when the Erle understode hym he was moche abasshed. 'How,' said the Erle, 'fayre Cousyn Raymondin, are ye as now so strangued 20 of vs that ye marye you without that we know therof tyl the day of weddyng? For certayn we gyue vs thereof grette meruaylle, For we wende yf your wylle had be to take a wyf / to habe be they of whom ye 24 shuld first haue taken counseyl.' Thanne ansered Raymondin, 'My right dere lord, dysplayse you nat therfore, For lune is of so grete puyssance that she maketh thinges to be graunted and doon as it playseth 28 to her / and so ferfourth I haue goo in this matere that I may not flee it; but neuertheles all were it soo that I myght doo soo / yet by myn assent I shuld not be fro it.' 'Now thanne,' said the Erle, 'telle vs what 32 she is and of what lynee.' 'By my feyth,' said Raymondin, 'ye demaunde of me a thing / to the whiche I can not gyue none anserue, for neuer in my lyf I me dide enquyre me therof.' 'Forsouthe,' sayd the Erle, 'it is 36
grett meruaylle. Raymondyn taketh a wyf that he
knoweth not, ne also the lynage that she commeth of.'
'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 'sith it suffyseth me as
4 therof, ye oughte wel to be playsed, For I take no wyf
that shall brawle or stryue with you / but only with
me / and I alone shall bere eyther joye or sorowe for
it, after that it shall please to god.' 'By my fethy,
8 sayd the Erle to Raymondin, 'ye say right wel / and
as for me I ne wil kepe you therfro / but sith it is soo,
I pray to god deuotly that he wil send you peas &
good auenture togidre / and right gladly we shall goo
12 to your weddynge, and with vs shall comme thither
my lady and many other ladyes and damoyselles of
our baronye.' And Raymondyn answered, 'My lord,
right gretly I thanke you, & as I byleue, whan ye
16 shalbe there and shal see the lady / ye shalbe pleased
of her.' And thenne they lefte to speke of this matere,
and spake of one thing & of other so long, that tyme
of souper camme. And notwithstanding, the Erle
20 thought euer on Raymondin and his lady, and said
in hym self that somme Fortune he had fonde at the
fontayne of soyf. 

IN this manere thoughte longe the Erle, so moche
24 that the styward cam and said to hym: 'My
lord, all is redy, yf it plese you for to comme.' 'For-
south,' said he, 'it plaisteth me well.' Thanne they
weshe theyre handes, sette at the table / and wel they
28 were serued. And aftir souper they spak of many
materes, & after they went to bed. On the morowe
erly, the Erle aros & herif his masse and made the
barons to be manded & boden for to goo with hym to
32 the weddnyge of Raymondin / and they camme incont-
tinent. And the said Erle sent hys message for the
Erle of Forestz, whiche was brother to Raymondyn.
In this meane while made the said lady alle redy in

2 Fr. maistre d'hostel. 3 Fr. demantiers.

MELUSINE.
Melusine makes ready in a meadow a noble feast.

The Earl goes to the wedding; he inquires about Raymondin’s wife, but can find out nothing.

At last they come to the fountain, and then to the meadow, at which they marvel, because of the many tents, knights, ladies, cooks, and the fair chapel.

1 fol. 27 b.

The Earl and his company set out to the wedding;

the medow under the Fontayne of Soyf, and suche apparell was there made, so grete & so noble, that for to say trouth / nothing; acordyng for suche a Feste fauwed ne waunted there, but honourably might a 4 kinge with alle his estate haue be receyued therat. The sonday camme that alle made them self redy for to goo to the fontayne of Soyf, at the weddyng of Raymondyyn. The night passed & the day camme. And 8 thanne the Erle with hys moder / her ladyes & damoyselles / and with alle the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles of the lande / toke hys way toward the fontayne. And as they rode thither the Erle enquyred of Raymondyyn 12 the estate of hys wyf, but nothinge he would telle to hym therof. Wherof the Erle was sorowfull, And so longe they yede talking togidre that they camme vpon the hille, where they sawe the grete trenchis or keruyng 16 in the harde roche that sodaynly were made / and the fontayne also whiche sourdred & sprang their haboundauntly. Thenne meruaylled therof euerychone, how so sodaynly that might haue be doo. And they yede 20 fourth and biheld down toward the medowe and sawe grete plente of fayre & riche pauillons or tentes, rigth1 high2 / so grete, so noble, and so meruaylously facyoned that euery man awondred therof. And 24 namely,4 when they dide see & perceyued so grete company of noble folke, as of knihtes & squyers, that went vp & doun in the medowe and without, for to goo fetche suche things as neded to the feste. And 28 also might they see there right grete foysyn of ladyes & damoyselles richely apparrayled & arayed, many horses, palfreys, & coursers were there. There might they see kychons & Cookes within, dressing meetes of 32 dyuere manerces. And ouer the fontayne they sawe a fayre chappel of our lady & ymages within right connyngly kerued & entaylled, and of almener of

2 Fr. suurdit. 3 Fr. si treshaultz. 4 Fr. par especial.
ornamentes so richely ordeyned, that neuer so grete richesse they had seen before that tyme in no churche, wherof they meruaylled moche, and said oon to other.

Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camwe to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompanyed of alle the Barons in hys land.

Ornamentes so richely ordeyned, that neuer so grete richesse they had seen before that tyme in no churche, wherof they meruaylled moche, and said oon to other.

1 N[ow] telleth to vs thystorye, that whan the Erle & hys folk were descended down fro the montayne / an auncyent knyght, nobly & richely clothed and arayed, whiche rode on a fayre palfray, and had in hys felawship xxiiij\(^2\) men of worship richely & nobly aourned\(^2\) & wel horsed / cam\(\text{me}\) gladly & with mery contenaunce toward the Erle.

First he mete with the Erle of Forest & with Raymondyn & theyre felawship, for they rode before. And whan he perceyued Raymondyn, whiche wel he knew among\(^1\) other / he yede tofor hym & made to hym honour & reverence, and his brother Erle of Forest he salued moche honourably, & theyre felawship also. And shortly to spek, this auncyent knight receyued them worshipfully, sayeng\(^1\) to Raymondin in this manere : 'My lord, I pray you that I may be ledde before the Erle of Poitiers yf it playse you, \(^3\) for I desyre to spek with hym.' And so Raymondyn made hym to be ledde vnto the said Erle. And whan thauncyent knight cam\(\text{me}\) before the Erle, he salewed hym swetly, sayeng\(^1\), 'my lord, ye be welcomme.' And the Erle answered\(^2\) / 'and ye are wel mete with me. nowo 32 telle ye to me why ye dide axe aftir me.' Thanne said the knight thus to the Erle : 'Sire, My lady Melusyne

\(^2\) Fr. aourné.
of Albany recommendeth her to you as moche as she may / and thanketh you of the gret & high honour that ye doo vnto Raymondyn your Cousin & also vnto her whan ye vouchesafte of your grace to comme hither 4 for to bere vnto them felawship att their wedding.'  'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'In this cas / as ye may telle to your lady / is no thankes to be had, for I am holden for to do vnto my Cousyn all worship & honour 8 possible to me to be doo.'  'Sire,' said thatancient knight, 'ye say full curtoisly / but my lady is sage for to knowe what she ought for to doo / and toward you she hath sent both me and my felawship also.'  'Sire 12 knight,' said the Erle, 'this playseth me wel. but knowe ye that I wende nat to hane found lodged so nygh to me so noble a lady as your is, ne that had so many of noble folk with her as she hath.'  'Ha, sire!' sayd the 16 knight, 'whan my lady wil she may hane of knightes & squyres more than she hath now with her / for she ne dare doo / but to commande.'  And thus talking one to other, they camme vnto the pauyllon. And the 20 Erle was lodged there within the moost riche lodgys that euer he had seen. After every man was lodged honourably after his estate / & they 1 said that within theire owne places at hom they were not so 24 wel lodged. Their horses were lodged within the grett tentes / so at large & at theire ease / that no palfrener was there but that he was full wel played. And alle they meruailled fro whens so moch of goode 28 and suche plente of richesses might comme there so haboundauntly. /

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider. /
than Melusyne, sage & wyse, sent toward her paunceynt knight, that had held company to the Erle, and also with hym she sent many ladies 1 and 4 damoysselles of high and noble Estate that moch honourably salued and honoured the Countesse and her daughter / and ledde them to be lodged in a fayr pauillon made of riche cloth of gold, richely set with 8 perlys & with precyous stones. And, shortly to spek, they were alle so wel & so rychely lodged that moche they meruayled of the grete riches that they see with in the pauillon. And there was the Countesse 12 recyued with moch grete and melodyous sowne of almaner instruments and alle they in her companye were honourably lodged. And whan the Countesse had rested a lytil while, and that she was arayed with 16 her rych rayments / also her doughtir Blanche. Knyghtes & Squyres / ladyes and damoysselles of her companye went into the chambre of the spouse, the whiche Chambre was fayrer and passed of ryches alle 20 the other chambres, but whan they sawe Melusyne, & perceyued her rych tyres / her riche gowne, alle set with precyous stones & perlys / the color that she had about her nek, hir gerdeH & her other rayments, that 24 she had on her, they all meruayled gretly / and specially the Countesse, that said / consideryng that grete estate / Neuer had I wende ne supposed that no queene ne Emperesse had be in alle the world, that 28 might haue founde suche jewellis so riche & so grete in value. What shuld I make long plee / the Erle of poitiers and one of the moost hygh barons, that is to wete, the Erle of Forest, addressed and ledde the 32 spouse vnto the said Chapelle of our lady, which was so rychely aurned, & arayed so nobly that wonder it was to see / as of parements & ornaments of cloth 2 of gold, purfeld and sett with perlys and precyous stones, 36 so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

1 fol. 29 b. and are wel- comed by the ancient knight, and so rychely lodged that they marvel much.

The Countess and her daughter are riche dressed,

and go to Melusine's chamber,

where they mar- vel much at her rich array.

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melusine to the richly adorned chapel,
meruaylle it was to loke on. fayre ymage straungely kerued / as of Crucifixe & figure of our lady, all of pure and fyn gold / and bokes were there, so wel writon and so riche that in alle the world rycher bokes 4 might nat haue be. And there was a bysshop that wedded them & songe masse before them.

Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner. /  

After divine service  

the company dine.  

They are served by squires,  

and eat off gold and silver plate  

divers meats.  

Aftir that the deuyne seruyse was doon they rested them, and soone after the dyner was redy within a moche riche and grete pauyllon in the myddes of the medowe. Eche one satte there 12 aftir hys degree, and serued they were of dyuerse & good meetes, and of many and dyuerse wynes, and haboundaunce of ypocras 1 was there. There serued the squyers richely clothed one lyke another, whiche 16 were grete in nombre. They were serued alle in plat of pure gold & syluer, wherof alle the companye was meruayllled. And assoone as one messe was taken fro the table, the othe[1] messe was redy. And so of 20 dyuers meetes they were serued many a cours moche honourably. / 

Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted.  

And after that they had dyned, and the tables were take vp & graces said, and that they were serued with ypocras & spyces, the Knyghtes and Squyers went & armed them and lept on horsback. 28 And thenne the spouse & many other ladyes were sett upon the scaffold or stalage. Thanne byganne the Joustying / the Erle of Poytiers jousted moche wel and so dide the Erle of Forest and alle there knightes 32 and 2 squyers. but the Knyghtes of the spouse dide
Meruayl. For they ouerthrew bothe knightes and horses
vynto the grounde. Thanne camme there Raymondyn
that satte on a fayre & strong courser, ale in whyte,
4 & at hys first cours he ouerthrew the Erle of Forestz,
his brother / and so valyautntly he demened hym self
that there ne was knight on both partyes but that
he redoubted hym. And thann the Erle of Poitiers
8 seeyng his appertys of armes meruaylled what he
was / and dressed hys shed, & holding the speere
alowe ranne aynest hym / but Raymondyn that knew
hym wel distourned hys hors and adressed his cours
12 toward a knight of Poitou and suche a strok he gaaf
hym, that both man & hors ouerthrew to the erth.
And shortly to spek Raymondyn dide that day so wel
that every man said that the knight with the white
16 armes had jousted right strongly. The night camme
and the justyng ended. Wherfore eche of them went
agayn in to their paunyllons where they toke alitil
reste / but soone after was the souper redy. And
20 thanne they yede in to the grete tente / and after they
had waschen they set them at table & wel and richely
they were serued / and after souper were the tables
take vp / and they wesshed theyre handes, & graces
24 were said. This doon the ladys wente asyde pryuely
and toke other gownes on them & camme agayn for to
daunse. The feste was fayre / and the worship was
there grete / so that the Erle and alle that they were
28 camme with hym meruaylled greatly 1 of the grete
ryches & honour that they sawe there. And when it
was tyme they ledd the spouse to bed / moche honour-
ably within a wonder meruaylous & riche paunyon.
32 And there the Erles of Poitiers and of Forests betoke
her vnto the ladys handes. And thanne the Count-
tesse of Poitiers and other grete ladyes had the spouse
to bed, and dide endoctryne her in suche things that
36 she oughte for to doo / how be it that she was ynough

 Melusine's men being victorious.

Raymondin ouer-
throws the Earl
of Forest,
and demeanes
himself so that
all are afraid of
him.

The Earl of Poitiers runs against
him,

but Raymondin
turns aside and
falls a knight of
Poitiers.

Every man
praises the
prowess of Ray-
mondin,

They have sup-
per in the great
tent,

then they have a
dance.

They lead the
spouse to bed,

the Countess
tells her what to
do,

1 fol. 31 b.
but finds she knows everything.

The ladies wait for Raymmondin, who is speaking with the Earls.

A knight sent by the ladies comes for Raymmondin, and tells him that all is ready, whereat the company laugh.

Raymmondin is led to the bridal chamber and brought to bed.

Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the 28 bed wheron Raymmondyn and Melusyne laye.

At theo wordes they went and ledde Raymmondyn in the pauyllon and soone he was brought to 32 bed. And thanne kamme there pe Bysshop that had

1 Fr. frappez du plat.  2 Fr. je ne syus mie celluy que.
spoused them and dide halowe theire bed. and after
that euerychon toke his lene / and the courteyns were
drawn aboute the bed. And of this matere recounteth
4 no ferther thystorye, but speketh of the other, of
which som went to bed, 1 and som went agayn to the
dauurse and ellis wher they lyste for to goo. And
after thystory I shaH speke of Raymondyn and of the
8 lady, how the[y] governed them bothe togidre. and
what wordes they had among[ ] them two as the[y] laye
togidre.

THYstorye telleth to vs in this partye that whan
12 they euerychon departed and goon out of the
Pauyllon and the stakes of hit joyned & shette, Me-
lusyne spak and said to Raymondyn in this manere:
‘My right dere lord and frend, I thanke you of the
16 grete honour that hath be doo to me at this day of
your parents & freundes / and of that also / that ye kepe
so secretly that which ye promysed me at oure first
couennauente, 2 and ye moste know for certayn that yf
20 ye kepe it euer thus wel, ye shalbe the moost mighty &
moost honoured that euer was of your lynage. And ye
do0 the contrary, bothe you & your heyres shall haft
litil & litil in decaye & fro your estate. Ne of the
24 land that ye shall holde & possesse, that tyme ye hold
not your promyss / yf it be so that ye doo it, whiche
god forbode, hit shal neuer be affir possessed ne holden
alle hoH by you ne by your heyrs.’ And thanne to her
28 answerd Raymondyn: ‘My right dere lady, doubte
you not of hit, For yf it playseth to god / that shall
neuer befaH by me.’ And the lady answerd to hym in
this maner: ‘My right dere freund / sith it is soo that
32 so ferfourth I haue putte my self I most abyde the
wylle of god, trustyng euer of your promesse. Kepe
you thanne wel, my fayre freund & felawe that ye
3 fawte not your Couennaunt. For ye shuld be he,
after me, that moost shuld lese by it.'  'Ha / Ha, lady dere,' said Raymondin, 'therof ye oughte not to be in doubte / For that day, faylle to me god, when I fawte of Couuenant.' 1 'Now my dere frend,' said the lady, 4 'lete vs lene our talkyng therof. For certaynly as for my part there shal be no fawte. but that ye shal be the moost fortunat & happy that ever was of your lynee, and more puyssaunt thane any of them shalbe / 8 without it be for fawte of your self.' And thus lefte they thayre talkyng: And as thaystoyre reherceth, was that nyght engendred or begoten of them both the valyaunt Uryan. whiche afterward was kyng of 12 Chipre, as ye shal be here herafter.

Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke thayre leue of Raymondyn and of 16 Melusyne. /

T Hystoyre telleth to vs in this partye that so longe abode these two louers, beyng abed, that the sonne was hye. Thanne aroos Raymondyn and made 20 hym redy, and yssued out of the Paunillon. And as thenne were alle redy, both therles of Poyters and of Forests waytyng aftir Raymondyn, whiche they ledli to the Chapell and there they herde their masse deuoutly / 24 and after they retourned vnto the medowe, where the feste & reueH bygan of new, moche grete. but therof we lene to speke. and shal be say of the Countesse & other ladyes, which aourned & made redy Melusyne. 28 And after they yede and ledd melusine moche honourably vnto the Chapel 3 forsaiE And there they herd masse. thosertory of whiche was grete and riche. And after that the deynye seruyse was doon, they 32 retourned vnto the Pauillon. What shalde I make

1 Fr. couvenant.
long tale herof; the feste was grete and noble, and lasted XV dayes complete & hole. And Melusyne gave many grete yeftes and jewels both to the ladyes & damoiselles, also to knightes & squyers. And after the feste the Erle, and the Countesse his moder, and alle the barons, ladyes, and damoiselles of theire felowship, toke leve of Melusyne, whiche conueyed the said 8 Countesse and her daughter vnto & byonde the litil townne of Coulombiers. And at departyng Melusyne gaf to the Countesse a fayre & moche riche owche of gold, in value vnestymable. and to blanche her doughter, a gerland all set with perlys with saphirs rubyes and with many other precyous stones in grete nombre. And alle they that sawe the said owche and gerland, meruaylled gretyly of the beaulte goodnes & value of it. And ye moste knowe, that so moche gaf Melusyne bothe to more & lesse, that none there was at the feste / but that he preysed gretyly Melusyne of her yeftes. and alle abasshed & meruaylled they were 20 of her grete ryches. and they alle sayd that Raymondyn was gretyly mightily and valiauntly married. And after that all these things were doon and perfourmed, Melusyne toke leve of the Erle and of the Countesse moche honourably, and of alle the Baronye. and with a fayre and noble compajny retourned to her pauillon. And Raymondin conueyed euuer the Erle. And as they rode on theire way, the Erle of Poytiers said to 28 him in this manere: 'Fayr Cousyn telle me, yf ye goodly may, of what lynee or kynred is your wyf / how be it that thauncyent knight dide thanke us of thonour & worship that we bare to you by hys lady 32 Melusyne of Albanye. but yet I demande it of you / bycause that we gladly wold knowe the certaynte of it. For of asmoche that we may perceyne by her estate & behauyng, nedes it muste be, that she be yssued & 36 comme fro moch noble ryche and mighty lynee. And
the cause whiche moeneth vs for to desyre and be willing to knowe it / is bycause that we doubte to have mesprysed anenst thonour that apparteyneth to be doo vnto her noble & goodly personne / 'But my feyth,' 4 said the Erle of Forest, 'al thus was my wylle to have said soo.'

Thystorye saith that thanne Raymondin was gretyly wroth, when he herd the requeste 8 that the Erle of Poytiers, his lord, made vnto him / and also likewyse the erle of Forest hys brother. For he loued / doubted and preysed so moche his lady / that he hated alle thinges 12 whiche he demed desagreable to her. Not withstanding he answerd to them full softe & fayr: 'By my feyth, my lord / and you my brother, 1playse it to you to knowe / that by rayson naturel fro whosoever I hyd 16 my secrete / fro you I ought not to hyde it / yf it were suche thinges that I knew of, or might say. and therefore I shall answere to you, to that ye haue demanded of me / after that I knowe of it. Ye thanne muste 20 knowe, that never I ne demanded ne dyde enquire me so fer of it / as now redyly ye haue demanded & enquyred of me, / but so moche I knowe, and may wel say of her, that she is a kyngis daughter, mighty & 24 high terryen, And by the state, behauyng, & gouernement that ye haue seen in her, ye may perceyue ynough, that she nys ne haue be norysshed in mendycite or pouerte / but in superfluyte of honour & largesse, 28 and amonge plente of goodes. And I requyre you as to my lordes & frendes, that ye ne enquyre nomore therof. For none other thinges ye ne may knowe therof by me. and suche as she is, she playseth me 32 wel, and am right wel content of her. And wel I knowe that she is the rote of alle myn erthy goodes present & to comme.' Thenne answerd the Erle of Poytiers: 'By my feyth, fayr Cousin, as for my part I 36
think not to enquire of you nomore therof, For as ye haue putte vnto vs vs wysely the high honours, riches, maneres, and behauying of my Cousin, your wyf, we oughte to conceyue of ourself, that she is of noble birth & extraction, and of right high and mighty lynee. ‘By my feyth, my lord,’ said the Erle of Forest, ‘ye say southe, and of my part I thinke nat to enquyre, ne 8 demande of hym eny thing more therof / how be it that he is my broaper. For certaynly I hold hym right wel ensuered profo aftir myn aduys.’ But, helas! he aftirward fayllled Conenaunt. wherfore Raymondyn lost 12 his lady, and also the Erle of Forest toke deth therfore by Geffray with the grete tothe, Whereof it shal be spoken herafter more playnly. Raymondyn theenne toke leue of the Erle, & of his brother, and of the 16 barons, and retourned to the fontayne of Soyf. And also the Erle of Forest toke leue of the erle of Poytiers, of hys moder, and of hys sustir, and of aH the barons right honourably, and panked them alle of thonour 20 that they had doon to him at hys brothers weddyng. And thanne therle of Potyers, his moder, and hys Suster, with alle their felawship & meyne retourned to poitiers, and evere one of the Barons retourned to 24 their Countrees. but there ne was none of them / but that he merueylle & gretly wondred of the grete riches that they had seen at the wedding of Raymondyn. And here resteth thystorye to spek of them / and shal 28 spek of Raymondyn & of his lady, how they were after the departyng of theirre parents and frendes. /

Thystory recounteth to vs that whan Raymondin was retourned toward his lady / he founde the 32 feste greter than it was before / and also greter plente of noble folk than neuer was there before. Alle whiche folke yede, & said to hym with a high voyce: ‘My lord ye be welcomme as he to whom we are seruaunts, 36 & whom we wyl obey.’ And pis said the ladyes as which they promise;
wel the lordes. And thanne Raymoundin ansuerd to them, 'gramercy of the honoure that ye profere to me.' And there thanne camme Melusyne, who moche honourably sayd to hym: 'welcomme be ye' / and had hym apart, & reherced to hym word by word alle the talking that was betwix the Erle and hym. and also what his brother, Erle of Forest, had said, And yet said the lady to hym: 'Dere frende Raymoundin / as 8 longe as ye shal contynue soo / alle goodes shall habounde to you. Fayre frende, I shall to morowe gyue leue to the moost partye of our folk that ben here comme to our feste. For other thinges we must 12 ordeyne.' Raymoundyn ansuered: 'ladye, so as it shall playse you.' And whan the morowe camme Melusyne departed her folke / grete quanytye went their way / and suche as she wold abode there. And now resteth 16 thystory of the thinges byfore said. and begynne to treate how the lady bygan to bylde the noble fortresse of Lusignen.

IN this partye telleth thenne thystory that whan the 20 feste was ended and that suche as she wold were goon / she anoone aftir made to comme grete foyson of werkmen / as massons, Carpenters, and suche that can dygge & delue. Whyche at her commandement fylled 24 dounne the grete trees, and made the roche fayre and clene. There Melusyne sett every man to werk. eche one dide his Crafte, they encysed the roche & made a depe & brode foundement. and in few dayes they 28 brought the werk so ferfoure / that every man wondred of suche a fayre and stronge bylding so soone doon. And every Satirday Melusyne payed truly her werkmen / and meet & drynk they had 2 in haboundauce. 32 but trouth it is / that no body knew from whens these werkmen were. and wete it that soone was the Fortres made up / not only with one warde / but two strong wardes, with double walles were there, or oon coude 36
have comme to the stronge donjon of it. Round about
the walles were gret tours machecholy, & strong pos-
ternes / and also barreres or wayes gooyng out fourth
4 encysed and kerued within the hard roche. The Erle
of Poytiers / the barons and alle the peple meruaylled
moche of the said werke that so soone was doon, so
grete, so stronge, & so fayre. Then the lady Melusyne
and her husband Raymondyn lodged them within it.
and anoone after Raymondin made to calle to a feste
there, alle the noble men therabout. There camme the
erle of Poytiers, both hys moder and hys suster / the
12 Erle of Forestz, the Barons & noble men of their
landes, also of other countres and nacions. And also
there was so many laydes & damoyselles, that they
wel might sufyyse att that day. There was jousting,
dauncyng, and grete joye made with frendly and
cuertoys deeling. And when Melusyne sawe tyme and
place conuenable, she presented herself before the two
Erles / barons and noble men, and humbly said to
them in this manere: 'My fayre and good lorde, we
thanke you moche of the high honoure that ye haue
doon to us now at this feste— and the cause why we
haue prayed you to comme I shal declare it to you.' /
24 L
Ordes,' said the lady, 'here I have assembled your
noble personnes, for to have your Counsell
how this fortesse shall be called, for that it be in
mynd how that it hath be happely bylde & made.'
28 By my feyth, fayre Cousyn,' said the Erle of Poiters,
'we as in general sayen to you, asoure wyll is / that
ye your ownself shall / as right is / gyue name to it.
For emong we alle is not so moch wyt as in you alone
32 that haue bylde up & achyeuyd so strong and fayre a
place as thesame is / and wete it, that none of us
shall entremete hym to doo that ye spek of.' Thanne
said Melusyne: 'Dere Sire, Wylfully and for the nones
36 ye haue kept pis answere for to jape with me, but what

The Earl of Poitiers says she should name it, because of her
wisdom;

The Earl of Poitiers says she should name it, because of her
wisdom;

she answers that they mock her,
The Naming of the Castle of Lusignan. [Ch. XIX.

thereof is, I require and pray you that thereof ye telle to me your entencion.' 'Certaynly, dere Cosyn,' sayd the Erle of Poytiers, 'none of us alle shal medle with aH. before you. For by reason / sethen ye haue so moche doon as to haue achuyued & made the moste strong and payre place that ever man sawe in this Countree / ye owe to gyue name to it your owne self after your playsire.' 'Ha / ha, my lord,' sayd Melusyne, 'sith it ne 8 may none otherwise be, / and that I see your playsire is that I gyue name to it, hit shalbe called after myn owne name, Lusygnen.' 'But my feyth,' sayd the Erle, 'the name setteth full wel to it for two causes, First 12 bycause ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek language is as moch for to say / as thing meruayllous or commyng fro grete merueyille, and also this place is bylded and made meruaylously. For I 16 byleue not other wyse / but that as longe as the world shal laste 1 shall there be founde & seen somme Wonder & meruayllous thinges.' Thanne they alle answerd in this manere: 'My lord, no man in the world might gyue 20 betre name, that bettre shuld sette to it than she hath doo after manere of the place / also aftir the interpretyng made by you of her owne name,' and on this oppynyon & worde were alle of one acorde. Whiche name 24 within few dayes was so publyed, that it was knOWN through alle the land. and yet at this day it is called soo. They soone aftir toke leue, and Melusyne and Raymondin also gaaf hem dyuers & riche yeftes at 28 theire departyng. And herafter sheweth thystory how Raymondin and Melusyne / right wysly, mightyly and honorably lyued togidre. /

After the feste was ended, Melusyne, that was grete 32 with child, bare her fruyte unto pe tyme that alle wymen owen to be deleyured of their birthe. and thanne she was deleyured of a man child, whiche was moche fayre, and wel proporcyoned or shapen in alle 36
hys membres / except his vysage that was short and
large / one ey he had rede, and the other blew. he
was baptysed, & named was Uryan, and wete it that
he had the grestest eerys that ever were seen on eny
child of hys age / and when they were ouergrown,
they were as grete as the handlyng of a fan. Melusyne
penne called to hym Raymondin, and to hym she said
in this manere: 'My ryght swete felawe & frend, I
wold not see thyn owne herytage to be lost / which by
raison thou oughtest to haue by vertue of patrimonye,
for Guerrende Penycence and all the marches aboute
apparteynen to the & to thy brother / goo thanne
thither, and make the king of Bretons to be sommed
that he wyl receyue you in your ryght & heritance /
shewyng to hym how your fader slew his nevew in
defense & warde of hys owne body. For which
encheson doubting the sayd kyng / lefte the Countrey,
and neuer durst retourne / and yf he wyl not receyue
you to ryghte, be not therof abasshed. For afterward
he shal be glad, & fayne when he shall mow doo it.'
Thenne answerd Raymondyn, 'there nys nothing that
ye commande me, but that I shall doo after my power.
For wel I considere & see that all your werkes ne
tenden but to wele & worship.' 'Frende,' sayd the lady,
'it is wel rayson, sith that all your trust ye putte on
me that I hold to you trouth. It is trouth that your
fader, by hys predecessors, oweth to haue many grete
things in bretayne, the whiche shulle be declared unto
you whan ye be there. It muste thanne be by you
understand, that Henry of Leon, your fader, that tyme
he was in Bretayn for hys worthynes, grete policye &
valiantnes, and as he that drad no man that owed hym
eyl wyH, he was moche loued with the kinge there /
in so moche that the said kyng made hym hys
Seneschall & Captayn general ouer alle his men of
werre. This king of Bretons had a nevew / but no
fair of body, but
of short visage,
and one eye red,
and the other
blue. He is named
Urian,
and he had ears
as large as a fan
handle.
and bids him go
to the king of
Britain, to enter
into his inheritance.

He promises to
go.

Henry of Leon,
Raymondin's
father,
was Seneschal
and Captain-
General to the
king of Britain,
child begoten of his body he had. Whych ye newe, by
the introduction of som, had grete enuye on Henry,
your fader. For to hym they said in this manere:
"Ha! Ha! right-full heyre of Bretayne. Wo! is us to see your grete domage / that is / you to be putte down
fro the noble enherytaunce of Bretayne. yf by fawte
& lak of courage ye suffre it, what shal men say? saye poyntyng you with the fynger shal say, Loo, 8
yonder is the fole that for his feynted herte hath be
putte out of so noble enherytaunce as is the royamne of
Bretayne." And whan he understode the said enjurous
wordes, he said: "Who is he that dare vsurpe & take 12
fro me my right, I knowe none / but that god wyl
haue me to be punysshed. and wel I wot, put the
kinne, my lord & oncle, wyl not take ony other to be
hys heyre than my self." Thenne sayd one of them to 16
hym: "By my feyth, ye are [not] enfourmed in this
matere, For the kinne, your oncle, hath made &
ordeyne hys heyre, Henry of Leon, and as now
letters of graunt ben therof made." Whan the yong man 20
herd these wordes, he as wood wroth ansuered to them,
"wete it for certeyn / that if I knewe these wordes to
be trew, I shuld putte hastily remedy thereto / in so
moche that never he shold hold land ne no possession." 24
And thenne answerde to hym a knight named Josselyn
Dupont: "certaynly it is soo / and for we wold haue
none other to be kynge in brytayne but you, after the
decees of pe kinne, we warne you therof. For this 28
hath the kynge your oncle doon secretly, for ye shuld
not knowe of it, and wete it that alle we that now are
here, were present whan that couenaunt was made.
asse my felawes ye I say trouthe or not." he demanded 32
of them ye it was so, And they ansuerd "ye."

The yongman thanne said, "Payre lorde, I thanke
you of your good wylle whiche ye shewe to me,
go youre way. For wel I shall kepe Henry therfro." 36
They took they're leave, for they rought not for no thing that might fall thereof, so that they might see your faders deth. For enuious and wroth they were that the kinge louyd hym so wel, and for nought sette they were by hym. knowe ye muste, that on the sunday next, in the morning, the kingis nevew armed hym self / yede in to the wod of Leon Castel, and 8 there wayted tyl yowr fader passed by, whiche he perceyued gooyng alone to hys dysport about hys Castel of Leon / thinkynge on none euyl ne harme / and sodayuly cryed on hym, "Now shalt thou dyev, false traytoure, that fro me woldest haue and vsurpe myn herytage " / and foynyng at hym with hys swerd, wold haue ouerthrawen youre fader, but he glanched asyde / and so the kyngis nevew / for he recounted ayenst nothing, fell down to the grounde, and the swerd scaped fro hys hand that then your fader toke up, the sayd neewew that sawe hys wepen lost, toke a lytil knyf that he had and ranne ayenst hym / but your fader, with the pomel of the swerd, gaaf to hym suche a stroke on the heed / that notwithstanding hys yron hat, he broke hys heed so that he fell downe deel, but whan he knew that it was he / he was sorry and woo / 24 retourned home / toke all hys hauoyr and goodes meuable, and came in to the Shyre that men now call Forests, and grette help & comfort he founde in a lady, of whyche as now I kepe me styl to spek ony ferther. 28 And after the departure of her fro hym, he toke by maryage the sustir of hym that thoO dayes gouerned the erledome of Poytiers, on whyche he gate many children of the whyche ye are one. / 32 'Frend,' said Melusyne, 'now haue I denysed and reheered to you how your fader departed fro Bretayn, and left hys landes and possessyons voyde, without lord, whiche owen to be yours. You theenne 36 shal goo toward an vncl of yours whiche is called
Alain of Quyngant / and ye shall make you to be
knowen of hym / and he shall bylene you ynoough of
all that ye shall sey. He hath two wrother knightes
to hys sonnes, the whiche are grete men with the kinge, 4
and loueth hem wel. By one of them, your Cousyns,
ye shall make Josselyn Dupont, that as yet is alyue,
to be calle byfore the kyng, and there ye shalle accuse
hym of the treson by hym & other machyned / throug 8
whiche the kyngis nevew, willing to haue destroyed
your fader, was hym self slayn. And ye muste knowe
that on this quareH his sone, called Olyuer Dupont,
shall fyght ayenst you therfore. But ye shall haue the 12
vyctory oner hym / and bothe fader and sone shall be
condamnep to hang and to be strangled. For the
fader shalH vitre and knowe alle the treson / and aH
your grounde and enherytance shalbe adijued to you. 16
And thus shall ye be putte in pacyfyque or peesable
possesyon of it by the Peerys or lorde pryncypal
of the land. Now my ryght swete frend & felawe,
douteles goo surely. For certaynly god shal helpe you 20
in all your juste & true dedes.'

Thanne ansered Raymondyn: 'Madame, I shall
endeuoyre me to achyeue & fulfiH your com-
mandement.' Raymondyn toke leue of Melusyne / 24
and accompanyed with grete nombre of knightes and
squyers, rode fourth so long on hys way, tyl they
came in Brut Brytayne, wher the peuple was abasshed
& moche wondred what suche grete nombre of 28
stranegers wold haue. But for they payed wel &
largely for that they toke, they were ensured that they
wold & sought but good. For thanneycnet knight of
the meyne of Melusyne rewled and gyded them alle 32
in aH honour & goodnes. And for they were not so
vnpurveyed / but that with them they had armures,
with them yf nede were to arme them with / the
kinge that knew of it, sent to them to wete what they 36
sought, whiche message demanded of Raymondyn yf hee owed enyl wyH to the kyng & to hys royame. In this messagery or embassade were sent two wyse knyghtes, 4 whiche wysly enquered of Raymondyn as byfore is sayd what he sought and what he wold. to whome Raymondyn full curtoysly answered thus. ‘Fayre lordes, ye shaH tef to my liege that I come but 1 for 8 good and wele, and for to have the lawful right in hys Court of suche thinges as belongen to me, For the whiche I shall presente myn owne personne byfore hys mageste, the same requyryng of socour and help.’ ‘For-12 south,’ ansered the two knyghtes, ‘ye shalbe welcome when it shal playse you to do soo. and wele it wel that the kyng, our liege, is rightwyse & juste / and nothing as fer as right requyreth shal not be by hym denied 16 by ony wyse. but telle vs yf it lyke you whither ye are now bounde.’ ‘Certaynly,’ said Raymondyn, ‘I wold I were at Quyngant.’ Thanne ansered one of them, ‘ye are wel on the way toward it, and wele that 20 ye shall fynd there Aleyn of Leon, whiche shaH make you good chere. and also ye shaH fynd there two knyghtes, men of wele and honour, and hold strayte this way and ye shal not mys of it, and with your leue 24 we retoure on our way toward oure liege.’

Whanne these two knyghtes were fer fro Raymondyn and hys felawship an halfmyle, they byganne to say one to other: ‘By my feyth, yonder 28 are gentyl and curtoys folkes, worshipful & honourable. For certayn they come not into this land with-out it is for some grete matere.’ and yet sayd, ‘lete vs go throug Quyngan; and to aleyn we shaH anounce 32 theyre commyng.’ they toke the way toward it, and rode so fast that soone they came there where they found Alayn, to whome they said & announced the commyng of Raymondyn 2and of his men. Whiche 36 Alayn wondred moch of it. And thanne the trew

if Raymondyn intends evil to him.

Raymentin tells the messengers that he comes to obtain his rights,

on which he is welcomed.

He tells them he is going to Quingant.

The messengers leave.

and on their way home praise Raymondin and his men,

and pass by Quingant, where they announce to Alain the coming of Raymondin’s party.

2 fol. 41.
Alain sends his sons to meet and attend to them, man dide calle to hym hys two sones, of whiche one was called Alayn & was eldest, and that other yongest had to name Henry, and he sayd to them in this manere: 'My good children, lepe on horsbak and ryde on your way to mete youde stranngers / receyve ye them worshipfully, and see that they be wel and honestly lodged. For it is told to me, that they be six houndred horses or thenaboute.' but for nought he spak. For thauncyent knyght of Melusyne was come before that / and seeyng the toune was to lityl for to hane herberowed so moche peple in it / had made to be dressed tentes & pauyllons, and sent aboute in the 12 Countré for suche thinges that necessary were to them, which he payed or mayd to be payd largely, in so moche that more vtyayH was there brought than pey ne ded of. And thanne Alayn was aH abasshed whan he herd of 16 that grete hanoyr & appareyH that they made there, and wyst not what therof he shuld thinke or say.

Now sayth thystory, that so long rode the two brethn with theyre felawship togidre, that they mete with Raymondin, & fuyF curtoysly wel-commed hym, and prayed hym by byddying of Alayn, theyre fader, that he vouchesauf to comme and be lodged within the Fort or Castel of Qyngant with theyre fader, that shuld make hym good chere. 'Fayre lordes,' said Raymondyn, 'gramecy to your fader, and thanked be you of your curtoysy that ye thus profire to me,' But at your requeste I shall goo toward your fader for to rendre to hym renuerence. For glad & sayn I were to see hym, for the wele & honour that I have herde say by hym.' Contynnnyng suche wordes & oper they rode tyl they came nygh the toune. And thann came there thauncyent knyght to Raymondyn, and sayd: 'Sire, I have made your pauyllon to be dressed vp, and tentes ynoygh for to lodge you & al your men, and thanked be god we are wel purneyed.'
Ye haue doo wel,' sayd Raymondin / 'goo and make ye mery and cher my men, and loke not for me this nyght, For I goo to the Fortresse with this two gentylmen.' And thenne departed he fro thanacyent knyght / toke with hym a few of his moost famylier men, and yede to the Fortresse wher the lord of the place aborde for hym styH at the gate. Whan Raymondyn thanne sawe hym as to hys lord and vnclle he made reuerence & salweyd hym mckely. Wherto shulde I vse prolyxe or longe wordes of theyre acountaunce. but of the faitt or matere whiche I owe to uttre and say, Lete vs penne say. Whan they had souped / wesshen & graces said / the lord of the place toke Raymondyn by the hand / had hym apart upon a bench / there to denys both togidre, whyle that the other souped / the whiche two bretheren chered & honestly servyd. The lord Alayn thanne wyse and subtyl, and that knewe moche of wel and honour, bygan to raisonne with Raymondin in this manere: 'Sir knight, grete joye I haue of your commyng hither, For certaynly ye are full lyke to a brother of myn whiche was val Yankee, full wyse and worthy. he departed fros this land xl. yere goon, for a strif that befeH betwix the nevew of the kynge that reigned at that tyme and hym, and wete it that this is the iiiith kynge that hane reyned syn that tyme vnto now. And bycause that, to me seemeth ye resemble my brother, I am the more glad & sayn to see you.'

'Sire,' said Raymondyn, 'therof I mercy & thanke you / and or I departe from you I shall make you certayn wherfore and by what inconuenience the strif that ye spek of happed betwixt the nevew of the kynge and youre brother. For wete it, that for none other cause I come hither, but for to shewe publiquely the pure trouth & certeyntee thereof.'

When Alayn herd these wordes he was moche abasshed, and loked on Raymondyn moche and Raymondin tells him that he will stay at the Castle.

He rides to the Castle, and makes reverence to his uncle.

After supping his uncle takes him aside,

and tells how glad he is to see him,

because of his likeness to his lost brother.

Raymondin tells his uncle he comes about the strife between his uncle's brother and the late king's nephew, which abashes Alain.
entently, and after sayd, 'and how shal that move be? ye haue not yet the age of xxx yere / by you may not be recountede the fayttie, the trouth of whiche none might neuer knowe. For whan the stroke of the 4 mysdaie happed. my brother sodaynly departed / so that I ne none other hert neuer syn whither he was become.' 'Sire, yf ye vouchesaf / telle mee yf there is as now yet lyuyng eny man that had on that tyme S auctorite or rewle aboute the kinge that regned when the stryf befare.' 'By my feyth,' said Alayn, 'one and no more I knowe, that had gouernaunce in Court that same tyme, and he hym self vsurpeth & holdeth my 12 brothers landes as his owne enherytaunce. For the kyng gaaf it to hym, for hys first begoten sone to enjoye it for euermore, the which hys sone is now of late dowbed & made knight.' 'For southe,' sayd thenne 16 Raymondyn, 'wel I wote hys name.' 'And how know ye hyt?' said Alayn. 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondin, 'he is called Josselin Dupont / and hys sone hys named Olyuyer.' 'Sire knight,' sayd Alayn, 'ye say trouth. 20 But telle me how ye this may knowe.' 'Sire,' sayd Raymondyn, 'no fether ye shall as now know therof, but ye vouchesaf to come & youre two sons with me, unto the kinges Court / wete it that I shall declare 24 vnto you the quarrell & stryf so clerly that, yf ye ever loued your brother, Henry of Leon, ye shal be thereof fayn & glad.' And thanne Alayn heryng the name of hys brother called, he was more abasshed than 28 before. For he wend none other but that hys brother had be long deed. And thenne he thoughte longe in hymself or he ansuered ony word.

Thus, as I haue sayd to you / moche long thought 32 Alayne, and after he ansuerd: 'Sire knight, I graunt & acorde me to your requeste / sethen that here I ne may knowe your wyH. For therat I lang moche. I gladly shall hold you company vnto the kynges 36
Court. 'gramercy,' sayd Raymondyn, 'and wel I shal kepe you fro dommage.' Wherto shuld I make long proces, Alayn manded or sent for a grete foysone of hys frendes, & made hym rely in grete estate for to goo to the court. The kynge that knew theire commove departed fro Storyyon, where he laye, & came to Nantes. For the two knightes whiche the kinge sente Raymondyn were retourned, & had recounted to the kinge the answere of Raymondyn, and the maner of his estate. And therfore the kinge was come to Nantes and manded a part of hys barony, For he wold not 12 that Raymondyn shuld fynd hym vnpurveyd of men. And amonge other he sent for Josselin Dupont for to hawe his Counseyf on the demande that Raymondyn wold make. For he was moche sage. What shuld I 16 saye more? thanceuent knight came before & made to be dressed bothe paullions & tentes & purveyd for all thinges necessary. Wherfore the folke of the toune were moche abasshed of the grete appareyl that 20 he caused to be made / Thenne came Raymondyn, Alayn, and bothe his sons, and descended into the chief Paullon, where they made them rely and arayed them fulf richely, for to goo toward the kinge / and 24 after they departed fro the tentes, acompanyed with xl knightes wel horsed and honestly arayed that wonder was to see / and had his barons with hym. And whan they come to the kings place they descended 28 fro theire horses / and Raymondyn / Alayn and his two sons entred within the halle, there the kynge was acompanyed with his barons / made to the kinge reverence / after siwyng, saluewed the barons & lordes, 32 the kinge welcommved & receyued hem joyously / called to hym Alayn, and said to hym in this manere:

'I thyueth me grete wonder,' said the kinge to Alayn, 'of this gracyous strange knight, with whome 36 ye are so acoynted / What he seketh in this land.' 'Ha/

Alain sends for his friends;

the king comes from Nantes and sends for some of his barony,

1 fol. 42.

and for Josselin.

The ancient knight prepares tents for Raymondin,

in which Alain and his sons dress themselves to go before the king.

They set out with forty barons;

arriving, are welcomed by the king.

who asks Alain about his friend, the strange gracious knight.
Alain tells the king that he marvels at the knight's sayings, but believes that all will be made plain soon.

Raymondin learns that Josselin is present.

1 fol. 43 b.

with his son Oliver.

Raymondin addresses the king, and praises his justice;

the king asks why?

ha, sire,' answered Alayn. 'I am an houndred tymes more minayled of the wordes that he yestiday shewed vnto me / than ye are of his commyng, but soone shalbe declared al that we lang aftir & desire 4 to knowe.' Thenne Raymondin, dressyng his wordes to theeldest socke of Alayn, saya softly in this manere, 'Sire knight, say me of your Curtoysye, yf one called Josselyn Dupont be now in this company or nat.' 8 Thanne sayd Alayn, 'ye—and wold to god so that the kyng shuld not be dyspleased that I had slayn hym. For he enjoyeth therbytage that appartmenth to one our onclee which we shuld haue.' And after these wordes 12 Alayn sayd to Raymondin / 'it is yond auncient knyght that sitteth by the kyng. And wete it for certayn that he is replenysshed with all falshed & malcyce / and yonder is his son Olyuyer that wyteth not an 16 ownce lasse in aH wykkednes & eyH.' 'By my feyth, Sire knight,' sayd Raymondin / 'ye soone shal be auenged of hym yf god wyl.' And laynyn theire talkyng, Raymondin hadd hymselfe fourth before the 20 kyng, to whom he said in this manere: 'ha, high sire & mighty kyng, It is wel trouth that common renounme rameth thrughe alle landes, that your Court is so noble & so raysonnable that it may be called fountayne 24 of Justice & raison / and that none ne commeth to your Court but that ye shew & gyne to hym good Justice and raisonnable after the good right that he hath.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said the kyng / 28 'it is trouth. but wherfore say you so, fayn I wold wete it.' 'Forsouthe, sire,' said Raymondin, 'for to vttre & shew it vnto you / I am come hither / & for none other cause. but, Sire, yf it plaise you / or I telle it you / 32 ye shal promyse me that ye shal susteyne me ayenst alle persones after right & raison. For that / that I shal say is in a part your wele prouffyt & honour. For no kyng acompanyed of a traytoure is not wel 36
lodged ne sure of his personne.' 'By my feyth,' said
the king, 'ye say trouth / say on hardly. For I swere
to you by ait that I hold of god, that I shal doo to you
4 alle Justice & rayson after the good right that ye shaft
hane / and that shal I doo doubteles / yf it were ayenst
my brother.' 'Sire,' said Raymondin, 'an houndred
thousand thankes & mereyes / ye say as a valyaunt kyng
8 & 1 trew man. For first were kynges stablysshed for
to rendre or yeld to euerybody juste jugement in alle
things.'

Noble mighty kinde,' said Raymondin / 'it is wel
12 trouth that one, your predecessour kyng,
reyued somtyme moche mightily & valyauntly that was
in the tyme of Josselin Dupont and of Alayn, whiche
bothe are here now present before your majeste / this
16 kyng which I spek of, had a moche fayre & noble yong
man to his nevew. That tyme was in this Countre a
baron which was called Henry of Leon, the whiche
was brother to Alayn here present.' 'By my feyth, sire,'
20 said thanne Josselyn, 'he saith trouth. and ouermore
the same Henry of Leon slew the nevew of your prede-
cessour by treson / fledd out of this land, and neuer
syn came hither ayen. And then the kinge seased
24 his landes and possesseyons, and anoone after gaf them
to me.' The kinge thanne answered, 'we haue herd
ynoughe of this matere / but suffre this knight fyuyshe
his raison which he hath bygonne.'

To this answerd Raymondin, 'Sire kinde, he hath
28 wel raison to speke of hit, For furthermore he
shal be conrayned to say / how be it that as now he
hath said amys & not trouth of that he saith that
32 Henry of leon slew the kinges nevew in treson, For he
knew wel why & therfore it was, and there nys no
man lyuyng that can say the trouth of it but he alone,
For they that were of his acoarde and conspiracion ben
36 al deed. Therfore sire kyng, vouchesaf to command
and promises to do justice to Raymondin,
1 fol. 44.

for which Ray-
mondin thanks
him.

Raymondin
speaks to the
king of Josselin,
Alain,

Raymondin
speaks to the
king of Josselin,
Alain;

and of Henry of
Leon;

whereupon Joss-
selin says that
Henry slew the
nephew of the
king's predecess-
or, and fled the
land;

but the king
orders him to
let Raymondin
finish his story.

Raymondin
denies what Joss-
sein said,

but asserts that
Josselin alone
knows the truth
of the matter,
and asks the king to bid Josselin tell all.

1 fol. 44 b.

This abashes Josselin, who asks if Raymondin has come to dishonour him.

Raymondin tells the king of the treachery of Josselin toward his father, Henry of Leon.

How Josselin told the king’s nephew that he was disinherited because of Henry,

2 fol. 45.

hym telle trouth al on hye, that everyone here may here it.’ And whan Josselin understode that word, he waxed sore abashed; neuertheles, he answered in this manere: ‘Sire knight, are you come into this land forto vndertake any thynge in dyshonour of me?’ And Raymondin answered appertly: ‘Fals traytour, he fourneyeth nat that saith the playn trouth.’ Thanne he said agayn to the kynge: ‘Sire, it is wel trouth that Henry of Leon was a moche valiant & hardy knight, curteys and wel condicyon-d, & moche was beloved bothe of the kynge and of his nevew / and vsed the kynge moche of his counseil, For he was he on whom 12 he trusted most. It haped that dyuerse traytours beyng that time about the kynge, of which Josselin here present was one, as chef causer of the mysdele that tyne perpetred or doon / came to said kingis nevew, 16 & to hym they said in this manere: “Gentyl Squyer, alle we that are here byfore your presence ben sory & woo of your grete dommage and shamful losse whan ye shall be dysheryted of so noble a land as is the royame of Brytayne” / and he answered to them / “how shuld that mowe be doo? the kynge hath none heyre but my self.” “On my god,” said thanne yond Josselin to hym, “Wete it pat he hath made & stablisshed his heyre, Henry of Leon, and I byleue that this Henry hath enchaunted hym and the barons of the land also, For therof ben lettres passed & scalled with their sealles annexed to the kingis grete scall / and al this 28 they all togider affermed on their feyth for trouth.” “By my feith,” said the squyer thanne / “here is grete inconuenyence yf that be trew that ye telle me.” 2And thanne Josselin with his complices alle with an acorde 32 sware yet ayen to hym that it was trouth. Wherfore the said yonge squyer was sory and woo. Josselin thanne seeung that he byleued their false to be certayn, said yet agayn to the squyer in this manere: 36
"Yf in you lyeth so moch hardynes that ye dare undertake to avenge the wrong doon to you by Henry of Leon, We alle shal helpe you therto." And the squyer answered, "my courage and wylle ben agreed to do soo." Thenne said Josselin, "goo thanne & arme you in a manner vknown, and we shall abyde you with out the toune, and shall ledd you in to suche a place where ye shal avenge you at your ease." O noble & mighty kinge, sethen I fynde now myself in Court of right & iustice / and that I may see myn enmye, I wyl no more be hyd, but lete every man knowe that 12 I am the sone of Henry of Leon.' Thenne they were alle abasshed of that word, but they held them styl / and Raymondyn spake fourth in this manere./

'Sire kinge, it is trouth that my fader had take leue 16 of the kinge, and was goon in to hys Countrey / and was wonnt eueri mornynge for to goo in a wode nygh by his fortesse to dysporte hym, sayeng hys matyns alone. And this fals traytour Josselin, with his 20 complices, ledd the said kings nevev and embusshed them there. My fader, that thoughte no harme, came that same oure / and whan Josselin perceyued hym commyng he said to the squyer / "now it is tyme to 24 avenge you, For he is without eny armure or wepen / he may not escape you / and yf we see that ye nede of help 1 we shall helpe you." The squyer, thanne esprysed with euyl desire, deparied fro them and ranne toward 28 my fader and escryed hym to deth / and as he wold haue thrested the swerde throug his faders body, my fader glanched asyde / and as god wold he that fyersly ranne fel to the ground. My fader penne toke the 32 swerde that scaped fro the squyres hand, and with the pomel of it smote hym under the eere by suche strengthe that the squyer fel doun ded. And thenne whan my fader saw hym lyeng on the ground deed he 36 dyscouered his face, and anone he knew hym, wherfore
How Henry fled from the land on recognizing his enemy, fearing the king's ire; which pleased Josselin, who thought he would then be able to rule the king.

Raymondin challenges Josselin, his son Oliver, and one of his friends; but no one accepts the challenge. Alain, understanding now who Raymondin is, embraces him.

he made grete sorow and was sory and woo and after the dede & euylhap, doubtyng the furour & yre of the king, yede there hys hauoir was / toke it and feldd with aH from pis land. And thanne Josselin the fals traytour sayd to hys complices and felawes: "Now are we come to our entencion & wylle. For the kinges nevew is deed, and yf Henry be take he may not scape fro deth. Now shal we gonne and doo with the king 8 that we lyst after our guyse / lete vs not mere us tyl he be ferre from vs / and after we shal take the corps & putte it in a byere that we shal make with bramches & leues, and so we shal bere it toward the king, to 12 whom we shal say that Henry of Leon slew hym in treson." Ha / ha, noble king, aH euen so as I say, dide that yonder fals traytour / and yf he say nay / here I presente & cast my gage of bataill agenst hym. And 16 bycause, sire kinge, that I wil lete every man knowe that I doo undertake pis not for auarice / but for to kepe my right and enhertyaunce / and for to declare, manyfeste, and 1 shewe the vylonny and enyl treson 20 that this fals traytour Josselin and hys complices dyde to Henry of Leon, my fader, for to hawe hym out of conceytte, and to be putte fro the kings Court, I besech your highnes that he may take hys sone Olyuer 24 and another yet of his frendes / and I shal fight aynest them thre without fawte, prouyded alwayes the noble and juste jugement of your Court / one after another' / and sayeng these wordes he kyst his gage. but there 28 was none that spake or answerd ony word. And whan Alayn and his two sones vnderstode alle that Raymondyn had said / what for joye to see theire faders nevew and Cousyn to them / and what for pyto to here telle 32 the trayson so machyned aynest theyre faders brother & vncle to them / ranne to kysse and embraced Raymondyn.
When the king of the Bretons saw that no body ansuerc to these wordes so proferid in hys presence / sayd al on high that every one there might here hyrn, 'how now, Josselin, are ye deef? / I now perceyue wel & see that the prowerbe that is said commonly is trew / that is / “that olde synne reneweth shame,” For this knight straunger bringeth you tydynges, moche straunge and a wonder medecyne fro ferre land / adyse you of that ye shal ansuere.' Thanne ansuerc Josselyn to the kyng: 'Sire kyng, I am not he pat from hens fourth oweth to ansuere such things. And also wel I byleue that he saith it but in jape & sport.' Thanne ansuercd Raymondin, 'the mocke fals1 traytour shal tourne on the. I now requyre you, noble kyng, that this matere may be discuted / lete him haue as raison requyreth for his treson / and I to be punysshed yf in eny poynjt forsayd [I] haue myssaid or mesprysed.' Thenne said the kyng, 'doubt not of it, For so shal I doo. Josselyn,' said the kyng, 'ye muste ansuere to this quareH & acusacion.' When thenne his son Olyuyer herd what the kyng said to his fader / he ansuercd to his wordes: 'Sire, that knight is so sore adrad that he trembleth for ferre / he weneth as me semeth to take the cranes flighing, by my feith he shall wel fa/H & mysse of that he hath said, For my fader is a true man in all his dedes / and I vouchesauf & grant the bataiiH as he hath ordonned / and there is my gage / he shal be wel happy yf he dyscomfyte me and another of my lynage suche as I shalH chese.'

When the king herd that word he was moche wroth, & ansuercd in this manere / 'that shalH nat happe in my Court as long as I shalH lyue pat one knight alone shal fyght ayenst two for oo maner quareH / and grete shame is to you / only to haue thought it in your herte / and wete it / that by semblauant ye shew nat your fader to haue good quareH.
BEFORE THE FIGHT. [CH. XIX.

And fro thisoure fourthon I gyue you journey of batayH at the requeste of the knight straunger on suche day that he shaH assigne.' By my feyth,' said thenne Raymondin, 'I am even now redy theito, for myn 4 armures are not ferre. and thanked be your highnesse an hondred tymes of your lawfuH graunt.' There had ye herd grete rumoure made on aH sydes, for aH said, 'yonder is the moste valyaunt knight that ever we sawe & requyrnyg his ryght.' but what so ever was woofull therof, Alayn of Quyngant & his two sones were fayn & glad that so shuld be doo / & said to Raymondin, 'Fayre Cousin, be not labasshed of nothing in the 12 world. take boldly the bataiH for you, and for us both ayenst that same fals traytou / For yf god wil we shaH some haue worship therof.' 'Fayre lordes,' said Raymondin, 'take who wil bataiH for hymself. 16 For the same I shaH haue for my part, and doubte you not but that I shaH bring it to a good & worshipful ende god before with the good right that I haue thereto.'

Whilles the rumour was among the folk, the kinge, moche wyse & subtyl / for that the parties were of grete & high parentage & lynee / doubtyng of some grete inconuenience that might happe 24 emong them / commanded sodanly the gates to be shette that none might entre ne yssue / & ordonneH men armed to kepe eucry man therfro. and aftir callid his ConseH apart / shewed to them and reherced aH the quarcH. and they counseilled hym of that was needfulH to be doo. Thanne returned the kinge vnto the halle, where he made to be commanded by hym, that none there, on peyne of deth, should be so hardy 32 to spek ony word but pat he were commanded. The kinge thenne spak & said, 'now, fayre lordes, ye muste understand how this quarcH is now not litel, for it is for lyf or grete dyshonour for euermore to the one 36
party, and wete it for certayn that I ne owe ne also wyl not refuse ryght to be doo in my Court. Olyuier,' said the king, 'wil you deffende your fader of this
treson?' 'Sire,' said he / 'ye certaynly,' / . and thenne the
king ansuerd / 'the lyses ben already dressed, and
therefore I ordyne the bataiH to be to morow exploit.
And wete it / that yf ye be dyscomfited & overcome,
bothe your fader and ye shul be hanged, and not lesse
shal haue your partye aduerse, yf the cas myshappeth
to hym. Make you thanne redy toward / and gyue in
oure hand hostages & pledges / and first your fader
shaH abyde,' and thenne the king made Josselin to be
leddde in to pryson in a stronge toure. and thanne said
the king to Raymondin, 'Sire knight, whome shul ye
gyue vs for hostage?' Alayn and his two sones came
thanne fourth & said, 'sire, we pledge hym.' 'By my
feyth,' said the king, 'it suffysyth vs wel. and therefore
ye shaH not hold pryson. For wel I wote that the
knight had not emprysed the bataiH without he wold
perfourme it.' And thus departed bothe parties fro the
presence of the kinge. and Raymondyn with hys folk,
acompanied of hys vnclle & Cousins, yede toward his
panillons, and aboute euen tyme he went in to the
chirch CathedraH, and there he watched, making hys
prayers to god with grete deuocyon / And Olyuier also
came to hys hous with grete foyson of them of hys
lynee, and made his hors & harneys redy. On the
morowe they herd masse, and after armed them / and
the king and the Barons of the land were sette on the
scaffoldes rounde aboute the listes / and gardes to the
champ or feld were ordeyned, and the Chayers sette.
And about the oure of pryme came Raymondin with
fayre felawship, armed moche goodly & richely / the
spere on the rest, and on hym hys cote of armes, 
browded with syluer & azure / and entred the lyses
vpon a grete destrier weI harneyed vnto the mayle of
MELUSINE.
IN THE LISTS. [CH. XIX.

and makes reverence to the king and barons;

1 fol. 48.

dismounts and waits for his adversary,

who at last appears nobly armed with his father.

Raymondin swears the justice of his cause on the Gospels,

and likewise Josselin and Oliver, but very timorously.

A herald proclaims that no signs are to be made:

the lists clear.

A herald shouts 'Do your duty' to the combatants.

1 fol. 48 b.

the foot / as for gage of bataille / and there he made reverence & salewed the king & the Barons. 'By my feith,' said everyone / 'it is long syn we sawe so fayre man of armes ne of so fayr contenaeunce / he hath not 4 beste werke that hath such 1 a man in hand to jouste or fyght with hym.' Thenne descended Raymondin fro the destrer as appertly as he had be vnarmed, and sette hym in the chayer abydyng after his aduersary. 8 It is trouth that long after that came Olyuer, right wel & nobly armed, and sett on a moche ryche destrier / and wel he semed man of grete fayttes / and so was he / & before hym came Josselin, his fader, on 12 a palfray, and made reverence to the kinge & hys barons. Moche semed Josselin abasshed as thanne / For that euery man said he had euyl cause. What shuld I make long tale / the holy Euangelies were there 16 brought, wheron Raymondin swore that Josselyn had euyl cause, and that he had doon the treson as he had byfore declared / and after he kneled & kyssed the book, and sette hym self ayen on the chayere. And 20 after Josselin sware, but he stakered, and so timorous he was that he coude not touche the boke / and also Olyuer, which knew wel the trouth of all, swore full feynytly / and that doon he sette hym self agayn in his 24 chayere. and fourthwith a herault cryded with an high voyee on the kingis byhalfe / that none, on payne of deth, shuld be so hardy to speke ony worde ne to make ony signe or tokon that ony of the Champyons might 28 vnderstand or perceyue. And thenne eueryman voyed the place, saaf only theye that were stablished to the garde of the champ & Josselin. And anoone Raymondyn lepte on horsbak moch ap pertly and toke hys speere, and on the other syde Olyuer had hys destrier redy, and lept on lightly, and toke hys speere with sharp yrone / and thenne cryded a herault thryes. 'lete ranne your horses & 2 doo your denoyre.'
Here saith the very history, that when the cry was made Raymondin had leyed the end of his spear to the grounde alonge the hors nek, and 4 thryes he made the signe of the crosse, and while he dede so his enemy ranne at hym, and with his spear hytte Raymondin on the brest or he was ware of hit moche rudely, For dooyng so he putte to it alle his 8 strengthe & myght, but Raymondin bowed never therfore / and the spere of Olyuer brak in to pieces, and with that strok the speere of Raymondyn fell to the ground. 'Ha, traytour,' said then Raymondyn /

12 'thou folowest wel the right euyl lynee of whiche thou yssued. but that may not anaylle the.' and toke the sterope that hynte at sadelbowe, that had thre poyntes wel assured, eche of them seuen enchi long. and at 16 retourne that Olyuer supposed to haue doo, Raymondyn smote hym on the helmet with the sterop that oo poynte of it entred & perced the helmet so that the nayl of the vmbrel brake, and the vysere hing at oo syde / and the visage of Olyuyer abode aH dyscouered, wherfore he was moche agast and abasshed. Nevertheless he drew out hys swerde & wel shewed contenauce of a knight that lytil redoubteth hys enemye, and so 24 they fought long space togidre and gaaf eche other grete strokes / and there might men see grete appertyse of armes. At last Raymondin alighted on foot and toke vp hys spere that laye at ground & came with 28 grete paas toward his foo mortah, whiche the best wyse that he coude dystourned fro Raymondin that he made to goo after hym alonge the Champ. For he did with hys hors what he wold,1 and by that maner dooyng 32 he supposed to haue made Raymondyn wery that nedes he muste reste hym, and so the day shuld be soone passed. But Raymondin whiche that perceyued, yede & appertly to[k]2 hys hors that he ledde with one hand, &

Raymondin, his spear couched, making the sign of the cross, is struck fiercely on the breast by Oliver's spear; but he does not bow; Oliver's spear shivers, and Raymondin's falls.

Upon which Raymondin breaks Oliver's helmet with his stirrup; his visor falling discovers his face.

They continue to fight fiercely with swords until Raymondin alights from his horse and takes his spear, and goes to attack his foe, who runs away from him.

1 fol. 49.

Raymondin then, leading his horse

2 Fr. print.
and carrying his spear, Oliver approaches Raymondin, who suddenly spurs his horse against Raymondin, but has it stunned by a blow from the stirrup, and is dis-mounted by a spear stroke, and wounded and beaten; and held by the throat, Raymondin kneeling on him. After a time Raymondin asks him to yield, or die.

Thystory telleth in this partye that Raymondin held Olyuyer as abone is said long espace of 24 tyme, and when he sawe that he had the best ouer hym he drew a knife that heng at his right side and said to hym, 'False traytour, yeld thyself vaynquyssed, or ellis thou art but deed.' 'By my feith,' said Olyuyer, 'I have leuer dye by the hand of suche a valyaunt knight as ye be than of another.' Raymondin thanne toke grete pite on hym and demanded of hym, upon parel of the sowle of hym / yf he nothing knew of 32 the treson that Josselin his fader had doon / and he answerd nay, and he was not yet borne but tyme that this treson happed. and how be it that it plaied to

1 Knight in MS. Fr. version estcle.
god that Fortune were as thenne contrary to hym, notwithstanding yet he held his fader for a trew man / lawful and not gilty of that same dede. And thanne

whan Raymondyn, that wel wyst the contrary, herd hym, he was sorowful & woo, and bete hym so moche on the temples with hys fust armed with his gantlet that he made hym so astonyed that he ne saw ne herd of what he dide to hym / And thanne stode vp Raymondin and toke hym by the feet and drew hym vnto the lystes, And syn he putte hym without fourth / and retourned & came before the scadfold of

12 the kinge, the visere lyfte on hye, & said: 'Sire, haue I doo my deuoire, For yf I haue eny thing more to doo I am redy to it to the regarde of your Court & ordynaunce?' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'sire knight, ye haue quytted your self full wel.' And the king benne commanded that Josselin and his sone shulde be bothe hanged, and they to whom the king comanded this exucucion to be doo wente soone, & without delay

20 they seasid Josselin, who anoone cryed to the king piteously for mercy. And þen the king yede and said to hym that he shulde telle the trouthe of the quarell, and peradventure he night haue grace.

24 Thenne said Josselin, 'Sire, to hyd the trouthe it auayleth not / haue pite on me yf it pleaise you, For certaynly it was doon in the manere & fourme as the knight hat purposed & said / and wete it pat my sone Olyuyer was not yet borne.' 'By my feith, Josselin, said the kinge, 'here is grete falshed, and yf it ne had be goddis playsrire that ye shulde be therof punyshed, he had not lefte you lyue so long in this world. and

28 as to my part, ye shall not sayf of the punyceyon.' Thanne he said all on high to them that were ordeyned, that anoone bothe fader & sone shulde be hanged. And thenne came fourth Raymondin & said to the king:

36 'Sire, I thanke you as I may of the good justice that ye
Raymondin, having pleaded for Oliver's life, as he is brave and valiant, and free from the guilt of the treason;

and for Josselin's, because he is so old, desiring only that he should make restitution of the estate,

the money to be used to found a priory.

\[1\] fol. 50 b.

But the king orders them to be hanged, and restores Raymondin his estates, and gives him all Josselin's land, for which Raymondin does homage.

Raymondin is feasted by the king of Brut Britain, having doom to me / but, sire, I mowed with pite requyre you of your mysericorde to be shewed on Olyuyer. For seeyng his valyauntuyse & worthynes, also consideryng that he is not gilty of the treson it were grete dommage of his deth. For yet shall he mow doo wel. And as to the fader, for this that I see hym olde & feble / of my part, sire king, ye ye vouchesauf to graunt hym grace thereof I should be fayn & glad, soo that I have myn herytage to my behouf, and that the prouffytes & fruytes that he hath leuyed & receyued of it, syn he had herytage in his handes, be by extimacion revalued in money. that same payment to be by you, sire king, 12 ordeyned to edefye or bigge a pryory, & monkes therin to be rented with revenues & possessyons after the quantyte of the said money to be regarde of you and of your Counseill. the said monkes to pray for the 16 sowle of the kinges nevew perpetuallly.' The king thanne said to his barons, 'Fayr Sires, here ye may see the free courage of a knight that prayeth to me to respyte hys enemys fro deth. but by the feth that I owe to god Josselin nor his sone shall neuer doo treson ne cause no man to goo out of my land as exiled.' and fourthwith he made them to be hanged, and rendred to Raymondin his enherytance and al Josselyn's land with all. Wherof Raymondin thanked hym moche humbly and made to hym his homage. After byganne the feste to be moche grete, and held the king grete & noble Court open to al men, & was moche glad of that he had recovered & goten so noble a knight in his land. but for nought he made joye, For soone ynooqhe he shall see that Raymondyn had no grete wylle to abyde and dwelle in Bretayne, for moch longed to hym the sight of Melusyne.

Now in this parte telleth thystroye that Raymondyn was moche wel festyed of the king of the brut Bretayne that held grete & honourable Court for loue 36
of Raymondin, and the barons of Bretayne made grete joye for his commyng, and specyally his vnue Alayn and hys two children, & they of his lynage. And 4 thanne came Raymondin to the king and said to hym thus: 'Sire king, I pray you & beseche that ye vouchsaf to graunte & acorde that I gyue the Baronye of Leon that was to Henry my fader, on whos sowle 8 god haue mercy, to Henry my Cousyn / and so the land shal bere the name of his ryghtfuI lord / and you the name of your liege man, For he is of the right lynee.' 'By my feyth,' sayd be kinges, 'sire, sith 12 it playseth you thus wel it pleseth vs so to be.' Thenne the kyng called Henry, For he loued hymwel and said to hym: 'Henry, receyue the name of the baronye of Leon, which your Cousyn gyue you, and make homage 16 to me therof' / and so he dide · and thanked moche the king & Raymondyn.¹ And this doon Raymondin called to hym Alayn his Cousyn: 'I gyue you the land that the king hath gyuen me that late was 20 longyng to Josselin Dupont, and make your homage to the king': / and he thanked hym moche humbly · and knelyng made hys homage to the kinge that moche joyfully receyued hym to it. But the Barons of the 24 land byganne thanne to make rumour among them and 26 said: 'By my feyth, this knight is not come into this lande for couetyse ne auarice. But only he hath putte his lyf in grete aventure & parel for to conquere his heritage. Whan so soone he demysed hymself therof, it muste wel be that grete ryches he hath some where' / Thanne came thanneuyent knight to Raymondin, and 28 when Raymondin sawe hym he said to hym that he 32 shuld delyuere hym self of that his lady had commanded hym / and he ansered, 'my lord, theryfore I am come toward you.' and thanne he presented fro hys lady to the kyng a grete Coupe of gold sette 36 with many precious stone. and after gaf to aH the

¹ fol. 51.

The barons of Britain wonder at the riches of Raymondin, who gives away the land just won.

The spoils of the victor. 87

Raymondin asks the king to allow him to give his barony to his cousin Henry, which request is granted.

The barony is given, and Henry does homage for it.
Barons in the foresaid name many ryche jewelles. Wherof all were meryayled of whens might come such a riches / and all they said that Raymondin muste be moche riche & mighty in some other Coun-tree. Wherfore the feest was greter than afore. And Alayn and his two sones demened suche joye that none shuld mow think it. but yet duryng theire joye was on other syde made grete sorow of the parents & frendes of Josselin that had not forgeten pe deth of hym / as herafter ye shal here reherce. 1 And here resteth thystorye to speke of this feste & folowyng the matere saith how Melusyne gourne'd her self whiles Raymondyn was in his vyage.

Thystory telleth vs that whiles Raymondyn was in bretyane, Melusyne made to be byld up the toune of Lusynen, and wallid it with strong walles & 16 toures one nygh another,\(^2\) and deep ditches dide doo make about it. A toure she dide to be made betwixt the Fortresse & the toune wallid with a wal of xx foot thikk. This toure was ouer hye / and ordeyned 20 men that shuld be styl both day & nyght, at leste one upon the vpermost batelyments of it with a trompe in his hand, that shuld blow at euery tyme he perceyued & sawe men othre on foot or on horsbak togidre aboue 24 the nombre of xx\(^{11}\) commyng toward the said toune or Castel / and that same toure she called the tromped toure. Now retourneth thistory to spek of the kyng & of Raymondyn, and of the feest & chere that euery 28 one made to Raymondin.

IN this partye reherceth thistorye that moch was the feest grete at Nantes · and the king honoured moche Raymondin, and there jousted gentilmen one 32 ayenst other byfore the ladyes & gentyl wemen wher Raymondin bare hym fuH valiantly & goodly that euery man spak wele of hym, sayeng that he was

\(^1\) fol. 51 b.

\(^2\) + Fr. pour defendre a concert tous les archiers.
worthy to be lord of a grete land. And moche were they abasshed of the grete riches that they sawe every day about Raymondin / but who someuer made feest 4 for Raymondyn, the Chastelayn of AruaH, that was neuew to Josselin Dupont, made aH the contrary. For he sodaynly sent to alle the parentes frendes and affyns of Josselin, letyng 1 them to knowe how it was 8 of their frend Josselyn, and that they shuld be at a certayn day that he assigned to them at a certayn retrette that was within the forest of Guerrende that was of his owne. And whan they understande the 12 deth of Josselin pey were sorrowful & woo, and assembled them togider about ii C men of armes, and pryueul yevede & came to the said retrette, where the said Chastelayn had manded them to come. And thanne 16 the Chastelayn in the moost secrete wyse that he coude, departed fro the kinges court without leue of the kingne of the Barons / but there he lefte thre squyers of his for to loke & aspye whiche waye Raymondin shuld 20 take, and that they shuld annouce it to hym to the retrette befor said. So long rode the Castelleyn that he cam to the retrette where he fouond them of his lynage, and he therafter to pem aH the manere of 24 thaduenture / and how Josselin & his sone were hanged / and asked of them what they thoughte & proposed to doo / if they shuld auenge them on Raymondin that was causer of it / and to them grete 28 blame & shame for evermore was bycause of hym imputed / or elles to lete hym goo free. Thenne answered for al the lynage an vnwyse & hasty knight that was sone to the Cousyn of Josselin. 'cousyn 32 castellayne, we wol that ye wete & knowe that thus shal nat this outragious werk be lefte. For we alle of one accorde & wyle wil putte hym to deth that to vs hath doo suche vitupere & dyshonour.' 'By 36 my feith,' said thanne the Castellayne, 'I hold & repute

while Josselin's nephew advised his kindred of their loss,

and summoned them to a retreat in the forest of Guerrende.

They assemble two hundred strong,

and are informed of the misad

by Josselin's nephew,

and are asked if they intend to avenge themselves.

They declare they will put Raymondin to death;
The wele & honour wel employed that Josselin ride to you in tyme passed. And anone I shall putte you in the way and place where we shal wel accomplisshe our wylle on hym that suche shame hath doon to vs. For by what someuer side he yssueth out of Bretayne he may not scape fro vs. For therto we have good wayters, & espymes that soone shal anounce his way to vs whan tyme shalbe.' And they answered alle with 8 an voys /—'Blessed be you, and wete it that whatsom- euer faH therof / this enterpryse shalbe brought to an end, and we shal slye that false knight that hath im- posed to vs alle vylonnye & shame.' And here spekep 12 no more thistorye of them, and retourneth to spek of the king & of Raymondyn. and how he departed fro the king moch honorably. Thistory saith that the feest dured wel xy dayes & 16 more. the king of Bretons & hys baronye made grete honour to Raymondyn in so moche that I can nat rehearse it. Raymondin thanne toke leve of the king & of his Barons and humbly mercyed the king 20 of his good justice that he had doon to hym in his noble Court, and departed fro them moche honourably. And wete it that bothe the king & many his barons were sory for his departing. And thus Ray- 24 mondyn accompanied of his vnclc Alayn his two sones & all theyre myrne rode toward Leon. But it is trouth that famcyent knight was departed & goon byfore / and had doo sette vp bothe tentes & pauillons 28 and aH other things necessary he ordeyned & made rely. And thanne Raymondin / hys vnclc with his two 1 sones and the moost nere of his kynne to hym lodged them togidre in the Castel. and the other 32 herberowed them in the toune. Whan the peple of the Countre knew the commyng of theyre owne lordes sone they were joyfull & glad, and made to hym many fayr presents after the vse & custome of the Countre /
as of wyn, of bothe flesh & fysshe, heym & ootys, and of
many other thinges, and they were layyn & glad sith it
played not Raymondin to abyde & hold the land, that
4 they were beauned in the sayd lynce of theire lord, and
that they were quytte & exempted fro the subjection
& boundage of the lynce of Josselin. Raymondin thanne
pauked them curtoysly of theire presente &
8 yeftes, commanded & prayed them that they wold be
true & feyithfull subgetz to Henry his Cousin to whom
he had gyue the land, and they answered that they
shuld doo soo. Of them resteth this historye, and speketh
12 of the spyes that wayted there / of which one went to
the retrette where the Castellayne of Auaun & the
lynce of Josselin were all redy / and the two other spyes
abode for to knowe what way Raymondin shuld hold / }

16 IN this partye telleth to vs this history that Raymondin
departed fro Leon, and toke leue of al hys parents
& frendes there, & went to Quyngant where the festa
was grete, and there after the feeste was ended Ray-
20 mondyn wold haue take leue of hys uncle Alayn & of
all his lynam / but they dide putte the moost remedy
they coude for to hold hym there a seene nyght more.
Wherfore Raymondin obtempering to them / ye /
24 ayenst his entent & courage fullyfled theire wille.
And in the meane while came to Henry his Cousyn, a
man that told hym that as he passed fourth by the said
retrette where the Castellayne of Auaun was with wel
28 two houndred men in armes, that they abode for some
folke to whom they owed no good wylle, but he told
hym not whom they aspyed & watched for. And
when Henry understode this he toke a squyer of his
32 and bad hym goo thither & knowe what it was, and he
that was moche dialygent dyde so that he knew the
moost parte of theyre purpos and entent & what
nombre they were. Soone after he retourned to Henry
36 and herhered to hym all that he had found, and that

The folk of the
place bring
presents to Ray-
mondin,
and are glad to
be freed of allegi-
ance to Josselin;
and promise to
be faithful to
Henry, the
cousin of Ray-
mondin, their
new lord.
Spies leave, and
tell the kindred
of Josselin of
Raymondin's
doings.
Leaving Leon,
Raymondin goes
to Quingant,
where he is
feasted.

1 fol. 53 b.

A man advises
Henry of Leon of
the assembling
of Josselin's
kindred in the
forest.

Henry des-
patches a spy,
who returns with
the information
they were wel fyue or six houndred fighting men. And this tydinges herd / Henry deffendid to the messanger moche expresly that to no body he shuld spek of it. And soone he called his brother Alayn and some other of the moost noble of hys lynage and herced to them alle this werk. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'we ne cannot thinke what they entende to doo, but that they wold auenge them on Raymondin our Cousyn or ellis to move werre ayenst vs for the said quarelle. but alwayses it is good to be purveyed of remedye · lete vs therfore send for alle our frendes and kepe vs secretly togidre tyl we see what they hane purposed to doo / to thende yf they come on vs that they fynde vs not discouered & vnpurveyed · also yf Raymondin departeth that he be not surprysed of them / and yf they entende to doo hym eny / it is but for to take the lyf 'fro hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the other, 'that is trutth. Now lete vs yhe & delyure vs that our manement be doo of light & secretly.' And so did they / in so moche that within the second day after / they were gadred togidre about four houndred in nombre men of armes what of theire lynee and what of theire affynyte & alyed / & made them to be lodged in a wod so that few men knew of it. It lapped thanne that Raymondyn wold no lenger abyde / and toke leue of Alayn hys vncele pat abode styl at Quyngant moche wooff / & sory of hys departying / and hys two sones companyed hym & conueyed with grete foysone of theire lynee. And neuer wold lete hym goo byfore, but made theire men to be on eche side of hym, and so long they rode that they approched the Forest where the Castellayne and his felawship were in his retrette which Castellayn knew by his spyes the companyng of Raymondyn & his men and told it to hys parents sayeng in this maner: 'Now shal be seen & knouen who euer louned Josselin and Olyuer
hys sone. For here we may putte to deth alle the lynage of hym self pat to vs hath doon suche a shame.' And they answered to hym that none shuld scape, but alle shuld be putte to deth. But as the prouerbe saith, 'Such weneth to anenge his shame that encreassith it' / and so it was of the Castellayne & hys parents. In this meane while came pauncyent knight to Raymondin 8 and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, ye2 myster wel for to be armed goyng thrugh the Forest. For the lynage of Josselin that ye haue dystroyed loueth you not, and they might bere bothe to your personne and to your felawship & meyne grete dommage yf they found you vnpurueyed / and my herte gyueth me that soone we shaH fynd hem' / and Henry & Alayn his brother and aH theire lynage were armed all redy, and had sent aH theire meyne byfore to make embushe within half a mylle fro the retrette. Thenne whan Raymondyn / had commanded hys men to take theire armures on hem & sawe them of his lynage that were alle armed, he ne wyst what say but pe two brethern his cousyns told hym how they had sent in embushe byfore wel iii. C. of their men for to kepe hym fro hys enemies / and they reherced to hym aH the trouthe. 24 'By my feyth,' said Raymondin, 'curtoyse oweth not to be forgotten / and for it shal not as to my parte fro hens fourthon. For yf in tyme to come ye haue nede of me / I am he that shal at al tymes be redy after my power to fulfylle your wille.' And so longe they rode that they entred the Forest /.

The ancient knight warns Raymondin of his danger, who, seeing his cousin's men all armed, thanks them, and promises to help them should they ever want him.

and on him tell-
ing his men, they promise to put Raymondin and his kindred to death.

Fr. Tel enide venger sa honte qui l'acroit.

Fr. Et bien mestiuer.
The Chastellain, hearing from his spy of Raymondin's appearance, cries on his men to follow him.

They mount, and are allowed to pass by the men of Henry of Leon, who are hidden in the forest, until they meet Raymondin.

They ran upon Raymondin's men; and when Raymondin comes in sight, the Chastellain and his three cousins attack him.

the retrette and to the Castellayn he said: 'Sire, ye may see hym come yonder.' And when the Castellayn vnderstod hym he bygan to crye with a hye voys / 'on horsbak, & who that enuer loued Josselin & his sone 4 lete hym 'folowe me.' Thanne styed every man on horsbak / & they were so encressyd in nombre that they were wel vii C & moo fighting men, and rode fourth in ordynaunce ayenst Raymondin, and passed 8 by the embusshe that Henry and his parents had sent, whiche lete them passe fourth without they discouered themself. and soone after they rode after them. So longe rode the Castelayn & his folke that they perceyued nygh them be foreward of Raymondin, but abasshed he was when he sawe them armed gooyng by ordynaunce / though they were but a few servaunts and a C. men of armes / they 2escryed them to the deth / 16 And when they vnderstode it they yede apart & made to blowe theire trompettes and ranne vpon Raymondyns folke whiche were sore dommaged or he coude come to helpe them, the whiche rode as fast as the hors 20 might walope, and hauyng the spere on the rest launched among his enmyes / and the first that he encountred he ouerthrew hym doun to therthe & aftir drew out high [his] swerde and smote trauersing here 24 & there and in a lytel tyme he moche dommaged hyr enmyes. But whan the Castellayn saw hym he was fulH woo & sory / and he shewed hym to thre hys Cousyns sayeng / 'loke yonder is the knyght that 28 hath shamed aH our lynage / yf we had our wylle of hym aH the other shuld be soone overcome & vayn- quysshed.' thanne they spoored theire horses, and aH foure ranne ayenst hym / and with theire speeris 32 recounted hym, soo that they ouer threw bothe man

2 Fr. et leur escrinient : A mort à mort, mal accountastes celluy qui nous a fait la honte et le dommaige de Josselin notre cousin.
& hors to the erthe and passed al foure fourth. But when Raymondyn saw hym ouer thrawen he spooryd hys hors, and the hors that was swyft and strong releuyd hym on hys knees and soo fourth on his feet so pertly but Raymondyn never lost sterop fro the foot ne sword fro the hand. And thanne he tourned toward the Chastellayn & so mightily smote hym on the helmet with hys sword that he so stakerid that he fell doune to the erthe / and the pres came there so grete that he was sore tradde with hors feet. Thenne begane the bataill grete & fell and sore dommage1 were bote partiis. And thanne came there also thouncyent knight and Henry & Alayn hys brother, and foughte strongly ayenst theyre enemyes. There Raymondyn made grete fayttes of amies and sore dommage2 hys enemys. but the Chastelayn was had out of the pres and hys men toke hym another hors. Thanne toke the party aduerse, herte & courage & stoutly fought they ayenst Raymondyn & his folke, and there were many one slayn of both sydes. And wete it that Raymondyn & his folke susteyned heuy weyght. For hys aduerse party was mochi strong & moche wel they foughte & valyauntly. but the embusche of Henry came by the bake syde on them and assaylled them on aH sydes so that they wost not what they shuld doo / how they shuld defende them self nor where they shuld flee / Thenne was the Chastellayn taken & brought before Raymondin / and he commanded thouncient knight to kepe hym. And in conclusion aH the other were soone after outhre take or deed. And this doon they came to the retrette where Raymondyn said to hys parents: 'Now lorde I owe wel2 to lour and thanke you of the grete socoure that ye haue doon to me this day. For
Raymondin thanks his kindred for their help;

who propose to take the Chastellain, and all others of Josselin's kindred to the king of Brut Britain for judgment.

The prisoners who are not Josselin's kindred are hung, and the Chastellain and the rest are taken bound before the king.

Alain tells the king the treason wrought,

and says that Raymondin has sent the Chastellain and his kindred to receive punishment.

1 fol. 56 b.

The king asks the Chastellain why he has done such a shameful deed.

certainly I wrote that yf it had not be the help of god and of you this traytour had putte me to deth by treson, now haue regarde what best is for to doo.' 'Sire,' said Henry, 'as your wyl shall graunte we alle 4 assent therto.' 'I shall saye you,' said Raymondin, 'what we shal doo. lete vs take and assemble aH the lynee of Josselin to-gidre / and bothe the Chastellayn and alle the other his parents we shall sende to the 8 kinde. Whiche hauyng regarde to theire grete falsched and treson shal punysshe aftir his good wylle.' Alle other thanne said / 'forsouthe, sire, ye say wel.' Thenne were chosen out aH the prysonners that were not of 12 the lynage of Josselin, and att yate of the said retrette some were hanged / some at wyndowes & some at batelments of it. And the Chastellayn and alle his parents there were bounde bothe hand & feet as 16 traytours and prysonners, the whiche Alayn accompanied with thre houndred spere men lede them toard the kinge, and first Alayn presented to ye kinge the Chastelayne of AruaH as he that had conspired & 20 machined that treson / and al other after. and to hym reverced Alayn aH how it was happed. and how Raymondyn recommanded hym to his good grace / and that he wold not be dysplayysd yf he had take venge- 24 aunce on hys mortal enymes that wend to haue murred hym with treson, and that he sent to hym the Chastellayn chief causer and other his complices for to knowe by them the throut of the faytte and for to 28 punysshe them at his pleasure and wylle / 'And how, Chastellayn,' said the kinge 'haue ye be so 1 hardy to doo suche treson and so shamefull dede for the raisonnable justice that late we dide in our resume / seeing & also 32 considering the grete treson that Josselin your vnclc knowleched & confessed to haue doo?' 'By god,' said the king, 'ye were therof surquydous, & it is wel right

2 Fr. mault oultre cuide.
yf euyl is commodo to you therof.' ‘Ha, noble kinge,' said thanne the chasteleyn, 'for your pite lete falle your mysericorde on me caytyue personne. For the 4 grete sorowe & woo that I had of the dyshonour that Raymondin had doon to our lynage hath caused me to doo soo.'

'By my feith,' said the king, 'it is euyl companye of 8 a traytou / and good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, wel I wyl that ye knowe that neuer ye shall haue suche purpos as to wyll slee no gentylman with treson, For neuer I shaH ete tyl that ye 12 be hanged with your vncele, for ye shal hold hym felawship, and also aH them that are of your cohortacion.' The kinge made to be take aHe them of hys cohorte or company, and were aH hanged / and the Chastelayn he 16 sent to Nantes, and there he was hanged nyghe to his vncele Josselin & Olyuyer hys Cousyn. And thus kepte wel the king of Bretons Justice in his time regnyng in Breytayne.

Here sayth thistory that whan Alayn was retourned to Raymondin unto the retrette, and that he had to hym and to the other reherced this pat the kyng had doon / they said that the kyng had doo right 24 wel as a valyaunt & lawfuH justiser shuld doo. Thenne called Raymondin to hym Henry Alayn & other of his lynee and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre cousyns & good frendes, I enjoyne & charge you that ye doo 28 edefye or bigge a pryorye with viii monkes, and that ye reueste them with rentes and reuenues such that honestly & goodly they may lyue on for evermore / they to pray there for the sowle of 1my fader / for the 32 kingis nevew sowle and for the sowles of them that are slayn & ded in this quareH.' And they alle said • they shuld soo doo. And Raymondin prayed them to recommande hym to the kingis good grace to hys 36 barons and to Alayn their fader. And thanne he toke
lenu of them / and they were sorowfull of their departement / and also of this that he wold nat lette them goo no ferther with hym. They retourned to Quyngant. And Raymondin yede on his way and 4 cam to guerrende · and wel he was there festyed and worshipfully cheryed of them of the toun. And here resteth thestorye of Raymondyn · and shal recounte how Henry & Alayn toke lenu of their lynée and cam 8 ayen to theyre fader.

Thistorye saith in this paas that Henry and Alayn toke lenu of their lynée & came to their fader and recounted to hym aH thaduentre of the 12 Chastellayn, how they were departed fro peyr consyn, and how he hadd commanded & charged them to fownde a priory. 'By my feith,’ said peire fader. 'Alayn, now is the land wel clene delyuered of the lynée of 16 Josselin; god on theyre sowles hane mercy, how be it they loned vs neuer. Now fayre sones I shal saye you what ye shal doo. First ye shal goo to the kinge & requeyre hym that it ples hym to gyue you a place 20 for to edeufye the Pryorye / and telle hym the maner how ye be commanded of your Cousyn to fownde it, and I bylene he shal gyue you a good answer.’ And they said that thus shulde they doo. And thanne they 24 departed fro their fader, and so long they rode that they camme to Vannes and fownde the kinge departed & was goo to Sassymon for to dysporte hym at Chasse. And they mounted on horsbak and came to 28 the gate and passed & entred the Forest and rode so long tyl they came to the Castel, and fownde the kyng goon to the park to the chasse / and the two brethen yed after & fownde the king nyghe a grete tree by a 32 staung where he abode aftir the herte that boundes chassed. Thenne the two brethren drew them self aparte bycause they wold not lette the kyng to see the dysporte / who perceyued them wel & coude them good thanke 36

2 Fr. leur en scent monlt bon gré.
CH. XIX.] THE BUILDING OF THE PRIORY.

\[\text{they come out and salute the king,}\
\text{are welcomed,}
\text{and tell him of Raymondin and his will about the priory;}\]

99

therefore. and not long after pe herte came that ranne in to the staung / and there he was take by chaas of dogges / and was hadd out of the watre / and the 4 euree made & gyue to the houndes as custome is to doo. Thenne Henry and Alayn his brother drew them self before the king and salewedy moche honourably / and made wel their message as theyre Cousin 8 had charged them. And the king welcomed hem & moche enquyred of them thestate of Raymondin and they told hym alle that they had seen of hit / and after they recounted to hym how he enjoyed & charged 12 them to edyfye & make vp a Priorye of eyghte monkes. them to reueste & empossesse with landes, reuennes & rents, they to syng & pray therefore for the sowle of the kingis nevew / for Henry his faders sowle, and for the 16 sowles of alle them that had receyued deth in this quarelle. Also how at hys instaunce they shuld pray hym for a place where they shuld edyfye the said pryorye. 'By my feith,' said the king, 'the requeste 20 is wel lawfull & raysonable. and even now 'I shall lede you to the place where I wyl that it be fownded and made vp.' Thanne they came out of the wareyne and came aft by the walle to thende of the clos. and 24 thenne said the king: 'Fair lorde, make here to be edyfied a Pryory & take asmoche of grounde as ye lyketh / and I gyue libertes & habaundonne you the forest for to cutte there the wode, and whan the 28 monkes skal be stablysshed there, I enlybete & habaundonne it to them for theire vse and to alle thider commayng & dwelling. And I graunte to them the fysshing in the see that is nygh to this place a 32 quarter of a legge, and to take in the Forest birles. & wild beastes for theire lyuyng & sustenanne of theire houshold ' and also I gyue to them all the landes erable that are her about half a legge' / and of alle this he 36 made & gaf to them good & suffisant patents. and of
The priory is built for eight white monks, who have an azure □ on their outside robe.

Now telleth thystorye that so long abode Raymon-12 din in the land of Guerrende that he peased and acorded togidre two barons of the lande that long before hated eche other to deth. In so moche that he made them to be good frendes togidre, and thieren 16 Countrees in peas and rest. And after he toke his lene of the barons & of the peuple, which sorowed moche for his departing, and so long he rode that he came into the land of Poytou, wher he found many grete 20 forests unhabyted / and in some places he sawe many wyld bestes, as hertes, hynde, & roo, wyld bores, and other beastes ynough, and in other places many fayre playnes & champaynes. many fayre medowes & ryuers. 24 'By my feyth,' said thanne Raymondin, 'it is grete pyte & dommage that suche a commodyouse Countre is nat enhabyted with peuple.' and many a fayre manoyr and places were on the ryuers there that soone might be 28 redressed as hym semed whiche had be ouerthrowen in tyme of warre. And thus rydyng fourth he came to an auncyent Abbey called Mayleses, and therein were comprised thabbot and an houndred monkkes, beside 32 the Convers, and thare herberowed Raymondyn for the grete playsaunce that he toke of it. and per he dwelled thre dayes and thre nightes. and gaf to the chirch there many fayre jewelles. After he departed and 36
came rydying tyl he aproached & came nygh Lusy- 

nen, and first he perceyued & sawe the tromped 
toure and the new toune, and thenne he supposed not 
4' to be there as he was. For he knew not the place for 
cause of the said toure & toune new made of late, and 
moche he meruaylled whan he herd 1 the sowne of the 
trompes within the toure /.

8 I n this part saith to vs thystorye that whan Ray-
mondin came abowe Lusynen, & he perceyued 
the toune wallowed round aboute with strong walles and 
fortyfied with deep dyches & grete. 'how,' said he to 
12 thauencyent knight, 'What may this be; mesemed 
right now that I was forwayed of my way to come to 
lusyynen / and yet me semeth soo?' thenne began 
thauencyent knight to lawhe. And Raymondin said 
16 to hym : 'How, sir knight, jape you with me / I telle 
you for certayn yf it were not the toure and the toune 
that I see I shuld haue wend to be this nyght in 
Lusyynen.' 'By my feyth,' said thauencyent knight, 
20 'soone ye shal fynde yourself there yf god wyl with 
grete joye.' Now I shaH sey you some of Raymondyn's 
seruaunts were sent before by thauencyent knight to 
annonce Melusyne the commyng of Raymondin. and 
24 how be it she byleued them wel / she made no sem-
blaunt perof / but soone she caused the peple to be 
rely for to goo & mete with Raymondyn, and she her 
self, accompanied with many ladyes & damoyelles, 
28 yede to mete & welcome hym wel horsed & arayed 
honorable and rychely. Thenne Raymondin loked 
fourth byfore hym and sawe the peple commyng fro 
the valey vpward ayenst hym two & two togidre in 
32 fayre ordynaunce, wherof he moche meruaylled. and 
whan they aproched they bygan to crye with a high 
voys, 'ha, ha, dere lord, welcome may you be.' And 
thenne Raymondin knew som of them that were comme 
36 2ayenst hym / and demanded of them, 'Fayre lordes, 
and continues 
his journey to 
Lusignan, but 
does not recog-

1 f. 50 b.

2 fol. 59 b.
fro whens come you? 'My lord,' sayd they, 'we com fro lusynen.' 'thenne,' said Raymondin, 'is Lusynen ferre hens?' They thanne, seeying that he mysknowe the place for cause of the new toune & toure / said: 4 'My lord, ye be at it, but ye mysknowe the place bycause that my lady syn your departyng hath doo made and byld this toune & that high toure, and yonder ye may see her commyng ayenst you.' Thenne 8 was Raymondin moche abasshed / and said not all that he thoughte. but when he remembred how she dyde doo make the Castel of Lusynen in so short tyme he gaf hym self no meruayH yf she had doun soo. 12 Thenne is come to hym Melusyne that honorably welcommed hym, sayeng in this manere: 'My lord, I am right fayn & glad of that ye haue so wel wrought & doun so honourably in your vyage. For al thinges 16 haue be reherced to me alread.' And Raymondin answerd to her: 'Madame, it is by the grace of god and of you.' And talking togidre of this mater they entred Lusynen and alighted. Ther was the feste 20 grete that lasted eighte dayes, And was there the Erle of Forest that said to Raymondin, 'ye be welcome.' And after the feste they departed fro Lusynen and came to Poytiers toward the Erle that receyued hem 24 benygnesly, and demanded of Raymondin where he had be so long, and he record to hym alle his aventure. And shortly to say, the Erle Bertran was therof joyful & glad. ¹ And that doun, the brethern toke leue of 28 hym / and the one yede toward forests; and Raymondin toward his wyf & lady, which thenne was grete with child, and bare her terme / the which expired, she made a fayn child that was her second soue / he was 32 soone baptised and imposed to name Edon,² and hadd an eere grete without comparyson than that other was / but allrys other membres were replenysshed

¹ Fr. Odon.

2 Fr. Odon.
with beaute, the which Edou had syn to hys wyf the Earle of Marchis doughtir. And of hym resteth thisorye / and speketh furthermore of Melusyne & of 4 Raymondyn her lord. 

Thisorye sayth & certifypeth that whan the lady had ended the terme of her childbed, and that she was releuyd / the feste was made grete / and many 8 noble men, ladyes, and damoyselles were there, the whiche, after the feest ful honourably toke their lene & departed. And that same tyme the lady Melusyne bylded bothe the Castel & toure of Melle. Also she dide doo make Vouant & Mernant.1 and after she made the bourgh & toure of saynt Maxene, and bygan the Abbey there. and moche good she dide to poure folk.

16 The second yere after folowyng she hadd a sone that was named Guyon, & [he] was a moche fayre child / but he had an ey higher than that other. And wete it that Melusyne had ever so good nouryces, and 20 had so grete care for her children that they mendid & grewe so wel that every one that saw them maruelled. 2 And that tyme Melusyne bigged & found many a fayre place thruge the lande of Poytou unto 24 the dutchy of Guyenne. She bylded the Castel and pe burgh of Partenay so strong and so fayre without comparson. after that she dide doo make pe Toures of Rochelle & the Castel also, & bygan a part of the 28 toure, and thre leghes thens was a grete toure & bigge, whiche Julius Cesar dide doo make, and men called it the Egles toure, bycause that Julius Cesar bare an Egle in hys banere as emperour. That toure made the lady 32 to be walled & fortyfied round aboute with grete toures macheecolyd, and made it to be called the Castel Eglon. And afterward she edefyed Pons in Poytou and fortyfied Saintes3 that was called at that tyme

1 Fr. Wareront et Mernant. 2 Melusine gives a feast.
3 She builds the castles and towns of Melle and Maxence, and begins the abbey there.
3 Saintes.
4 Melusine has her third son Guyon, who has one ey higher than the other; her children are so well tended, that they grow so that folk marvel at them.
5 fol. 69 b.
6 She builds much in Poyton: the castle and town of Parthenay, and of Roehelle.
7 She fortifies the Eagle's Tower, said to have been built by Julius Cesar.
8 She builds Pons, fortifies Saintes.
Lynges / and after she made Tallemounte and Tallemonds and many other tounes & fortres. And gate & acquyred so moche Raymondin through the polycye & good gouernaunce of Melusyne, what in Bretayne, 4 what in Gascoyne & in Guyenne as in Poytou, that no prync was about hym / but he doubted to dysplaise hym.

Soone after Melusyne was delyuered of her foureth 8 man child, whiche hight Anthony, none fayrer was seen before that tyme. but in his birth he brought a token along his chyk, that was the foot of a lyon, wherof they that sawe hym wondred, & moche were 12 abasshed.

Here saith thistorye, that the vii\textsuperscript{th} yere after Melusyne bare the fyfte child, of whiche at thende of ix monethes she was delyuered, & was named ray\textsuperscript{-}16 nald. none fayrer child might men see, but he was borne only \textit{with} one eye / but it was so bright & so clere that he sawe the ship thre kennynges ferre on the sea, that is, one & twenty leghes ferre / and lyke\textsuperscript{-}20 wyse on erthe, whatsoeuer it was. That same Anthony was ful\textsuperscript{th} gracious & curteys, as ye shal here in thistory herafter.

Furthermore saith thistory, that the eight yere 24 Melusyne childed the vi. child, that was a sone, and had to name Geffray, Whiche at his birth brought in his mouthe a grete & long toth, that appyred without an enhi long & more / and theryore men 28 added to his propre name Geffray \textit{with} the grete toth. and he was moch grete & hye, and wel formed & strong, merueyllously hardy & cruel, In so moche that euery man fered & dradde hym when he was in 32 age / he made in his tyme many wonders & merueylls, as hereafter ye shal here in thistorye.

Thistorye sayth that the ix\textsuperscript{th} yere after Melusyne had a sone, that was the vii\textsuperscript{th}, & hight Frey-
mond, that was fayre ynough, he but he had on hys nose a top of hecris, and in his tyme he was moche demoute. and afterward, by thassent of bothe hys fader & moder, he was made monke in the abbey of Maylleses, of whom ye shall here hereafter thyostorye.

In this part sayth to vs thyostorye that Melusyne was two yere without birth of child, but true it is that 8 in the xiiith yere she had her second soane, and was grete merueyllously / and he brought at hys birth thre eyen, one of the whiche was in the mydel of his forhed. he was so euyl & so cruell that at the foureth yere of 12 his age he slew two of hys nouryce.

The veray styson saith that so long norysshed Melusyne her children, that Vryan, whiche was theldest & first born, was xvij yere old. he was grete 16 and fayre, & wonderly strong, and made grete appertysye in armes, so that euery man & woman had pyte of hys dyfformyte; for his vysage was short & large, hys one eye was red & the other blew, and hys eerys were as 20 grete as the handlynges of a Fan. and Edon his brother was of xvij yere of age. and Guyon had of yeres xvij, and loued Eche other wel Vryan & Guyon / and so pert & swyft they were, that alle thoo that sawe 24 them gaf hemself grete wonder & meruayh. they were beloued of all the nobles of the land, & made many faytes & appertysyes of armes in Joustes, tournoyeng, & in Lystes.

25 It happed that same tyme that two knyghtes of Poyton came fro Jerusalem agayn / and reccounted there as they passed, how the sawdan of Damasc had besieged the king of Cypré in hys Cite of Famagoce, & 32 that he held hym therin in grete dystres. and pat same kyng ne had to hys heyre but only a doughter, whiche was moche fayre. and these tydinges were

1 Fr. une petite tache velue.
2 Fr. huitlesme, and so in Harleian MS. 418.
Urían hearing the tale, speaks to Guyon,

and proposes to him to do some deeds of arms.

The knights from Jerusalem are sent for,

and are questioned about where they have been.

Urían expresses his surprise that they did not stay and help the Christian king.

They explain that it was impossible to enter the town, as it was besieged by eighty thousand pagans.

Ouer fourth brought in the land, that Vryan knew of it. and he thence said to his brother Guyon: 'By my faith, fayre brother, it were grete almes to socoure that kyng aynst the Paynemys. We ben al redy eyght 4 bretherne, the land of our fader may not remayne without heyre, though we were bothe deed. Wherfore we owe the more to enterprize 1 vyages, and see where we may doo some faytes of armes, to be therwith en-8 bauanced in worship & honour.' 'By my feth,' said Guyon, 'ye say truth. but what cause you to say soo, seeyng that ever I am redy to doo as ye wyl doo?' 'Southly,' said Vryan, 'ye say full wel. Lete we send 12 for the two knightes that be come fro the holy vyage, to be ensured of them more playnly of the truth.' they sent to the two knightes that they wold come & spek with them, the which gladly dyde so. And 16 when they were come, the two bretherm welcummed & receyued them goodly. and aftir they bygan tenquyre of them the manere of theirre vyage / of the vse & maneres of the land where they had be. and 20 they said to them the playn truth. 'We understand,' said Vryan, 'that ye haue passed throug an yle wher a king cristen regneth, which is oppressid ouermoch of the paynemys / & wonder is vs that ye abode nat in 24 the werre with that Cristen kyng, for to help & conforte hym, ye that are so renowned, Worthy and valyant knightes, consyderyg as it semeth to vs that alle good cristens are hold' & bound to helpe eche 28 other specyally aynst the paynemys.' To this answered the two knightes: 'By my feith, gentil squyer & lord, wel we wyl that ye knowe that ye by eny manere we myght haue entred the toune without deth, & saf, 32 gladly we had doo so as ye say. but wel ye wote that two knyghtes may not susteyne & bere the weight aynst wel Lxxx. or hounded thousand paynemys, that themne had besieged the toune wherin the said 36
king was. For ye oweth to wete that 'wel sole is he that fighteth aynest the wynd, wenyng to make hym be styH.' ‘By my fethy, said Vryan, ‘your excusacion is good & iuste. but tell me ye men myghty to revye & lede with tham a xxij or xxy thousand men of armes, myght doo eny faytte there to help & socoure the sayd kyng?’ Thenne answerd one of the knihtes:

8 ‘By my feth, sire, ye se & considered that the Cite is strong, and the kyng within valiaunt, hardy & worthy fighter of his personne / and he is accompanied with many good men of armes, & the toun wel vytaylled / and yet ther be many Fortresses where they of Rodes come to refresshe themself, of the whiche the kyng & they in the Cite haue grete recomforte / and wete it that moche easely & wel they might goo thider / and wold to god suche a felawship as ye spek of wer redy, and that my felawe & I shuld take thadunenture with them.' ‘By my fethy,' said thenne Vryan, ‘my brother & I shaH receyue you, & lede you thither, god before, and that shortly.' And when they understode hym say soo, they were moche glad, sayeng that ye they soo dyde, hit moned them of valyaunt courage & grete noblesse of herte. Here resteth thisstorye of these two knihtes, and yet fether speketh of Vryan & Guyon.

Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of hem.

I n this partye sayth thisstorye that Vryan and his brother Guyon cam to Melusyne theire moder, and to her said Vryan in this manere: 'Madame, yf ye vouchesaaf, it were wel tyme that we shuld go fourth to our vyage, for to knowe the Countrees ferre & straunge, Wherby we may acquyre honour & good
renommee in straunge marches, to thend that we lerne & understand the dyuere langages of the world. Also yf Fortune and good auenture wyl be propyce & conuenable to vs, we haue wel the wyH & courage to subdue & conquer Countrees & landes; For we considere & see that alredy we be eyghte bretheren / and are lyke, yf god wyl, to be yet as many moo in tyme commyng, and to say that your landes & possessions were parted in so many partes for our sustenance & gouernement / he that shuld enheryte the chyef lyflod shuld not be able to kepe no grete houshold, ne to be of grete estate, to the 1 Regard of the high blood & grete noblesse that we come of / also consideryng as now your grete estate. Thenerfore as to my brother & I my self, we quytte our parte / except alone ly your good grace, throug thayde that ye now shaH doo to vs 16 for our vyage, yf god wyl gyne vs grace to acomplysshe.'

‘By my feyth, children,’ said thenne Melusyne, ‘your requeste is caused of grete worthynes and courageous herte, and therfore it oweth not to be refused ne gayn- 20 sayd, and upon this matere I shaH entreate your faders, For without hys counseyH I owe not to accorde your requeste.’ Thanne fourthwith came Melusyne to Raymondin / and shewed hym the requeste & wyH 24 of theire two sones ; the whiche anserued & sayd, ‘By my feyth, madame, yf it lyke you good they doo soo, I assent gladly therto.’ ‘Sire,’ said Melusyne, ‘ye say wel; and we te that they shaH doo noping in their 28 vyage but that it shaH tourne to their grete lawde & honour, yf god wyl.’ Then came ayen Melusyne to her two sones, and thus she said to them: ‘Fayre children, thinke from hensfourthon to doo wel; For 32 your fader hath graunted youre requeste, & so doo I, and care you not for no pinge. For within short tyme I shaH ordelye & purveye for your faytte with goddis grace & help / in such wise that ye shaH konne me 36
THE ARMAMENT.

good gree & thanke therfore. but telle me whether & to what part of the world ye wyl & purpose to goo, to thende I purvey of suche thinges that shalbe necessary 4 to you therfore.' Thanne ansered Vryan: 'Madame, wel it is true & certayn that we haue herd certayn tydynges that the kyng of Cypre is besiged 1 by the Sawdan within hys Cyte of Famagoce / and thither, yf 8 it playse god, we entende & purpose to go for to ayde & socoure hym ayenst the fals & mysbyleuers pay-nemys.' Thanne gan say Melusyne, 'herto muste be purveyed / As wel for the see as for the land; and 12 with goddis grace, my dere children, I shal ord eyer therof in suche manere that ye shal be remembred of me: and this shal I doo shortly.' The two bretheren thenne kneled down before theyre moder / and thanked 16 her moche humbly of her purveyunce & good wylle. And the lady toke hem vp, and sore wepyng she kyssed them bothe, For grete sorowe she had in her herte / though she made withoutfourth chere of theire 20 departyng. For she loued them with moderly love, as she that had nourysshed them.

Thystorye sayth that Melusyne was ful curyous and besy to make al thinges redy pat were 24 necessary to her sones for theire vyage. She made Galeyes, Carrykes, and other grete shippes to be vytailled & redy to sayH / and pe nauye was so grete in nombre that it was suffysaunt for foure score thou- 28 sand men of armes to sayH in. And in the meane while the two bretheren sent for the two forsaid knightes, & said to them that they shuld be redy to meve fourth shortly, as they had promysed to them. 32 And they anserued: 'Lordes, we be al redy. and many gentylmen that we knowe ben shapen & redy to go with you in your felawship, and we alle be desyrous to serue you and to doo your playsir.' 'By my feyth,' 36 said Vryan, 'right grete grameircy to you. We shaH

1 fol. 64. They tell their mother they intend succouring the King of Cyprus, so she promises to provide what is necessary for sea and land. They thank her; and she, weeping, kisses them both, for she loves them with motherly love.

Melusine prepares galleys, carracks, and other ships, and victuals them, enough for eighty thousand men of arms. The Jerusalem knights are sent for, and tell the brothers they are ready to go with them.
The armament ready, Melusine appoints four barons to look after her two sons.

The men and stores are put on board the fleet; the banners are waved, trumpets sounded, and every one enjoys the scene.

The brethren bid their friends farewell,

and are accompanied to their ships by their parents. Melusine draws them apart, and gives them each a magic ring, which, whilst they wear it and remain true, they will never lose in a good quarrel, nor be hurt by magical arts or poison.

The brothers thank their mother, who advises them always to hear divine service before doing any work;

'Led them wel, yf god wyl and you also.' Now thenne, shortly to saye, Melusyne dyde so moche that al was redy, and had foure Barons to whome she be-tok the kepyng & gouernance of her two sones, and had grete foysone of gentylmen knightes & squyers, vnto the nombre of 2 two thousand Vc men of armes, & fyne houndred archers / and as many men with crossebowes. And thenne the vtyayles, artyllery, harneys & 8 horses were charged in to the vessels, an syn mounted the men into the same. There were seen baners & standarts / and the sowne of trompes & tambours and of many other instruments was herd, that every one 12 enjoyed that sawe / And the two brethren toke leue of þeire brethren and frendes, & of the peple of the land, that moche tenderly wept for theire departyng. And Raymondin & Melusyne conveyed theire children 16 vnto the see; and whan they come there Melusyne drew hem apart, and said to them: 'Dere children, ynderstand this that I wil telt you & commande.' /

'C hildren,' sayd Melusyne, 'here be two rynges 20 that I gyue you / of whiche the stones ben of one lyke vertue. and wepte it that as long that ye shal vse of fethfulnes, without to think eny eyl, ne doo trychery or hynderaunce to other / hauyng alwayes 24 the said rynges & stones vpon you, ye shall not be dyscomfyted ne overcome in no faytte of armes, yf ye haue good quarell. ne also sort or enchantment of art Magique, ne poysons of whatsomeuer manere shul 28 not lette ne greve you / but that assone as ye shal see 3 them they shal lesse theyre strengthe.' and she delyuered to cyther of hem one / and they thanked her moch, keneelyng to therthe. And yet said Melusyne 32 to them in this manere: 'My dere & beloued children, I wol & charge you that wher so enuer ye be, ye here the denyne seruyse or enuer ye doo eny oper werk.

2 Fr. quatre mille hommes d'armes; no particulars given.
also that in all your affayres & dedes ye clayne & calle thayde & help of our Creatour, and serve hym diligently, and loye & dredde hym as your god & maker. and that allways ye honoure & worship with all your power holy church, beyng her champyons, the same to susteyne & withstand aynst alle her envyl wyllers. Help ye & counseylle the pouere wydowes, and flatterers. It is our delight to doo to be norysshed the pouere orphenyns, both faderles and moderles / and worship al ladyes / gyue ayde and conforte vnto alle good maydens that men wol haue dyshyertyd vnlawfully. loye the gentylmen, and hold them good companye. / be meke, humble, swete, curtoys & humayne, bothe vnto grete & lesse. and ye have se a man of armes pouere, & faH in decaye by hap & fortune of juste werre, re-

fresshe hym of some of your goodes. be large vnto the good folke / and whan ye gyue eny thing, lett hym not tary long for it; but wel loke & considere how moche & why / and ye the personne is worthy to have it, and ye gyue for playsaunce, loke & kepe vnto that prodigalite or folysshe largenes surpryse you not / so that after men mocke not with you. For they that haue wel deserved to be of you rewarded shuld not be wel apayed ne content therof / and the straungers shuld mocke you behinde your backe. and kepe ye promyse, or beligte no thing but that ye may fournysshe & hold it. and ye ye promyse eny thing, tary not the deluyeranne of it. For long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yeffe. kepe wel ye rauyssh no woman / ne be coueytous of other mens wyues, of whom ye wil be loued and hold for your frendes. believe not the CounseyH of none / but first ye knowe his manere, deeling & condycyons. also beleue not the counseyH of Flatterers, and enuyous, & enarycyons / ne suche putte not in none office aboute you, For they cause rather to their maister dyshonour to call on God for help, and to serve and fear Him;
to honour and sustain holy Church;
to help widows, orphans, and ladies;
to help the unfortunates;
to frequent the company of gentlemen;
to be courteous to all;
to be thrifty;
to keep promises;
to abstain from ill-using women;
to beware of flatterers and envious persons;
& shame, than any worship or prouffyt. kepe wel ye borow nothing but that ye may yeld it ayen / and yf for nede ye be constrayned for to borow / as soone as ye may / make restitucion of it / And yf ye shal mowe 4 be without danger, & lede honourable lyf. And yf god graunte that Fortune be to you good & propyce in subduyng your enmyes & their landes, gouerne wel your folke and peuple after the nature & condycion 8 that they be of. and yf they be rebeH, kepe wel that ye surmounte & overcome hem without to lese eny suche ryght that longith to your lordship & seignourye / and that ye ener make good watche vnto tyme ye haue 12 vaynquysshed at your wylle. For yf ye ouertredde your self / nedes ye muste rule your self after their wylle. but always kepe wel, whether they be euyl & hard, or debonnaire, that ye ne haunee & sette new 16 customes that be vnraysonnable / and of them take only your dute and ryght, without to retayH hem without and ayenst raison. For yf the peple is pouere / the lord shal be vnhappy / and yf werr came 20 he shuld not mowe be holpe of them att hys nede / wherfore he might faH into grete da<nger & seruytude. For wete it wel / that a flies of a yere is more prouffytale / than the flies pat is shorne twyes or 24 thryes in a yere. now, my children, yet I defende & forbede you that ye byylene not the Counseill of none exilled and flemed fro his land, in this that may touche the hyndereryng or dommage of them that haue exilled 28 hym / yf there nys good, right & lawfull cause / and ye to haue good reason to help hym, For that shuld mowe lette you to come to the degree of worship & honour. And aboue all thinges I forbede you pryde / 32 and commande you to doo & kepe justice, yeldying rights wel to the lest to the moost / and desyre not to be auenged at uttermost of all the wronges don to you by some other / but take suffisaunt & raysonn-
able amendes of hym that offreth it. Dyspreysenot
your enmyes though they be litel, but make euere good
watche. and kepe wel as long ye be conqueryng, that
atwix your felawes ye mayntene nat yourself as lord
& sire / but be commyn & pryue bothe to more &
lesse / and ye owe to hold them company after the
qualite & vocacyon that they be of, now to one & now
8 to other. For al this causeth the hertes of creatures to
drawe vnto the loue of them that are humayn, meke &
curteys in their dignite & seignouryes. Haue an
herte as a fyers Lyon ayenst your 1 enmyes / and shew
12 to them your puyssauwce and valyauntysye. and fy god
doweth you with some goodes, departe som of it to
your felawes after he hath deserued. And as to the
werre, byleue the counseyie of the valyaunt & worthy
16 men that haue haunted & vsed it. Also I defende
you that no grete treatee ye make with your enmyes,
For in long treatee lyeth somtyme grete falshed. For
always wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the further;
20 and whan the sage seeth pat he is not able to resyste
ayenst the strengthe of his enmyes, he seketli &
purchaceth always a treatee, for to dyssymyle vnto
tyme he seeth hymself mighty ynough for them / and
24 thanne anoone of lyght they fynd waye & manere
wherby the treatees ben of none effect ne value.
Wherfore loke ye, forbere not your enmyes there, as
ye may putte them vnder your subsection with honour.
28 And thenne fy ye shew them fauour & curtoysye, that
shal tourne to your grete honour / and leue ye to doo
for them by treatee or appoyntement. For though no
falshed or decepcion be founde in none of bothe sydes /
32 yet shuld mow some men say or thinke that ye
somwhat doubted them / how be it, I say not that
men owe to refuse good traytee, who that may haue
it'/ Thus, as ye here, chastysed & endoctryned Melu-
36 syne her two sones, Vryan & Guyon, whiche thanked
MELUSINE.
The anchor is weighed.

The brothers thank their mother for her advice.

1 fol. 67.

Melusine tells them she has well stored their ships; and giving them to God's care, bids them remember her advice, and act on it.

Her moche humbly. and thenne she sayd: 'Children, I haue sent gold & syluer ynoiighe in to your ship for to hold & maynten your estate, and to pay therwith your men for foure yere. And haue no doubte or 4 care for bred, byscuyte, Freshe watre, vynaigre, Flessh salted, fynsh ynoough, & good wynes suffysaunt to long tyme, For therof ben your shippes wel fyled & pur-ueyed. goo thanne fourth on your waye, vnder the S sauegarde of god / who kepe you / lede & retourne you agayn with joye. and I pray you that ye thinke & remembre what I haue sayd to you, to fulfyH it after your power.'

Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of theire moder Melusyne and entred theire ship.

Thenne they toke leue of theye fader and moder 16 and entred theire vesselt. This doon, the ancres were had in, & the saylles haled vp, the patrons made theire recommendacions to god as customed it is, to 2 that by hys benygue grace he wyll 20 graunte to them good ryuage, and accomplysshing of theyre vyage without lettyng or empeschement. The wyndes were for them propyce & good / and in short tyme they were ferre cast on the see so that they were 24 out of sight / . Thanne departed Raymondyn & Melusyne, and theyre meyne with them, and came to the Castel Eglon. And here resteth thystorye of them, and re- 28 tourneth to spek of Vryan and Guyon hys brother, and of theyre felawship that saylled on the see, holding theire way toward Cypre. / Thystory sayth that whan Uryan and Guyon were 32 departed fro Rochelle they saylled long on the
see, and passed by many yles, & refreshed them in many places; and so long they rowed but they sawe many vessels that chased two galeyes / and thenne the Patron shewed them to be two brethern / and they answered, and demanded of them what was best to doo. 'By my feyth,' sayd the Patron, 'it were good we send a galeye to wete what folke they be / and in the meane while we shal make our men to take theyre armes & harneys on them at al auauntures.' 'By my feith,' said Vryan, 'that I vouchesaf' / and they did soo. And thanne the galeye departed abrode, and sayled toward the strauengers / and escryed them, & demanded of them what they were, and they answered, 'We be two galeyes of Rodes that haue be found of the paynemys that foloweth & chaceth vs, and we see wel ya be Cristen, and so are all they that come after you.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they of the galeye, 'we ben as ye suppose and saye.' 'By my heed,' said one of the patrons of Rodes galeyes / 'goo & haste your felawship, For ye haue found fayre aventure, yonder be of the sawdans folke that goo to the siege of Famagosse / and who might dystroye them, he shuld goo grete socoure to the king of Cypre / and to the sawdan of Damaske grete dommage.' Whan thanne they of the galeye herd this / they sodaynly retourned & announced it to the two bretheren / and to theire folke whiche anon yede vp to the Castels of their shippes, and clymed vp to the toppes of them, hauyng speere & darts, stones, & wild fyre alredy / also bowes & arrowes in theire handes / gones & pouldre to shote with. There bygan toppes to blowe vp, & rowed mightily toward the paynemys. And whan the Infideles & paynemys percyued so grete nombre of shippes rowyng toward them they ne wyst not what to thinke, For they had neuer supposed that so grete payyuzaunce & strength of cristen men had be so nygh them / but till they see two galeys being chased.

They send to see who are in them.

The messengers find the galleys to be from Rhodes,

1 fol. 65.

and that the vessels that chase them are the Sultan's of Damascus, who is on his way to Famagosse, to fight the King of Cyprus.

On hearing this news, Urian and Guion prepare their ships to fight,

and row towards the paynim Sultan.

The Infidels, surprised at the numbers of the Christians,

1 2
always they putte hem self in aray gooyng abacke, but oure galeyes aduyronned them round about on al sydes, and bygan of al partes to shutte theire gonnnes. And whan the paynemys sawe this / and that they myght not flee, they toke a vessel whiche they had take fro them of rodes, and had cast the folke that was in it into the see / and fyled it with wode, oyle, & talowe, and with sulphre & brymstone. and whan they sawe our folk approuched nygli them they sette it afyre. and whan the fyre was wel kyndled they lefte it behynd them to mete first with our folke / but as god wold they were warned therof & kept / themself wel therfro / and assaylled theire enmyes at the other syde right vygourously. There was grete shotyng of crosbowes & gonnnes / and soone after our folk entred byforce and strengthe of armes the shippes of the 16 paynemys / and fynally they were take & dyscomfyted, and putte to deth. and our folke gate there grete good whiche the two brethern departed, and gaf to theire felawes and to them that wer within the two galeyes of 20 Rodes / and syn rowed & saylled both so long that they arryued in the yle of Rodes. And there they refresshed them, & gaf to the brethern of the religyon the fustes & galeyes that they had taken vpon the 24 paynemys, and they souurned there foure dayes. And the maister of Rodes prayd them that they wold come into the Cite / and they dide soo / and were there honourably receyued / and the said maister demanded 28 them of the cause of their commyng. And the two brethern told hym that they were come forto socoure the king of Cypre / And he asked them ful humbly of what lande they were, and what they were / and the 32 two brethern told to hym all the trouth. Thenne made the maister to them grete chere than tofore / and said to them that he shuld send for som of his brethren / & that he shuld goo with hem to helpe & socoure the 36
king of Chipre. And the two bretheren thanked hym moche humbly therefore.

Now sayth thystorye that so long abode, & so-

journed the two brethern at Rodes tyl the maister had assembled his folke, and vytyllled & laden with good men of armes, & archers six galeys, & saylled with Uryan & Guyon so long that they arryued 8 nygh to the yle of Coles, & apperceyued grete lyght. Thenne the grete maister of Rodes that was in Uryan's galeye, said to the two bretheren: 'Sires, in good feyth it were good & wel doon to send a CarueH vnto yonder 12 yle, to knowe & aspye what folke is there.' 'I youch-
saf it,' said Vryan. The Rampyn then, or CarueH, saylled thither, & arryued in to the said yle, & some of hem descended & founde many grete fyres & lodgis, 16 and by the experience that they sawe, they extimed them pat had lodged there to the nombre of xxx thousand men / and that they myght wel haue dwelled per foure or fyue dayes. For they found without the lodgys grete 20 foyson of oxen hornes & of other bestes. And then they came ayen in to therie VesseH, and retorned toward our folke / & recounted to them the trouth of all that they had found. 'By my feith,' said themne 24 the maister of Rodes, 'I wene they be paynemys that are gooyng toward the sawdan at the siege, and that they whiche ye haue dyscomfyted were of theire felaw-

ship, & abode for them in that same yle' / and for 28 certayyn they were soo / and of them they saylled & rowed fourth tyl they sawe an abbey on the see coste, where men sought & worshiped saynt Andrew / and men saith that there is the potence or cros wheron the 32 good thef Dysmas was euceyted whan our lord was saylled to the Cros for our redempcion. 'Sire,' said the maister, 'it were good that we should entre that lyt lil hauen Vnto tyme that we had sent to Lymasson 36 for to knowe tydinges, & for to wete yf they wyl
receyue vs for to putte our naye in surete within theyre clos.' 'Maister,' said Uryan, 'let it be doon in the name of god after your playstire.' Thennce they arryued, and entred the port or hauen / and sent 4 wordes to thabbot ther, that they shulde not doubtte, For they were their frenedes. And the maister of Rodes with other went thider. And when thabbot & monkes knew the tydinges and the commynge of the two 8 brethren, they were joyous & glad, & sent some of their bretheren to Lymas to announce & telle pe socours that was arryued at their porte. Thenne when a knyght, Captayn of the place, herde these tydinges he 12 was fayn & glad, and made fourthwith a galyotte to be shipped redy, and came toward our folke, and demanded after the lord of that armee /. and he to whome he asked it lede hym where Uryan / Guyon 16 his brother / the master of Rodes, & many other barons were in a ryche paunyllon, that they had don to be dressed on the streyte of the porte / and shewed to hym Vryan that satte on a couche with hym his 20 brother, and the maister of Rodes. And when he saw hym he was abasshed of the valuer & of the grete fyerste of hym, & newerfeles he yede & salued hym honourably, and Vryan receyued him goodly & benyngly. 24 'Sire,' said the Knight, 'ye be welcome in to this land.' 'Fayre sirs,' said Vryan, 'moch grete thankes to you.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is don me to understan that ye departed fro your Countrie to 28 thentent to come ayde & help the king of Cypre.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'it is trouth.' 'Then, sire,' said the knight, 'it is reson that al be open byfore you, where ye wyl by all the royalme of Cypre, throug all 32 tounnes, Cites, & Castels there as ye shal be please to goo, but as to the same, which is to my ryght redoubted lord the king of cypre, hit shal be soone appareyled & open to you, when it shal lyke you, & also the porte 36
to putte your vessels in sauete.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'ye say right wel, & gramercy to you. Sire knight, it is tyme to meue, For my brother and I haue 4 grete langyng to approche nygh the paynemys / not for theire prouffyt, but for theire dommage, if it plaise god that we so doo.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is good ye doo to be had out some of your horses as many 8 as it lyke you / and take som of your men with you, and we shall goo by land.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Uryan, 'ye say right wel' / and thus it was doon / and Uryan made some of hys men to be armed, vnto the nombre 12 of foure hundred gentylmen of the moost hye barons, knightes & squyers. and he himself, & his brother armed them and mounted on horsbak / and the banere dysployed, rode fourth in moch fayre ordynaunce / and 16 the maister of Rodes & the other shipped them on the see & rowed toward the porte. And Vryan and his felawship rode with the said knight that guyded hym so long that they came & entred in to the toune, and 20 were right well lodged. And then came the nauye, & arryued to the porte, and the horses were all had out of the shippes, and the folke descendid to land, and lodged them in pe feld without the toune within 24 tentes & pauyllons / and they that had none, made theire lodgis the best wyse they coude. and was moche grete playsaunce to see thoost when they were alle lodged. The moost hye barons lodgyd them within 28 the toune / and the nauye was draw, & had in to the clos in sauete / and they commyted good folke to defende & kepe it, yf Sarasyns or paynemys came there for to doo som euyl. Now shal I lene to speke 32 of Uryan, & shal say of the Captayn of the toune that moche wel aduyed thoost and the maynten of the folke, & moche preyed it in his herte / and said wey they were folke of faytte 2 and of grete enterpyse, when 36 so few people enterpyred for to haue the vyctory ouer

Footnotes:
1 fol. 70.
2 fol. 70 b.
A MESSAGE TO THE KING OF CYPRUS. [CH. XXI.

The Captain of the town is surprised at the bravery of Urian, who thinks of conquering the mighty host of the Saracens with so few men; but Urian's bold looks assure him, and he thanks God that Urian has been sent to help the king.

The Captain of the place indites a letter to the King of Cyprus, telling of Urian's arrival and of his forces.

The sawdan, that had with hym more than houndred thousand paynemys. And for to say truth, Vryan had not yet comprised the men of the maister of Rodes, eyghte thousand fyghtyng men / and therefore the knight meruaylled, and held it to grete audacite & hardyernes of herte, and to grete valyaunce. And whan he considered the grandeur & the facion of Vryan, & the fyerste of his vysage, and also of guyon hys brother / he said to his folke / 'thoo same are worthy for to subdue & conquer all the world.' and he said to hymself, pat god had sent hem thither of his benyng grace for to socoure the kyng, and for to enhaunce the 12 cristen feyth, and that he shulde lette it to be known to the kyng by certayn message.

Thystorye sayth that the knight made a lettre, the tenour of whiche conteyned al the materie of 16 Uryan, & of his brother, of theire men, & of theire commyng, and how the two bretheren had to name, and of what countre they were / and syn he called one hys neveu, & said to hym in this manere, 'ye muste 20 bere this lettre to Famagosse, and gyue it to the kyng / and whatsoever it happeth that god forbede, but al good to you, nedes ye muste doo it.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said he / 'ye shal putte bothe the lettres & 24 myself in grete jeopardy & aventure, For if by some myschief, as it happeth ofte, wherof god preserue me I were taken of our enmyes, of my lyf is nothing / and ye wote it wel / but for the loue of you, myn vncle & 28 of the kyng, to doo hym comfort, & to gyue hym herte & hoop to be putte & delyuered fro hys enmyes, & fro the mortal parel wherein he is now, I shall putte myself in aduenture / and I pray 1 to god deuoutly, that it 32 please hym of his benigne grace to lede me gooyng & commyng in sauete.' / 'Thus owe men to serue there lord,' said the Captayne, 'and yf god wyl ye shalbe wel rewarded therof.' and anoone he toke the lettre, & 36
delyuered it to his neaw / that mounted on horsebacke, & rode fourthon his way. But as for now I shaft rest of hym / and I shal returne there I lefte to speke of 4 Vryan / and shal say howe he governed hymself whiles the messager yede toward the king. how wel he knew nat of it. / Thistory saith that Vryan called to hym the maister of Rodes and the Captayne of the place, and demanded of them thus: ‘Fayre lordes, is the sawdan somewhat yong, ne of grete enterpryse’ / and they answered, ‘that ye for certayn’ / ‘and how,’ said Vryan, 12 ‘was he neuer before this place to make warre than now?’ / they answered that, ‘nay’ / ‘and what thenne,’ said Vryan, ‘hath caused hym to passe the see now? sith he is man of enterpryse, I merveyl that so long 16 he held hym styl, seeing ye be his nigh neygbours, and also that he hath so grete puissaunce, as it is told me.’ ‘By my feyth, sire,’ said the Captayne, ‘it is veray & trouthe that our kyng hath a moch fayr doughter of the age of .xv. yere, the which the sawdan wold haue had by force / and our kyng wold not acorde her to hym without he wold be baptysed. And wete it that euery here tofore we had trewes togidre of so long 24 tyme that no mynde is of pe contrarye. and when the sawdan hath seen that our kyng wold not graunte to hym his daughter, he sent ageyn to hym the trewes with a deffyaunce or chalengyng, and was redy on the 28 see with a .C. & fyfty thousand paynemys, and came & made soone his harneys to be had out on erthe, & wente and layd siege tofore Famagoce, where he found 1 the kyng all unpurveyed of his baronye, that knew not of 32 his connyng / but syn there be entred moche folke within the Cite ayenst his enyl gree, & there is now fayre scarmysshing where grete losse hath be on both partes / and syn the paynemys have refresshed themself twyes of new folke, in so moch that they ben yet and despatches his nephew on horseback to the King at Famagoce. Urian asks about the Sultan of Damascus, and ascertains that he fights to get the king’s beautiful daughter, now fifteen, refused him because he would not be baptised. The Sultan challenged the king, and laid siege to Famagoce, which was unprepared; but now reinforcements have entered the town, and there is fair skirmishing.
The Saracens are a hundred thousand strong; but they lost some vessels, as was learnt from one of our ships, who saw them pass, chasing two Rhodian galleys, but saw no more of them.

The Master of Rhodes tells the Captain of Urian’s victory, which explains their non-appearance.

Urian, learning that love has made the Sultan light, says that he is the more to be feared, because love is so powerful that it makes even cowards brave.

and states that next day, after divine service, he will set out in quest of him.

At the third sound of the trumpets they march.

wel a Cth. but at this last voyage they have lost a parte of their shipps & of their folke, which they abode fore in the yle of Coles. For one of our galleys of the blakke hylle that pursyewed them told it to vs, & how they chaced two galleys of the hospytal of Rodes / and wete it that they ne wote not where they bycame syn, For they taryed after wel by the space of six dayes in the said yle / but whan they sawe that they came not, they departed thems & came byfore famagoce at siege.’ ‘By my feth, sire,’ sayd the maister of Rodes, ‘this might wel be very truth. but see here my lord Vryan and hys brother, that shuld wel answere therof, For they have be at dyscomfted & slayn by theire strengthe & valiaunts, and they hane cyuen to vs theire fastes & theire nauye.’ ‘In good feth,’ sayd the knight, ‘that playseth me wel, and 16 blessed be god therof.’ ‘My lord,’ said the Captayn, ‘now haue I recounted to you why the werre is meued, and wherefore the saudan of Damaske hath passed the see.’ ‘In the name of god,’ said Vryan, ‘loue hath 20 wel so moche & more of puysaunce than of suche enterpryse to doo. And wete that syn the saudan is enterpsyed of force of loue, the more he is to be doubted / For veray soth it is / that loue hath so moche 24 of myght that it maketh coward to be hardy and to doo right grete enterpryse / & that byfore he durst not passe. And thence it is a[l? certainy to this, that the saudan is hardly & enterprenaunt the more 26 he doth hym to be doubted / but alwayes be doo the wylle of god. For we shal departe hens to the playssire of god to morow by tymes after the deuyne servyce for to goo & vysyte them.’ And then he made to be 32 cryed & proclaimed with the trompette that enevy man shuld make redy hys harneys. and they departed after the thirde sowne of the trompette in goodly & fayre ordynance, eneurope vnder his banere / and bade them 36
to siew the vanward / and so they dide. here I shal
leue to speke of them / and shaH retourne there as I
left to speke of the Captayns nevew that moche
4 strongly rode toward Famaqose / and so moche ex-
ployted his way that he came about midnyght to the
Cornere of the wode, vpon a lytil mountayn, & loked
down into the valye, and then he bygan to perceyue
8 & see the oost of the paynemys, where as was grete
lyght of fyres that were made by the lodgys; and he
sawe the Cite so aduyronned al about with paynemys,
that he ne wyse which way to draw for to entre the
12 toun. and there he was long tyme in grete poughte.
It happed that about the spryng of the day foure score
basynets, strauengers of dyuerse nacyons, yssued out at
a posterne of the Cyte, & commodity al thoost by
16 manere of batayH / and that same coure the watche
departed, & the moost part of them was retourned to
theyre lodgis / and they entred in the oost with some
of them that had watched without they were ware of
20 hem, & supposed they had be of their companye, and
came nygh to the tente of the sawdan / and thanne
they bygan to launce & smyte with speeres & with
swordes on al the paynemys that they mete & re-
24 countred / and cutted cordes of pauyllons to grete
desray, & made moche horyble occysyon & slaghir
of paynemys after the quantite 1 that they were of.
Thenne was al the host afrayed, and bygan to crye alarome
28 & to harneys / then bygan thoost to take on them theire
armures. And whan the cristien men sawe the force &
strengthe of theire enemies that bygan to ryse, they
retourned with a lytel paas toward the Cite, fleeyng &
32 castyng to therthe al that they recounted on theire
waye. And whan the messaunger sawe so grete affraye
& noyse he cam at al anenture & broched his hors
with the spoorys, and passed without fourth the lodges
36 throug out al the oost of pe paynemys / and he had

1 fol. 72 b.

The Captain's
nephew, that
carried the lette
to the king,

arrived at the
city of Fama-
gosse, see it
surrounded with
paynemys, and
does not know
how to enter it.

At the spring
of day, eightie
busynets leave
the city,

and when the
paynemys' watch-
men are in their
tents,

the basynets
fall upon the
paynemys, cut
their tent ropes,
and slay many
of them.

But on the host
of the Saracens
army,

they run back
towards the city.

The messenger
seeing the ad-
vventure, spurs
his horse, rides
to the basynets,
not goo long whan he found hymself atwix the Cite & them that so had commoeuyd thoost, as said is. And then he knew them soone ynough that they were of the garnyson of the Cyte, and eseryed them, saying: 'ha, 4 ha, fayre lorde, thinke to doo wel, For I bryng yon good tydynges; For the floure of the noble cheualrye of Crystyante cometh to socoure & helpe you / that is to wete the two damoyseaulx of Lusynen, that haue 8 dyscomfytde alredy a grete part of the Sodanis folke vpon the see / and they bryng with them wel eyght thousand men. And themde whan they understode hym they made hym grete chere and were ryght joyful, 12 and entred the toune ayen without eny losse. wherof the sawdan was moch woful & angry. And then he came & bygan the scarmoushe before the barers & many paynemys were there slayn & dede / and they 16 of Cypre made theire enemyes to recule abacke with strengthe / and the sawdan made the trompette to sowne & caht the retrette whan he sawe that he myght doo none other thing. And pen came the said mes- 20 saunger byfore the kynge, & made the reverwence on hys vnclis byhalue, and presented the lettre. And the kynge receyued hym moch benyngly, & tok away the wax and open the lettre & sawe the tenour 1 of hit. / 24 and syn heued vp his handes joyntly toward heuen, & said: 'ha, a verry gloryous god, Jhesu Criste, I pant regnacye & mercye the ryght deveulty & humbly of this, that thou hast not forgeten me that am thy pouere 28 creature and thy pouere servaunt, that haue long tyme lyued here within this Cite in grete double & feere, and in grete myserye of my pouere lyuyng and my folke also.' And thenne he made to be announced in al the chyrches, 32 that they shuld ryng theire belles, & that processyons shuld be made with crosses & baners, and with torches brennyng, lawdyng & preysyng the creator of creatures, prayeng hym moche humbly that he of his mercyful & 36

and tells of the arrival of the Lusignans with eight thousand warriors,

which gladdens them,

and makes the Sultan sad and angry.

The fight continues, but the paynemys are driven back, and the Sultan sounds a retreat.

The messenger delivers his letter to the king.

1 fol. 72.

who thanks God on reading it that he has not been forgotten.

The king orders the church bells to be rung, processions to be made,
benyng grace wyl kepe & preserue them fro the handes & daunger of mysbyleuerns paynymys. And thanne by-
gan the ryngyng to be grete, & was the joye ryght 4
grete when the tydynges of the socours commyng to
them was known of all. And whan the paynymys
vnderstode the gladnes & joye that they of the cyte
made, they moche abasshed why they made &
8 demened so grete feeste. 'By my feyth,' sayd the
saudan, 'they have herd some tydinges that we wote
not / or ellis they doo so for to gyue vs vnderstandyng
that they haue folke ynoughe & vytaylles also for to
defende & withstande awenst vs.' And here resteth
thystorye of the soudan & bygynneth to speke of
Ermyne the kingis doughtir of Cypre, which herd
there as she was in her chambr the tydynges of the
 socours that the children of Lusynen brought with
them. and the mayde had grete langyng & desyre to
knowe the veray truth of all.

The hystorye saith to vs thus / that when the
damoyselle knew of the socours & help that soone
she sent for hym that had brought the tydinges 1 therof,
and he came to her in hir chambr & made to her
the reuerence. 'Frend,' said Ermyne, 'ye be wel-
come to me; but now telle me of your tydinges.' and
he recounted to her al that was of it. 'Frende,' said
the mayde, 'have ye seen that folke that commeth to
soccoour my fader?' 'By my feyth, ye,' said the mes-
sanger, 'they are the moost appert in armes, and the
fayrest men that euer entred in to this land, and the
best arayed & purveyed of all things.' 'Now telle us,'
said the damoyselle, 'of what land they are, & who is
the chief Captayn & lord of them.' 'By my feyth, my
damoyselle, they be of Poytou, and lede them two
yong & fayre damoysseaulx brethren, that be named
Lusynen, of whiche theldest is called Vryan, & that
36 youngest Guyon, which have not yet berde fuH grown.'
'Frende,' said the damoyselle, 'be they so faire damoyseaux as ye say?' 'By my feyth,' said the messager: 'the eldest is moche grete & hye, strong & of faire behauynge & maynten, but his vysage is short & large & in trauerse / and hath one eye redde, & that other ey is perske & blew, and the eerys grete to merucyH. and wete it wel that of membres & of body he is the fayrest knight that cuer I sawe / and the yongest is not of so 8 hye stature / but he is moche fayre & wel shapen of membres, & hath a face to deuyse, except that one of his eyen is hyer sette than the other is. and seye alle that see them, that they be worthy & noble to conquire 12 & subdue vnder them aH the world.' 'Frende,' sayd Ermyne, 'shaH ye goo agayn soone toward them.' And he answerd, 'my damoyselle, assoone as I may haue tyme & place comuenable & propyce for to yssue & go out of 16 the Cite, and that I see I may goodly escape fro the paynemys.' 'Frend,' said the damoyselle, 'ye shal on my behalue salue the yong brothern, and ye shaH de-lyuere to the eldest this ouche, & telle hym bere it 20 for the loue of me / and this ryng of gold with this dyamond ye shal take to ye lesse, and ye shaH salwe hym moche on my byhalf.' And he answereyd, 'my damoyselle, I shaH doo it righte gladly.' He thanne 24 departed fro her & came to the king that had doon writ his ansuere in a lettre, and made grete foysone of men of armes to arme them redly, and them made he to yssue couerly out of the cyte and entred in to the 28 oost / and or the oost were armed they adommaged them sore. And þen yssue paynemys out of theire tente without eny aray, that rechaced them vnto the barrers, where they had grete scarmusshyng & fyers, 32 and many men slayn & wounded of bothe partes. Aþ hoost arrayed where the scarmusshing was / and ther whyles was the said messanger putte out of the Cite att another gate, a bow shotte fro al the oost, so that 36
he was nat perceyued. And thenne he rode lastly toward hys vnle. For moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym al the tydyinges. 4 And dured not long the scarmoushe, For the sawdan made it to be ceased, For he sawe wel that he shuld more lese there than wyne. Now I shal leue to speke of this forsaid matere / and shaH retourne to speke of Vryan & of his brother.

In this parte telleth this story that Uryan dide hys trompettes to be blowen at the spring of the day, & roos & commanded every man to appareH hym, 12 and put saddelles on theire horses / and soone after the two bretheren herd theire masse, & semblably dyde the other prynees & barons / and after the masse Vryan made to crye, that who wold drynk ones shuld drynk, 16 and that ootis shuld be gyuen to the horses, and that at the other tyme that the trompette shuld be blowen, everyman shuld be redy that was of the 1Vanwarde. And they beying in such estate, the Captayns nevew 20 arryued there, and deluyered the lettre to hys vnle, that the kyng had taken to hym / and the Captayn toke & kyssed it fourthwith, opened it, and sawe by the tenor of it how the kyng commanded hym to putte 24 bothe the fortresse and the toune at the wyH & commandeiment of the two bretheren. Also that he shuld commande to al good tounes, Castels, Fortresses, portes, hauens, & passages that they shuld gyue them 28 entre & soiourne, and that they shuld obey to them. And whan the Captayn sawe & vnderstode al the substance & matere of it, he shewed the lettre to Vryan, & to guyon hys brother, the whiche redde it; & whan they 32 knew the tenor of it they called to them the captayn, the maister of Rodes, & the two knightes, that had anounced to them thanenture of the siege, and redde to them the lettre on hye. ‘Thenne,’ said Uryan to the 36 Captayn, ‘we thanke moche the king of the worship
A COUNCIL OF WAR. [CH. XXI.

Urian thanks the Captain for the king's intentions,

and asks what force the Cyprians have in all their fortresses;

because he wishes to fight the Sultan, and end the war.

The Captain says that would be hard to do, because the paynmys have one hundred thousand men.

1 fol. 75.

Urian replies they have a good cause,

that victory lies not on the side of numbers,

and that Alexander fought the world with twenty thousand men.

Which speech cheered the Captain,

who promised a company of eight thousand men;

which Urian says is enough.

that he doth to vs / but as to vs, our entencyon is not to entre in to thoos tounes ne castelles, yf we may goodly passe without fourth, For we thinke to kepe the feldes, yf god wyl, & make good were ayenst the 4 sodan, but telle vs what nombre of men may yssue out of al your garnysoms the Fortresses alwayses kept / and wete it pat force is to vs to knowe it / and yf they be men of whom we dare trust and be assured / For god 8 before we tende & purpose to gyue batayle to the Sawdan, & to putte to termynacioun, & ende this warre. For thencefore are we come hither.' 'By my faith,' said the Captayn, 'that shall be hard to doo, For ye 12 paynemys are in nombre wel CML and more.' 'Care you not, therefore,' said Vryan, 'For we haue good right in our caas / they are come vpon vs without cause / and though we had goon on them vnto their 16 owne lande, we ought to doo soo, For they are enemys of god / and doubteles though they be of grete nombre to the regarde of our felawship / yet one grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge then doth 20 a sacke fuft of whette / ne victoye also lyeth not in grete multitude of peuple / but in good rule & ordynance. And wel it is trouth that Alexander, that subdued so many & dyuere landes, wold not haue with 24 hym aboue the nombre of xxth thousand fyghtyng men for one journey ayenst al the world. And thanne when the Captayne herd hym speke so valyantly, he held it to grete wele & valeur, and thoughte he was 28 wel able & worthy to conquere & subdue many landes, and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I shalh enforce your oost with foure thousand fighting men, and of two thousand brygandyners & ebroswes, & other.' 'By 32 my feyth,' said Vryan, 'that is ynoughhe / now doo that we may haue hem to half a journey nyghoure enemys,' and he ansuered there shuld be no fawte of it. And then came there the Captayns nevew, and 36
knee'd before Vryan & Guyon, and said to them in this manner: 'Noble damoiseaulx / the moost fayre mayde / & the moost noble that I knowe salneth you 4 bothe, and sendeth you of her jewels' / and themne he toke the ouche of gold that was sette with many a ryche & precyous stone / and said thus to Vryan: 'Sire, hold & receyue this ouche of Ermynes byhalf, daughter to 8 my liege lord the kyng, that requyreh & beseech you to were it on you for her sake.' Vryan toke it joyously, and made it to be attached & sette it on his cotte of armes, and said to hym: 'My frende, right

12 grete thankes & thousand mercys to the damoyselle thso moche honour sheweth to me / Wete 1 it that I shal kepe it moche dere for her sake / and gramercy to you messanger & brynger of it.' And after he pre-

16 sented and toke to Guyon the ring on the forsaid damoysellis byhalf / and that she prayed hym to bere it for the lone & sake of her / And guyon ansuered that so shuld he doo, and putte it on his fynger / and

20 thanked moche the damoyselle / and pe messanger also / and the brethren gaf moche ryche yeftis to the same messager. And soone after the trompette blew, and everyman putte hym self fourth on hys way, and

24 there myght men be seen in fayre & good ordynance.

And the Captayn sent to aH the Fortresses & toamns, and made to yssue out & assemble togidre aH the men of armes / and wel were of them aboue the nombre

28 that the Captayn had sayd to the two bretheren fyue hundred more. Vryan thenne lodged hym and hys felawship on a lytil ryuere / and on the morne erly they departed, and went fourth tyll they came a lytil

32 byfore mydday, in a fayre medowe, nygh to a grete ryuere / and there were foysone of trees / also there was a quarter of a leghes thens a grete bridge, where they muste passe / and fro that bridge vnto Famagoce were

36 but seuen leghes / and there made Vryan hys folke to

MELUSINE.
be lodged, and said he wold abyde the said Captayn and his men that he shuld bring with hym. There they laye that nyght, and abode tyll the morne noone. but alwayse some knightes were goon for their dys- porte vnto the said bridge, and aspyed there about xv men of armes that were descended therat / and had their speiris in their ystes, and the salades after the guyse that they armed them in that Countre / and of another syde they sawe come about foure houndred men of armes, that payned them self moche for to passe other for to greve them of the other side / thanne came one of our Knightes that escryed them, & demanded of them what they were / and one of them ansuerd, 'we are Cristen / and they that ye see at the other side of the watre are paynemys, that come for fourrage about the Countre / they haue mete & faught 16 with vs, and they haue slayn wel an C good men that were of our felawship.' ‘Now, fayre lordes,’ said oure knyght, ‘yf ye can hold yon, ye shall soone haue socours & ayde.’ And thenne the knight broched hys hors, 20 and waloped toward hys felawes, and recounted to them shortly all theventure. And when they vn- stode this they hastily came to the oost, and mete with xxiii crosbowes men, to whom they bade they should hyc plem toward the bridge for to help the xv men of armes that were there ayenst thenmyes. And when they vn- stode this they walked fast, & cam nigh to the bridge, and sawe thre cristen that were 28 ouerthrawn on the bridge by strokke of speerys. 'Fourth,' said then one of them, 'we tary to longe / perceyue you not how this Dogges oppressen vlaynly these valyaunt & worthy crystens?' / and anone they bended peir crosbowes, & shot all at ones / and ouer- threwe doun on the bridge fro theire horses with that first shotte xxii paynemys. Whan the mysbleuers paynemys sawe this they were sore abasshed, and 36
withdrew themself somewhat backward from the bridge. Thenne yede the cristen men, and releyned vp their felawes that were ouerthrown on the bridge / and thenne they made grete joye & toke good herte / and the 1 Crosbowe men shote so ofte & so strong, that there ne was so bold a paynem that durst putte his foot on the bridge / but made to come there their 8 archers, & thenne bygan the scarmussing strong & grete and moche mortal. but betre had be to the paynemys that they had withdrew them self apart, For the knightes came to the oost and rehearsed to 12 Uryan the tydinges therof, the whiche moch appertly armed hymself, and made hastily a thousand men of armes to take there harneys on them, & rode forth toward the bridge / and ordeyned another thousand 16 men of armes, & C crosbowe men to folowe hym, &f he nede had of them / and commanded that all the oost shuld be in ordynaunce of batayH, & betoke it to the kepyng & gouernaunce of gyon his brother, and of 20 the maister of Rodes. Uryan thanne made the standarde to passe fourth rydyng in batayH moche ordynatly / and was Vryan before, hauyng a staf on hys fyste, & held them wel togidre, and so vnyed, that 24 one marched nothing afore that other. But or they were come to the bridge there were come eight thou- sand paynemys, that moche strongly oppressed our folke, and had putte them almost fro the bridge. but 28 anoone came there Vryan, whiche alyghted / toke hys speere, & so dyde hys folke moche appertly / and made hys banere to be dysployed abrode / and were the crosbowe men on bothe the sydes of hym vpon the 32 bridge / and then they marched fourth, and bygan to oppresse and rebuke sore the paynemys, and made them to withdrawe bakkwarde. And there Vryan cryed 'Lusynen' with a hye voys & lowde, and yede 36 & marched ayenst hys enimys, hys banere euer before

and rescue some of their friends on the bridge from the pay- nims, 1 fol. 76 b. who rette to bring up their archers.

Urian hears of the skirmish,

and rides with a thousand men to the bridge,

leaving his host in charge of Guion.

Eight thousand paynemys came against him, who at first press his company,

but are at last repulsed. Urian crying 'Lusignan!' rushes with his men against the enemy,
132

THE VICTORY OF THE CHRISTIANS. [CH. XXI.

hym. 1 and his men after that assaulted the fals dogges moche asprely, Whiche of the other syde bygan to launche & to smyte. Uryan smote a paynem on brest with his speere so demesurably, that his speere 4 apered at back syde of hym. they medled them fyersly togidre. but at last the paynemys lost the bridge, and many of them fell down in to the rynere. And thenne passed the crystens the bridge lightly 8 and there bygan the baytayH moche cruel, For many were there sore hurte & slayn on both partyes. but euery the paynemys were putte abak, & lost moche of ground. Vryan made to passe the horses, for wel he 12 perceyued that his enemies wold mounte on theire horses to putte them self to flyght. Thenne came the arregarde that asprelyy passed over the bridge / and when the paynemys perceyued them they were sore 16 affrayed / and who that myght flee, fledd toward their folke that lede theyre proye, oxen, kyn & shep, swynes & othre troussage. Uryan than lepte on horsback, and made his folke to doo soo, & commanded the arror-20 garde that passed them over the bridge, that they shuld folowe hym in fayre ordynaunce of bataylle / and so they dyde / and Uryan & his folke chaced the paynemys that fledd sore chaffed & aferd, For al they 24 that were by Uryan, & they of his felawship atteyned, were putte to deth / and endured the chasse with grete oceysyon & slaghter pe space of fyue oures & more. And thenne the paynemys ouertoke theyre folke, & 28 made them to lene behynd them alle theyre proy, & came vpon a grete mountayne toward Famagoce / and per the paynemys reassembled, & putte them self in 2ordynaunce. but there came Vryan & his folke, 32 theire speris on theire fystes alowe / at that recountsryng were many one slayn & wounded sore, of one syde & of other / the paynemys susteyned the stoure strongly, For they were a grete nombre of folke. but 36

 drives them over the bridge,

presses them hard,

and gets his horses over the bridge.

His rear coming up frightens the paynims,

who flee toward their friends.

Uryan’s company chase the pagans,

kill many,

and cause them to leave their spoil.

The paynims rally with their friends upon a mountain,

1 fol. 77.

2 fol. 77 b.
Uryan assayled them vygourously / and so moche he dide there of armes that aH were abasshed, and had grete wonder of it. Then came thither the arregarde that was of a thousand men of armes, & C crosbowe men which entred, & marched sodainly vpon theyre enmyes, & faught so strongly that the paynemys were putte abacke, & lost ground. and so fyersly was shewed there the cheualry & hardynes of Cristen folke, that soone they had the vyctory, and putte theyre enmyes to flight, of whiche lay dede on the place foure thousand & more, without them that were slayn at for-sayld bridge / and the chasse endured vnto nygh the oost & siege of the paynemys. Thenne Vryan made hys folke to withdrauwe them, and ledd with them the proye that the paynemys had lefte behynde. And thus within a short while they eslongyd ferre one fro other / and our folke retourned to the bridge / and the paynemys went fourth to theire oost cryeng alarme. Wherfore evry man went to harneys, & yssued out of theire tentes / and thenne one of them recounted to the sawdane all thatuenture pat happed to them. And whan the sawdane herd of it, he wondred mochi who might have brought pat folke, that so grete harme & dommage had born vnto hym. Thanne was there grete affray in thoost, & grete noyse of trompettes. Wherof they of the Cite merueyled what thing it might be, & armed them self / and eueryone was in his garde / and there came to the gate one of the knightes that were at forsayld brydge, whiche had putte hym in auenture to passe throught aH thoost, and knewe the convoynes of one parte & of other, also the grete fayttes of armes that 32 Vryan had don / he escryed hye with a lowde voys / 'open the gate! For I bring you good tydynge.' And thenne they demanded of hym what he was / and he ansuerd, 'I am one of the knightes of the fortes of the but Urian and his guard again put them to flight, and slay another four thousand of them; after which Urian retires with the booty.

The paynims alarm the Sultan, who is surprised, and wonders who can have so defeated his men;

he sounds his trumpets, which alarm the people in Fama-gosse, and they arm themselves. 1 fol. 78.

A knight of Urian's arrives at the town, and tells them that he brings good tidings;

1 Fr. commune.
being led before the King of Cyprus.
the victory.
he recounts the victory.

The king is glad,
and sends the knight to his daughter,
who asks about the battle, and Urian.

The knight says Urian is the bravest and strongest knight he has ever seen.

blak mountayne.' And thanne they open the gate, and he entred, and they ledd hym toward the king, that soone knew hym. For other tyme he had seen hym. The knight then enclyned hym before the king, and made to hym the reverence / and the kinge receyued hym moche benygnyly / and demanded to hym som tydynges; and he rehearsed to hym worde by worde all the faytte / and how Vryan dyde, & had rescued 8 the proye / also of thanenture of the bridge, and alle other things, & how hys entencion & wylle was for to gyue bataylle to the sawdan, and to reyse the siege / & that shortly / 'By my feyth,' sayd the kyng, 'that 12 man ought me god wyH, for to rescuyse my land of the fel & cruel dogges paynemys / and for the holy feyth crysten to susteyne & enhaunse / and, certaynly, 1 I shal to morne doo fele to the sawdan hat my socour 16 & help is nygh redy to my behauf & playsire, & that I doubte hym not of nothing.' 'My frende,' said the kyng to the knyght, 'go & say these good tydynges to my doughter.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'right gladly.' 20 Then came he in to the chamber where the mayde was, and 2 moche humbly salued her, and rehersed to her all the aventure. 'How, sire knight,' said she, 'were ye at that bataylle?' 'By my feyth, damoyselle,' 24 ansuerde the kynight, 'ye.' 'And how,' sayd she, 'that knyght that hath so straunge a face, is he such a fyghter as men saye?' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, ye more than a hundred tymes / For he ne dreddeth no 28 man, al be he neuer so grete & so pusyssaunt. And wete it what that men saye to you of hym / he is one of the moost preu & hardy knyghtes that euer I sawe in my lyf.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the damoyselle, 'yf he 32 had now hyerid you for to preyse & speke wel of hym, he hath wel employed hys coste.' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, I speke neuer with hym, but yet he is betre

1 Fr. Je ferai demain sentir.
worthy than I telle you.' Then she answered to the knight, 'goodnes & bonte is betre than fayrenes & beauté.' And here believeth thy storie to speke of the mayde / and retourneth to Vryan, that abode at the bridge, and founde his oost lodged at this syde of the bridge / And also the Captayne that had brought the men of armes, that he leyed fro the garnysons & for-tresses vnto the nombre of V\(^{\text{ML}}\) men of armes, with two thousand V. C. crosbowemen / and also there were many footmen / And they were alle lodged in the medowe at the other syde of the ryuere. Where Vryan found his pauyllon dressed vp / and the other that had be at the pursyewte & chaas of the paynemys, they lodged them that nyght the best wyse they conde, & made good watche. And here resteth thy storie ther-

12 Vryan found his pauyllon dressed vp / and the other night in his tent.

16 of, and bygynneth to speke of the kyng of Cypre, that was moche joyous & glad of the socours that was come to hym / and regracyed deuoutely our lord of it / and in that party passed the nyght. But who someuer was glad that was Ermyne, For she coude not by no manere in the world haue out of her thoughte Vryan, and desired moche to see hym for the well that it was said of hym / in so moche that she said in herselv, that yf he now had the vysage more strange & more contrefaytte than he had / yet he is wel shappen for his proesse & bounte to haue the doughtir of the moost high kyng in the world to his paramour. And Ermine thoughte the damoyselle al the nyght on Vryan, For loue by hys grete power had broughte her therto. Here resteth thy storie to speke of her, & bygynneth to speke of the kyng her fader.

28 The hytstorie recounteth here, that on the morn at the spryng of the day, the kyng had hys folke a\(\text{t} \) redy, & yssued out of the Cyte with a thousand men of armes, and wel a thousand of Crosbowemen;

1 Fr. Amy, bonté vaut mieux que beauté.
and some brygandyners were embusshed at bothe thendes of the barrers, for to helpe & socoure hym yf he were to moche oppressyd by the paynemys. And wen the king entred in to thooost, & bare grete dommage to hys enimys. For he had commanded vpon peyne of deth that none shuld take eyn prysoner, but that they shuld putte all to deth / and this dide he for cause they shuld not tende to the dyspoyle & proye, 8 and that at laste he myght gader them ayen togidre for to withdrawe them without ony losse. And then the cost began to be mevyd / and who best coude of the paynemys came to the medlee. And when the king 12 perceyued that they cam with payssance, he remysed hys folke togidre, and made to withdraw them al the lytil pas, and came behynde, the sword in his fyst. And when he sawe a knight approuche, he retoured 16 & made hym to recule abacke. but yf he atteyned hym, he chastysed hym so that he no more had langyng to siew1 hym. And there the kyng dide so wel & so valyantly, that enery one sayd he was 20 moche preu & worthy of his hand / and there ne 2 was so hardy payneme that oo stroke durst abyde. Then came the Sawdan with a grete route of paynemes, armed on a grete hors, that held a dart envenymed. 24 And thanne whan he aspyed the king, that so enyyl demened his folke, he cast at hym the darte yre, & hytte hym at the synester syde, in suche wyse that he perced hym thurgh & thurghie, For hys harnies coude 28 neuer waraunt hym / And soone after the kyng felt grete anguyssh, and drew the dart out of hys syde, and supposed to haue cast it agayn to the Sawdan / but the Sawdan tourned hys hors so appertly that the dart 32 flough besyde hym, & smote a paynemie thurgh the body in suche wyse that he felt domme dede. And when the sawdan, that onermoche had aunaunched hym

---

1 Fr. synrir.
self, wende to haue retourne the kyng smote hym with his sword vpon the heed of hym, that he overthrew hym to therthe. Thenne cam the paynemes there so strong that they made the kyng & hys folke to withdrawe backe / and thenn was the sawdan redressed & remounted agayn vpon a grete hors. And thenn was pe prees grete, and the paynemes were strong / in so moche that they made the kyng & his folke to withdrawe vnto theire barrers. Thanne bygan the Cyprians, that kept the passage there, to shote & to launce on the paynemes so strong that they dyed the place with the blood of theire enemies. but so strong were the paynemys, that they gaynstode the crystyn & also the king had lost moche of hys blood, & waxed feble, and hys folke bygone to be abasshed. And how be it that the king suffred moche dolour & peyne, nevertheless he resioyshed moche hys people & encouraged them, and so moche they dide that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them / but that they lost twyes asmoche more / and was the scarmusshing moche fyers & peryllous. And thus the kyng of Cypre, by hys valyaunce & noble herte, recomforted his folke. and though he felt grete peyne & woo, he ful wel remysed hys folke into the toune. And it was grete meruayH how so grete a lord, wounded to the deth, myght sytte on horsbake / but the stroke was nopen mortaH but for the venyme, For the dart was envenyedm / and wel it appered within a lytil tyme after, For he deyde of that same stroke. but for certayn he had the herte so full of valiauynes, as the faytte shewed it, that he ne dayned not make signe of eny bewaylyng before his folke, vnto tyne that one of the barons perceuyed aH his senyster syde dyed with bloode / the whiche Baron sayd to the king: 'Sire, ye ahyde to long here / come & make your folke to withdrawe them in to the toune or it be more late,

The Sultan, advancing too near the king, is overthrown by him, but is rescued by his people, who at last drive the Cyprians back;

but these shoot so well that many paynemys are killed.

The king now begins to be faint from loss of blood.

His people are abasshed, but, encouraged by him, they fight well, and slay many more of their enemies, but these shoot so well that many paynemys are killed.

At last he conducts his folk to the town, still on horseback. Though suffering from the poisoned wound,

he makes no sign of pain, but a baron seeing the blood on his side advises him to withdraw.
For the nyght approacheth / to thende that your enmyes putte not them self thrue the medlee among vs. The kyng, whiche felt grete sorowe, ansuercd to hym thus: 'Doo therof after your wyll.' This kyngth 4 themne made a hounded men of armes, that were reffressshed, to come before the barryere, & made to bygynne aycen the scarmusshing with an C crosbowe men; and so were the paynemes sette abacke, wherof 8 the sawdan was full of grete anger, and esceryd to his folke: 'fourth lorde & barons, peyne your self to doo wel, For the toonne shalbe oures this day: hit may not escape vs.' And themne enforced aycen the 12 medlee. And there ye had see wel assaylled & ryght wel defensed, of that one part & of that other. But whan the kinge of Cypre sawe that the paynemes strengthened them soo, he toke courage grete, & ranne 16 upon them vygourously / and there he suffred so moche peyne pat all the synewes of his body were open, wherof, as some sayen, his lyf was shorted / and by that same euahissling were putte aback the paynemes, 20 & many of them wer slayn & soare wounded. The nyght themne approached, and was nygh / and grete harme & losse was there of both partes. but alwayes the paynemes withdrew them vnto theire oost, For the 24 king encouraged his folk soo that they ne doubted no stroke nomore than yf pey had be of yron or of stele. And whan the paynemes were departed, the kinge & his folke retourned in to the toonne. And whan they knewe the euyl auenture of theire king, they beganne to sorowe & to make grete dueil. And the kyng, that sawe this, sayd to them: 'My good folke, make no suche waymenting of ne sorowe, but thinke wel to defende you aycen the Sawdan / and god our sanyour shalbe at your ayde & helpe, For yf it playse hym I shalbe soo be heelid.' Thenne was the peuple peased

1 Fr. vaines.
ayen. but neucreple, the kyng that said suche wordes
for to resiowyssh eys pople, felt in hym self thai he
could not escape fro deth. And thanne he commanded
4 to his folke they shuld make good watche, and gaf
hem lene, & came to the palleys, and there alyghted
& yede in to eys chambe / And thanne came eys
doughter, that somewhat had ynderstand of eys mys-
8 anenture. but than e she perceyued that eys harneys
was aII rede with bloode, and sawe his wounde, she
feH doun in a swoone, & lay as she had be deed.
Thenne commanded the kyng that she shuld be borne
12 in to her chambe / and so it was doun. After the
Cyrurgiens came to see the kingis wounde, and was
leyed on his backe along his bead / and they told hym
that he was saaf fro pareH of deth, and that he shuld
16 not be abashed. 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I
wote wel how it is with me / the wylle of god be doo /
hit may not be kepte so secretly but that it shalbe
1knowen throughe the Cyte.' And thanne byganne pe
20 sorowe moche grete among the Cytezeysns & peple of
the Cyte, and more without comparacion than it was
byeore. But here resteth thystoruye of the kyng & of
the siefe / and shal speke of Vryan and of his brother,
24 and how they exployted afterward. /

In this parte, saith thystoruye, that on the morow
erly, that was thursday, was Vryan after eys masse
herde byfore eys tente / and there he made come,
28 one aftir other, aII the Captayns & chieftayns with
theire penons & standarts, and theire folke vnder them
al armed of aII pieces, for to behold & vysyte theire
harneys, yf eny thing wanted / as wel the straungers /
32 as eys owne folke / and beheld wel the mayntene &
contenauge of them. And after this was doo he
made them to be nombred / and they were founde by
extymacion about ix. or ten thousand fyghting men.
36 Thenne said to them Vryan: 'Lyste, aII fayre lordes,
we are here assembled for to susteyne the feyth of Jesu cryste, of the whiche he vs alle hath regeneraed and saued / as eche of vs knoweth wel ynowgh he suffred cruel deth for the lone of vs, to thende he 4 shuld bye vs ayen fro the peynes of helle. Wherfore lordis, seen & considered in our hertes that he hath doon to vs suche a grace, we ought not to reffuse the deth, or such aventure as he shal gyve vs, for to S deffende & susteyne the holy sacraments that he hath admynystred vs for the saluacon of our sowles / though that we now haue adoo with strong partye. For our enmys ben tene ayenst one to the regarde of 12 vs / but what therof we haue good rytght, For they are come to assayll vs without cause vnto our right herytage / and also we ought not to resoyngne ne dylaye therfore. For Jhesu Criste toke alone the warre 16 for our redemption, And by hys deth alle good folke that kepyn his commandements shal be saued, ye oughte themse to understand all certaynly, that alle thoo that shal dye in this quarelle, mayntenynge & 20 enhaunysynge the feyth, shal be saued, & shal haue the glorye of Paradys / And perfore, fayre lordes, I telle you in generall that I haue enteneyon, god byfore, to move presently for to approche our enmys, and to fyght 24 with them as soone as I may. Wherfore, I praye you friendely, that yf there be any man in this place that feleth not his herte ferme & stedfastly for to withstande & abyde thamentre, such as it shal playse to god to 28 send vs / that he withdrowe hym selfe apart fro other, For by one only Cowarde & feyned herte is sometyme lefte & loste al a hole werke, and wete it that, al thoo that wyl not comne with their good wyll, as wel of 32 my folke as of other,3 I shal gyue them money

3 'Wha will be a traitor-knave?
    Wha can fill a coward's grave?
    Wha sae base as be a slave?
    Let him turn and flee!' (Scots wha hae.)
ynoughhe & syluer for theyre sustenanche & fyndyng for to passe ower the see ayen. After these wordes he made hys banere to be dressed a bowe shote fro the 4 valey, vpon the mounteyne, and ordeyned hys brother Guyon for to hold & ber eit / and after he said, al on hye, in heryng of hys folke / 'Ah they that entenden, & haue denocion for to avenge the deth of Iesu 

8 criste, to thenhaunsyng of the holy feyth cristen, Also to ayde & helpe the kyng of Cypre, lete hym with-drawe hym self vnder my banere / and they that ben of contrary wyH, lete them passe ower at the ope sr yde 12 of the bridge.' Thanne whan the noble hertes hende hym saye tho wordes. they held it to grete wysedome of hym, & of grete provewe & worthynes, & went alle in a companye togider vnder his banere, wepyng for 16 Joye & for pyte of the wordes that Vryan had saied / ne none delayed ne taryed for nothing, but yede aH vnder hys banere, as said is / Thenne was moche gladde Vryan, and joyous, and anone he made his 20 trompette to be blowen vp, and all was troussed & putte them self on theire way. And thanne the 2maister of Rodes, and the Captayne of Lymasson putte them self assembled togider, and rode in fayre 

24 batayH, And said wel that ayenst Vryan and his folke no man shal endure / And thus they rode tyl they came nygh to the mountayne / and as half way to the place where the batayH had be the day before. 'By 28 my feyth, lordes,' sayd Vryan, 'there nygh that yond ryuere were good that we went to be there lodged tyl we were refreshed. And in the meane while we shal see and aduyse how we shalt for the moost surest way 32 hyndre & adommage our enmyes' / And they answered that so was good to doo. They went them self togider, to thende they were not founde abrode, & lodged them self there. Now leueth here of them thystorye / and 36 bygynneth to speke of the Sawdan. / 1 Fr. trossé.
On the Sultan's spies telling him the state of the city, and of the socour coming, and of the illness of the king, he orders an assault.

The townspeople defend themselves by shooting stones, pitch, hot oil, and overturning the enemy's scaling ladders.

The Sultan urges on the assault, and promises the first man that enters the city his weight in a liver.

They attack vigorously, and are pelted with legs of wood, burning oil, molten lead, quick lime, sulphur, and brimstone on fire, and are obliged to retire.

Thystorye sayth that the Saudan had hys espynes within the Cite, whiche assyed secretly be Convyne of them of the toune. Wherby he knew that socours & help came to the kyng / and also how 4 the kyng was sore wounded, wherof the people was gretly troubled. Thanne had the sawdan cause to do assayH the toune / and he made to blowe trompettes when he sonne was vp, and ordeyned his bataylles, and 8 his Crosbowes & paneys, and came vnto the dyches & barryers. There bygan the sarmussing outrageously fyers / they shotte with Crosbowes demesurably of one part & of other. There were many paynemes slayn, 12 For they within the toune shotte many gonnes, & cast vpon them fro the batelments of their walles grete stones, pyche & grece brennyng hoot, and renursed them fro the ladders vnto the botome of the dyches. 16 Themne came the Sawdan fourth, cryeng with a high voys, Now, lordes, defende yourself worthily, & lete vs take toune or ony socours come to our enemies, For on my god Machomete, he that first shall entre 20 the toune, I shall gyue hym hys pesaunnt or weyght of syluer in suche estate as he entre in to it.' Who themne had see them assaylle & cleme vp to the walles, and putte them self in parellous passage, he 24 shuld have be meryalled. But they that were vpon the walles within, fourth cast on them 4 grete logges of wode, brennyng oyle, lede molten / tonnes & barels full of vnquynded lyme, and vesselles full of flaxe 28 grecyd with oyle and mixtyoued with brymstone and sulfer, al ardaunt & brennyng / so that magre them they were fayn to relenquyshe the place, and to remounte at another syde of the wall: and there 32

1 Fr. parilliers. 2 Fr. gros canons et d'esprin galles. 4 Fr. pierres, pience aqus, huilles chaudes, plong fondu, poissons plains de chaulx vire, tonneaux plains destouppes engressces et ensoffrées tous ardens.
abode many paynemys al brent and sore hurt. And thanne the Sawdan made thassawte to be strengthened with new folke / but they within forth defended them 4 ful valyauntly as prea & hardly. Also they were more vygourous of herte, for that they knew their socours commyng, that was nygh. Here I shall leue of þis materere / and shal say how Vryan dide, which had 8 sent hys espynes to knowe how it was of the siege / And they reported to hym how the saudan gaaf grete & contynuuel sawtes to the Cite / and that without shortly it were socoured, they were within in grete daunger / 12 and how the kynge was syke & sore wounded. Whan vryan and Guyon vnderstode these tydynges, they were within them self wel angry and fylled with sorowe / but no grete semblaunt they made of it, to thende 16 their folke shuld not be of lesse courage therafore. /  

Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn before Famagoce.¹

² In this parte sayth thystorye, that when Vryan herde the tydynges forsaid, he made to sowne his trompettes, and made thoost to be armed, and departed it in foure bataylles; wherof the first batayll he hymself was conductour, hys brother lede the seconde, the maister of Rodes was Chieftayn of the iii⁴; And the foureth was conduyted & lede by the Captayn of Lymas. And he made to abyde in the valey al the sommage, and mad it to be kept with a hounded men of armes and fyfty cros bowemen. And after they bygane to mounte the hille, And fro thens they sawe how the paynemes assaylled moche strongly the Cite. And thenne Vryan said to his folke / 'Lorde, that folke is of grete nombre / but no doubte they be oures /

¹ Famagusta (named by Augustus after the battle of Actium, Fama Augusta), on the west coast of Cyprus, south of the ancient Salamis, the only harbour in the island.
and god before they shalbe dyscomfyt ed by vs / and that right soon. goo we thenne ayenst their e oost / and so fourth without dyelayeng to them that sawt en the Cite. I and I were with goddis grace that they 4 shall not endure long ayenst vs.' And they ansuerd, 'that good it was for to doo soo.' Thenne he wold descend e the mountayne and haue passed at back syde of the oost; but when they supposed to have passed 8 fourth, the paynemes perceyued that they were not of their folke / they cryed alarme and were sore aferd. Thanne sayd Vryan to the Captayn, that with aH his bataiH he shuld entre thooost to fight ayenst them that 12 were there. There bygan a mortal medlee, And Vryan and the other two bataylles yede further, & putte them self atwix the watche & them that assayled the Cite / and so long they sawted, that alle they that kepte theire 16 lodgis and of þeire watche were slayn and dystroyed, and incontynent aH the foure bataylles in fayre ordynauce marched fourth toward the other that strongly assayled. But one came to the sawdan, and said to 20 hym how the tentes & payyllons were take, and alle they that kepte them slayn / 'and they that have doon þat faytte, ye may see them commyng hitherward, the moost strong and felt folk that ever I sawe ne herde 24 speke of.' The sawdan thanne loked abacke, and sawe baners & standarts and hys enmyes commyng in fayre ordynauce / and so nygh togider that they semed not in nombre to be as moche by the half as they were. 28 Thenne was the Sandan abasshed and wood angry / and made to sowne hys trompette to withdrowe & assemble hys folke togider. But or they were half assembled, Vryan came first with hys batayH / and with a grete 32 courage ran vpon them moche asprely, And þer began thoecsysyon & slghter moche grete / but for certayn the gretest losse tourned on the paynemes, For 2they had no leser for to putte them self in ary of bataylle, and 36
were sore wery of thassawte / & none of them were vnder his banere whan Vryan and his folke ranne vpon them, whiche were aspre & harde and fuH wel wyst 4 the crafte of armes, wherfore many of the paynemes putte them self to flight. But the sawdan, that was ful of grete courage & of grete vasselage, realyed his folke about hym, & delyuered & gaf ryght a grete sawte to 8 our folke moche proudly. There were many men slayn & sore wounded / and made hym self to be redoubted and dradde, For he held a two handes ax / and smote with at lyfte syde and at the ryght syde that none 12 myght susteyne hys strokes that were about hym. But whan Vryan perceyued hym but so sore demened his folke, he was fuH woo, and said in hymself, ‘By my feyth, it is grete pyte & dommage that yonder Tureke 16 byleueth nat on god, For he is moche preu & valyaunt of his hand; but for the dommage that I see he doeth on my folke, I ne haue cause to forberes hym ony more / and also we be not in place where grete & many wordes 20 may be holden.’ Thenne he braundysshed hys sword and with a fyers contenaunce rane vpon the Saudan / And whan he sawe hym commyng he refused hym not, but toke his ax and wende to haue smytyn vryan withal 24 vpon the crosse of the heed / but Vryan eschiewed the stroke; the ax was pesaunt and heuy, and with that vayne stroke it scaped fro the Saudans handes. And thanne Vryan smote hym vpon the helmet a grete 28 stroke with all his might / and was the sawdan so sore charged with that stroke that he was so astonyed and amased that he neyther sawe nor herde, and lost the brydel and the steropes, and the hors bare hym where 32 he wold. And Vryan 1 pursiewed hym nygh, and yet agayn atteyned hym with his trenchaunt swerde betwix the heed & the sholders, For his helmet was aH vnlaced and his hawtepyece felt of with the forsaid stroke, 36 wherfore with his second stroke vryan made hys swerde MELUSINE.
and with a second blow wounds him so that he falls from his horse.

At length the Sultan dies from loss of blood.

Urien, Guion and their followers fight so well that in a short time they take or slay all their enemies. After the battle they lodge in the pagans' camp, where the brethren fairly divide the booty.

2 fol. 85.

The Captain of Lymas and thirty knights leave the brethren and go to the city, where they are received gladly, to entreat the sawdants flesse, in so mochi that he detrenched & cutte the two maister vayne of his nek, and feH donne fro hys hors to the erthe. And there was so grete prees of horses of one parte and of other, 4 that the stoure of batayH was there so aspre and so mortaH that hys folke might not help hym / and lost so moche of hys blood that he most there deye in grete dystres & sorowe / And soone after that the paynemes S knew that the sauden was deed they were affrayed and moche abasshed, and neuer aftir they fought with no good herte. Thanne Vryan and his brother Guyon espromued themself there, & faught so strongly, guyung 12 grete & pesaunt strokes, that it was to see. And wete it wel pat bothe Cypyrens & Poytevyns dide so valyauntly that in short space of tyme they dysstroyed theyre enmyes, whiche were aH slayn or take. And 16 thense Vryan & his folke lodged them self in the paynems lodgys / and was the sommage of the cristien sent fore / and the gardes and kepers of it, fayne & glad of the vyectory, came & brought it in to thoost and lodged 20 there / And the two brethern made the Butyn or con-queste to departe & deele so egaly after euer man had deseryd & was worthy, pat none there was but he was full of Joyce & content of it / And here resteth 24 thistorye of Vryan / and shal speke of the capytayne of Lymas,1 that soone came to Famagoce.

I n this parte telletli vs thistorye that after pe dys-comfyture of the batayH the Captayne 2 departed 28 fro the two brethern, with hym xxx knyghtes of grete afayre, and came to the Cite, where the yates were opend to hym gladly, and entred and found the folke by the stretes, of whiche some made grete feeste, for 32 pat they sawe them deluyered of thire enmyes, and blessid the heure that euer the children of Lusignuen were borne, and the heure also whan they entred the

1 Fr. Lymasson:—Limassol; on S. coast of Cyprus.
land. And some folke made grete sorowe, grete weeping, sore lawmeyntyng, and grete bewaylling, for their kyng was wounded to the deth. Wherfore he wyster not what to thinke, For he knew not yet the kyng was hurt. And so moche he expoyted that he came to the palleys, and there he alighted, where he found the peuple wel mate and he demanded of them what they ayled, and yf they wanted of eny thing. 'By my feyth,' said one of them, 'ye and that ynough; For we lese the mooste true & valyant man that euer was borne in this royalm.' 'How thanne,' said the Captayn, 'is the kyng syke?' 'Ha/a! sire,' answere to hym a knight, 'knowe you no more of it? We dide yssue yesterday, and euahysshed our ennyses / and at retourne of it the sawdan smote our king with a venymous darte, by so that no remedye nys founde therto / For we supposed euer that these two damoyseaulx haute come to our ayde & help at that day, And were it that the kingis doughtir demeneth suche heuynes & sorowe, that grete pyte it is to see, For almost two dayes are passed that she ete no manere of mete / woo & euylhap shalbe to vs yf we lese both our king & our damoyselle & lady, For yf that happed the land were in grete orphanite of bothe lord & of lady.' 'Fayre lordes,' said the Captayne, 'aH is not yet lost that lyeth in pareH. Haue lost in our lord Jhesu Criste, and he shall helpe you. I pray you lede me toward the king.' 'By my feth' / said the knight, 'that shalH soone be doo, For he lyth in the next chambr, where euery man may goo as he had no harme / He hath alredy made hys testament, & hath ordeyned & bequethed of hys owne good to his servaunts, so that euery one is content / and he is confessed & hath re- ceyued our lord, and he is admynystred of aH his rightes & sacraments.' 'By my feyth,' said the Cap-

---

1 Fr. mat. 2 Fr. fiance.
On entering, the Captain makes his reverence, and is welcomed by the King,

who asks him to bring Urian and Guion, as he desires to reward them for the help they have given him.

The Captain promises to bring them,

and the King has the great street of the city decorated.

The historye saith that so fast rode the Captayne that soone he came to the oost, and alighted at the tente of the two brethren, that moche humbly receyued hym. And themne he recounted to them how the king was sore hurt / and that affectuely he prayed them that they vouchesaf to come toward hym, so that he might thanke them of the noble socours that they had done to hym, and to make satisfaction to them of the pay-8 nemes, For I had no more payssance to gouverne my folke ne my land / I pray you that ye goo & telle them on my behalf that ye vouchesaf to come & see me or I be deed, For grete wyle I haue to make satisfaction to them to my power of the loue & curtoysye that they haue shewed to me; And also I haue grete desyre to see & speke with them, for certayn caas whiche I wyl declare vnto them. 'My lord,' said the 16 Captayne, 'gladly I shall doo your commandement.' 'Now gooth thenne,' said the kynge, ' & let hem be to morne with me by the houre of pryme.' The kynge thanne commanded that the grete strete where they shuld passe shuld be hanged richely vnto the paleys, and dyde doo make grete appareyl ayenst theire commingyng. And here resteth this history to speke of the king / and retourneth to saye of the Captayne.

1 fol. 86.

The Captain relates his news to the brethren,

and tells how the King wishes to reward them,

Urian protests

tayne, 'he is thanne in good caas / and he hath doon as a wyse man oughte to doo' / And thenne he entred in to the Chambre & enelyned hym self before the kyng that ley on his beed, and made to hym the reverence. 4 'Captayne,' said the kynge, 'ye be right welcome / and I thanke you of the good diligence that ye haue doo to haue accompanied these two noble men by whome my land is out of the subjection of the pay-

2 Fr. souloier pour argent.
ne for no syluer / but only to susteyne & enhaunse the catholique feyth. And we wol wel pat ever man knowe that we haue hauoyr & syluer ynough for to pay 4 our folke / but alway we right gladly shal goo to hym. And wete it that I purpose to goo toward the king in suche a state as I departed fro the batayl; For yf he vouchesaf I wyl receyue of hym the ordre of 8 knighthode for the valyauuice & honour that ever man sayth of hym. And ye, Captayn, ye may goo and telle hym that to morne at that houre he hath poynyte bothe my brother and I and the maister of Rodes, god 12 before, we shal be toward hym, and a houndred of our moost high barons with vs.' Thenne toke leue the Captayne and came to the Cite, where he was receyued moch honourably / and soone he came to the paleys, 16 where he fonde the kynge in also good poynte as he lefte hym. And there was his daughter Ermyne, that was ful of sorrowe for the enyl of her fader / but that notwithstanding she recomforted her self moche of 20 this that men said to her, that the two damoyseaulx shuld come there. And wete it that she moche desyred to see Uryan. And thanne the Captayne salued the kyng. 'Ye be right welcomme,' said the kynge /' what tydinges 24 bryng you of youre message / shal I not see that two gentil damoyseaulx?' 'Sire, ye,' said the Captayne / 'they and houndred more with them / and playse you to knowe that they wil haue no recompense of you / 28 For as they saye they be not sawdysours for syluer / but they name them self sawdysours of our lord Jeshu criste. And so moche, sire, hath told me Uryan / that to morne, god before, or it be fullysshe pryme, he shal 32 come toward you in suche a poynt & state as he came fro the bataylle; For he wyl receyue thordre of cheualrye and to be dowbed knight of your hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I lawde our lord Jeshu- 36 Criste, whan before my dayes be termyned, it playseth that his only de- sire is to support the Catholique faith, and that he has treasure enough; he will however go to the King to be knighted,

The Captain returns to the King, who is still alive and pleased to see him, as is his daugh- ter, when she learns that the brethren are coming to the city

The Captain delivers his message,

1 fol. 86 b.
Hermine rejoices at the news,
she kisses her father,
and retires to her room, where she weeps for his wound,
and also for the joy of being about to see the brethren.

1 fol. 87.
The King commands the inhabitants of the city to decorate their houses, and arranges for music in the streets.

Before prime (6 A.M.) the brethren on two courser arrive with many of their men, Uriam armed as he was at the battle, and Guion in a richly furred damask cloth gown.

Hym that I make & dowbe knight one so valyaunt & hye prynce / and wete it I shall therfore deye betre at ease.' And whan Ermyne herd of these tydinges she had so grete joye therfore in her herte, that she could not holde her cowntenance ne manere / but therof she made no grete semblant, but shewed to haue grete sorowe woo in her herte. She toke thanne lene of her fader / and sore weeping kyssed hym moche swetly / and she went into her chambre / and ther she bygan to bewaylle her self sore / one houre for the doulour & woe that she had for her fader / and another houre for the grete joye & desyre that she had of the sight of Vryan, whos taryeng enjoyed her moche / & moche long she was in thoughte so argued and vexed therwith al, that al that night she coude not slepe /

In this parte saith thistory, that on the morne erly 16 the king commanded al noble and vnoble shuld make theire houses to be appareyled & hanged without forth evry one after his power, for to make feste & honour at the commyng of the two brethren and of 20 theyre folke / and that at evry corner of a strete shuld be trompettes and other dynerse Instruments of musyque making grete melodie / And for certayn the peuple endenoyred them self wel / ye / more than the kyng had 24 commanded to be doo. Whate shuld I make long prologue / the two brethren within pryme came mounted moche nobly vpon two grete coursers / and Vryan was al armed, euen so as whan he came fro the batayH, 28 the swerd naked in his fyst. And Guyon, his brother, had on a gown of fyn clothe of damaske, rychely fourred / and byfore them rode thretty of the moost hye barons in noble aray / and nygh to them was the 32 maister of Rodes and the Captayn of Lymas. And after the two bretheren came & folowed nygh thre score & ten knightes and theire squyers & pages in her companye / and in fayre aray they entred in to the 36
Cyte. There had ye seen the feste begynne mochi
grete / and the trumpettes & menestrels dooyng theire
craffe / And through the stretes had ye sene folke of
4 grete honour that were moche wel and richely cloathed,
whiche cryed with a hye voys / 'ha / a welcome be ye,
prynce vyctorious, of whom we hold and are aH sus-
cited of the cruel servytyde & boundage of thenemyes
8 of our lord Jeshu Cryst.' There had ye see ladyes &
damoysselles at wyndowes in grete nombre / and thaun-
cyent gentylman & burgeys were merueylld of the
grete fyerste of the noble Vryan, that was al armed,
12 the vysage dyscouered / a grene garland on his hed,
an the sword in his fyst. And the captain bare by-
fore hym hys helmet on a tronchon of a sper. And
when they perceyued his fyers visage they said be-
16 twene them self togidre / 'that man is able and shappen
for to subdue & putte vnder hym aH the world.' 'By
my feyth,' said the other, 'he sheweth it wel, For he
is entred into this toune lyke as he had conquerd it.'
20 'In name of god,' said other / 'the rescue of the daun-
ger of whiche he hath kept vs fro is worth & ynough
for a conqueste.' 'Certaynly,' said other, 'thaugh his
brother hath not so fyers a face, yet he semeth to be
24 man of wele & of paytte.' And so talkyng of one thing
& of other they conueyed hem vnto the paleys, where
they alighted. And here resteth thystorye to speke
ony more of the peuple / and bygynneth to speke how
28 the two brethern came before the king /

Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came
before the kinge, he beying in his bed syke.

They make rever-
ence to the King,
who thanks them
for the aid they
have given him,
and said to them / that after god / they were they by whom he & al his reame was suscited fro the moost cruel passage, & more fel than any deth, For yf they had not be, the paynemys had distroyed them all / or had constrayned to be convertied to their fals lawe, which be had to vs wers & heuyer than any deth corporal. For they that to it had consented with herte, they had had for euermore dampançon eternal / 'And 8 therefore,' said the kyng, 'it is rayson that I reward ye to my power, For I have none other wyll than to endeuyr me pertro / how be it certayn that I may not acomplysshe to the regarde of the grete honoun 12 that ye have me shewed / but lowly & humbly I besche you to take in warthe my lytyl puysaunce.' 'By my feth,' said Vryan, 'of this ye ought not to doubt / For we be not come hither neyther to hawe 16 of you gold nor syluer / ne of your tounes, castels, ne landes / but only to seke honoun and for to distroye themenyves of gol, and to exalte the feth catholical / and I wil, sire, that ye knowe that we hold our peyne 20 wel employed, yf ye vouchesaf to doo vs so moche of honoun that ye wyl dowbe my brother & me knightes of your hand.' 'By my feth,' said the king, 'noble damoyseaulx, in asmoche as I am not worthy to acom- 24 plysshe your requeste, I consent to it / but first shaH the masse be said.' 'Sire,' said Vryan, 'tha me semyth wel doon.' And thanne the chapellayne 1 was soone redy. And thenne Vryan, hys brother, and all other 28 denouently herde the messe & the seruyse deuayne, And after the deuayne seruyse Vryan came tofore the king. And thenne he drew the swerde out of the shele & kneeld down byfore the kyng, where he laye, and sayd 32 to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I requyre you, for alle the salary of my seruyce that I haue doo or may doo in tyme to come, that ye vouchesaf to dowbe me knight with this swerde / and so shaH ye haue wel 36
rewarded me of aH that ye say that my brother & I haue doo for you and for your realme; For of the hand of a more valyaunt knyght and noble lord, I ne may 4 receyue the ordre of knyghthede / than of yours.' 'By my feyth,' said the kinge / 'damoyseu, ye shew me more honour than ye owe me / and ye say moche more of me than ener I desiered. but sene I considered 8 that grete honour is to me to dowbe you knight, I am agreeable therto / but after that I haue acomplysshed your requeste, ye saH coueneaunt with me yf it playse you to graunte me a yefte, the whiche shal not 12 tourne you neyther to prejudice ne dommage, but only to your ryght grete prouflyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'I am redy therto to acomplysshe your wille & playsire.' Thenne had the kyng grete joye, and 16 dressyng hym to sytte vp, and toke the swerde by the pomel that Uryan toke hym, and therwith dowbed hym knyght, sayeng, in this manere / 'In the name of god, I adoube you & admytte you into thordre of a knyght, 20 prayeng god to putte from you aH euH.' And penne gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makyng his wounde opend, and out of it ranne blood throug the wraper, wherof Vryan was sory & woo, and so were aH other 24 that sawe hym; but thenne the kyng layed hym self ayen along in his bed sodaynly, and said he felt none euH. And after he commanded two knyghtes that they shuld fetche lys doughter / and they dide soo / 28 and brought her at mandement of her fader. And whan the kyng sawe her, he said thus / 'My doughter thank & remercye these noble men of thyde and so- coure that they hane doon to me & to you bothe, and 32 also to aH our realme, For yf had not be the grace of god & theire strengthe & puysaunce we had be aH dystroyed, or at lest exilled out of our land / or ellis vs to haue be convertid to theire fals lawe that had be 36 wers and more importable to vs than to suffre deth

Before knighting him the King gets Urian to promise to give him a gift, the giving of which will not impover-ish Urian;

then in the name of God, the King dubs Urian knight.

The exertion opens the King's wound,

then he sends for Hermine;

but he is eased by laying down;
which she does much humbly,

and is overcome by her feelings of sorrow for her father and love for Urian.

Urian seeing her emotion, raises her, and bows to her.

The people say that were Urian to marry their lady, they would have no fear for the pagans.

1 fol. 80 b.

The King tells of his approaching end,

and seeing his daughter’s grief tries to console her.

by promising to provide for her.

temporally’ / And thenne she kneelde before the two bretheren & salved them, & thanked moche humbly
And wete it that she was in suche manere commounyd as she had be ranysthed, and wyst not how to hold 4 contenauce, what for the woo & sorowe that she had at her herte of thanguysshe that her fader felt / as of the thoughtes that she toke for Uryan, in so moche that she was as a personne that is awaked newly fro S her drome. But thenne vryan, that wel perceyued that she had her spiryte troubled, toke her vp ryght swetely, and enclyned hymself before her, makyng moche reverence eche of them to other / and where as they 12 of the countre said / ‘yf this noble man had take oure damoyssel to his lady wel it shuld come to passe, For thenwe we shuld drede neyther payneme nor man that wold doo vs hurt.’ And thenne called the kyng 16 his doghtir, and to her said thus: ‘My doyghtir, sette you here 1 by me, For I deme that ye shall not long hold me company.’ And she thanne wepyng satte herself by hym. And thanne aH they that were there 20 bygan to sorowe & wepe for the pyte they had of the kyng; And also of the sorow that they sawe the virgyn, his dother, made so pitously.

Thystory telleth vs that the kyng was sorowfulH 24 when he sawe lys doyghter take suche heynes, and thenne he said amyably: ‘My doyghtir, leta be your heynes and your grete doulour that ye take, I pray you, For that thing that may not be amended it 28 is folye to make the other grete sorowe / notwithstanding it is raison naturel that everyche creature be sorrowful for his frend & nevyghoyn when that he leith hym. but, and it playse god, I shal puruee for you 32 so that ye shaol holde you content, or I departe fro this mortal world, and so shaol all the baronye of my realme’ / And thenne bygan the mayde to wepe more
Haboundauntly than she did to fore, And also all the barons demened suche woo & sorowe that it was pyteous for to see / but vryan and guyon were sorrowfullest 4 of all. and the kyng perceyuyng their doulour, he said to them: 'Fayre daughter, and you, vryan and guyon, this sorowe is not necessary to you, For therewith I preuaylle not nor you neyther in no manere / but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I you commande that ye cesse of this heuynes ye love me, and to haue me yet with you here alyue a lytil space of tyme.' And theyn ecl they bygan to cesse theyre 12 doulour in their best manere, for the wordes that the kyng to them said. And ouer that spake the kyng hym self dressyng to vryan, and thus said: 'Sire knyght, thankyng be to you, ye cōuenaunted with me 16 a yepte whiche I purpose now to take / and pat shall neyther touche your cheuaunce nor honour.' 'By 1 my feyth,' sayd Vryan, 'demande what it playse you, For yf it be of that thing wherof I haue power I shal fully\(^1\) 20 it voluntarily.' 'Gramercy sire,' sayd the kyng, 'wete it that by this that I shal demande of you, shal retourn to you a noble thing. Now, sire knyght, I pray you that it may playse you to take my daughter in mary-

24 age, and all my .royalme with her / And fro this tyme fourth I gyne you fuıt possessyon thereof to doo ther-
with your proprefyt' / And wel veray & trouth it is that he had doo brought there the crowne / and with these 28 wordes he took it, & said / 'hold, Vryan, ne refusse not my requeste that I desire of you.' Thenne were the barons of the land so joyous that teeris fel fro their eyns for pyte & joye that they had therof. And 32 when Vryan vnderstode these wordes, he called a lytel remembrance / and wete it wel he was sorrowfult & dolaunt thereof. For he was wyllyng to seke the straunge countrees of the world and poursiwe for honour. But 36 alwayes for as moche as he was accorded with the kyng
of the yefte, he wold not gaynsay ye / And whan the barons sawe hym so pensfuil they cryed al with a hye voyce ryght pyteously / 'ha / a then, noble man, wilt thou refus the kinges requeste?' 'By my feyth, lordes & barons,' said Uryan, 'no more shal I doo.' Thenne enclayed Uryan before the kyng wher he laye, and take the crowne and putte it in Ermyynes lap, sayeng / 'Damoyselle, it is yowr, and sith it hath fortuned thus 8 with me, I shal you helpe to kepe it my lyf naturel, yf it playse god ayenst al them that wold vsurpe it or putte it in subjection.' Thenne was the kynges joyful and glad, & so were al the barons. And after he dide 12 make come the archebysshop of the Cite that asyr'd then toigidre. But Ermyne said she wold see first the termyncion of her faders syknes or she shuld procide ony ferther. Thanne said Vryan, 'damoyselle, 16 sith that it playseth you to doo so I am agreeable therto.' Thenne was the kyng woofull & dolauft, and said: 'Fayre doughter Ermyne, ye shew wel but lytel ye love me, whan that thynge which I desyre moost to see afore 20 myn ende ye ne wyl acomplysshe. Now wel I see that ye desyre my deth.' When pe mayde vnderstode hym she was ryght dolauft & sorowful / and wepyng kneeld before the kyng, hir fader, and said in this 24 manere: 'My right redoubted lord & fader / there nys thing in the world that I shuld refusse you vnto myn owne deth / commande you me your playssire.' 'Ye say now,' said the king, 'as a true doughtir ought to 28 say, that is wylling for to kepe her fader from wrathe & fyre. I now thanne commande you that ye leue your sorrow, and lete this halle to be dressid and with ryche clothes hanged, and make the masse to be said / 32 and aftir the deyne seruise do make the tables to be coverd, and after dyner make here byfor me the feste as that I were now on yere feet; For wete it wyl / that shal helpe & conforte me wel.' And thenne they all 36
endevoyred them self to fulfyth this that he commanded. Thenne was the masse sayd, and sate them self at dyner / & Ermyne was sette at a table that was layed byfore her faders bedd / and Vryan with her, And Guyon servyd Ermyne of mete. Thanne had the king grete joye, but he made betre semblaut than his herte was of power, For certayn what chere that he made he felt grete Peyne & grete doloure, For the venym that was within the wounde caused grete putrefyeng & rotyng of his fleshe / but for to rejoye the baronnye he made no semblaut of no sorowe / and after dyner bygane the feest, and lasted til nyght came. The king thanne calld to hym vryan, and saide, 'Fayre sone, I avyl ye Avedde my doughter to raorne, and I wyl deliyuer unto you the Crowne and Cepstre of this urian that he wislieth him to realme, For avete it I may not long be alyue. Wherfore I wil that alle the barons of pis land make theire homage to you byfore my deth.' 'Sire,' said vryan, 'sith that playseth you / your wylle & myne be one' / And there was Ermyne present pat refussed not to fulfylle her faders wyth.

Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre.

On the morn next, about the houre of tierce, was the spouse appareyled & rychely arayed, and the chappeH nobly hanged with riche cloth of gold, And the Archebysshop of Famagoce espoused them there. And after came Vryan before the kyng that toke the Crowne, and ther withaH crowned vryan, that moche of thankes rendred to the kyng therfore. Thenne called the king to hym aH the barons of pe lande / and commanded them to make their hommage to kyng Vryan, his son / and they voluntarily dide soo. And the masse than bygane, and after it was doo they satte After mass the company dine, which pleases the King, though he is in great pain from his wound, 1 fol. 91. The feast over, the King tells Urian that he wishes him to marry Hermine the next day, and to have the Barons make homage to him.

In the morning the marriage takes place, 2 fol. 91 b. Urian is crowned, and the Barons of the land render homage to him.
A great feast is given, after which the espoused retire, Urian and the Barons from Poitou visit the King, who welcomes them, The King tells his daughter that he will die more easily, having married her to a valiant prince, Mass is said, at dyner / and syn bygan the feste right grete, and endured tyl even / and after souper begane ayen the feste / and whan tyme was the spouse was lede to bed / and anone aftir Vryan layed hym self by her / and the bysshop came & halowed the bed / And so thence all departed / some went to bed / and some returned ayen for to daunce. And Vryan laye with his wyf, and her acqueytantwee teke curtoysly & wel / And on the morne they came ayen tofore the kynge / the masse anoone was bygone. And thither was the queene conuayed & lede of guyon her brother, and by one of the moost highe barons of the lande.

In this parte sheweth vs thisorye, that on ye next morne after about the houre of pryme, kyng vryan accompanyed with the barounye of poytou and of the royalme of Cipre, came byfore the king and enclyned 16 hym self & salued hym right humbly. 'Fayre sone, ye be welcome,' said the kyng. 'I am ful joyous of your commyng / make my daughter to come, so sho we here the denyse seruyse.' Thenne came his doughtir 20 Ermyne, wel nobly accompanyed of many ladyes & damoyselles / and she come byfore her fader & salued hym full humbly. Thenne said he to her: 'My wel beloued daughter, ye be welcome. I am right wel joyous when god hath don to me suche a grace, that I have purueyed you of so hye a prynce & worthy knyght to your lord / and wete it that therfore I sho dy more easely sith that you and al my land is out of the 28 daunger of the paynemes, and no doubt ye haue to your protection and wraunt a prynce worthy & valyant, that right wel sho kepe and defende you ayenst al your euyl willers, and in especial anenst thinfideles & 32 enemys of Iesuercist.' And with that worde the Chape- layn bygan the masse. And whan the masse was celebrated & said, the kyng callid to hym Vryan & Ermyne, & to them said in this manere: 'My fayre 36
children, ryght affetтуously I pray you that ye thinke to loue, kepe, and honoure wel eche other / and to hold & bere good feyth one to other, For nomore I may hold you companye. Now thanne I recommande you to the blysful kyng of heuen, prayeng hym denotely that he gyue you peas & loue togidre, and honourable lyf & long.’ And with these or semblable wordes he shette hys eyen and departed fro this mortal lyf so swetly that they supposed that he had be aslepe / But whan they were certayn of his deth the douluer & sorowe bygan to be grete. Thenne was Ermynë had 12 in to her Chambre, For she demened such sorowe that grete pite it was to see. The kyng thenne was buryed and his obsequyes doon ryally, and in the moost honourable guyse that coude be deuyised after the vse and 16 custome of the land. And wete it that al the peple was sorowful & dolauent; but they took comfort of this, that they had founde & recouered a lord ful of so grete prowesse as Vryan was / and lytel & lytil cessed 20 the lawmenting & heuynes. And soone after yede Vryan thrugh al his realme to see and visite the places & fortres / and betoke one part of his folke to Guyon, his brother / and another part to the maister of Rodes, 24 and made them to be shipped on the see, for to wete & knowe, for to here & knowe yf they shuld here ony tydynges that paynemes were on the see for to lande in his lande. ‘For wete it wel,’ said the king vryan, 28 ‘that we purpose ne think not to abyde 1vnto tyme they fetche vs, For we shaH & god before goo & vsyte them within short tyme, after that we haue overseen the rule & gouernaunce of our land.’ And forasmoch 32 departed Guyon & the maister of Rodes, & rowed on the see with thre thousand fyghting men. And here leneth thistorye of them / and bygynneth to shewe how Vryan & Ermynë went and vysited their land.
Thystory saith that king Vryan, with Ermyne his wyf, yede & rysited their land al about, and full gladly & honourably they were recyued in euery burghe, toune, & Cite where they passed / and grete 4 yeftes were presented to them / And wete it that Vryan purueyed ryght wel to aH hys fortes, of aH suche things that were necessary for the werre yf some thing befeH in tyme to come. And for trouth euery S one was meruaylled of his heyght, of his fyersnes, & of his puyssaunce & strengthe of body. And wel said the men of the Countree, that ferdful & daungerous thing was to cause his wrath & anger. And thus went 12 Vrian fro place to place thurgh heis royalme. And suche officers that made rayson & kept justice, he lefte them in their offices stil / but to al oper that operwyse dide than right requyreth, he purueyed of remede by 16 good & meure deliberacion of his counseHH. And com-manded euery one to make raison & Justice in al tymes, as wel to the leste as to the moost, without to bere eny fanour to ony of eyther partye / and yf they contrary 20 did to this hys wyH, he shuld punyssh them so cruelly that al other shuld take ensample therby. And thene he, his lady, & his folke returned to Famagoce / and the quene was grete with child / And now resteth 24 thystorye of them, and speketh of Guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that rowed on the see by the Costes of Surye, of Damask, of Baruth, of Tupple, & of Danette, for to knowe yf paynemes were on the see 28 or not.

Now saith thistorye, that so long sailled & rowed the Crystens on the see, that they sawe aproch as of a leghe nygh to them a certayn quantite of shippes, 32 but by liklyhode they might not be grete nombre. Thenne they sent a Galleye toward our folke that al redy were in ordynaunce to wete what they were / but the galey came so nygh that the cristens, our folke, 36

1 fol. 93.
Guion and the Master of Rhodes searching on the sea for the pagans,
toke it / and by them knew and ynderstode almaner of
tydynges. Oure folke thanne halid vp saylles hastily,
and saylled anone toward their ennys. And whan the
4 paynemes perceyued them they were moch abasshed,
and grety aferd, and wend wel to have withdrawn them
self in to the hauen of Baruth / but our galeyes ad-
ounced them, and ran vpon them by al sydes. There
8 was grete occyson / and shortly to say the paynemes
were dyscomfyted, and their nauye take / and aH were
cast onerbord or slayn. And the nauye was ful of
grete goodes. And after our barons putte them self in
12 the see ayen for to haue retourned in to Cypre: but
by fortune & strengthe of wyndes they were cast to
Cruly1 in Armanye. And whan the king of Armanye,
that was brother vnto the kinge of Cipre, knewe theire
16 commyng, he sent anone for to wete what folke they
were / And the master of Rodes said to them that
came to wete what they wer: 'Telle the kyng that it
is the brother of Vryan of Lusynen, kyng of Cypre,
20 that hath trauersed the see for to wete & knowe yf
paynemes were on it in armes, for to haue come vpon
the Cypryens for cause of the sandan that hath be
dycomfyted & slayn, and al his folke at the grete batayH
24 of Famagoce.' 'How,' said they of Armanye, 'is there
ony other kyng in Cypre than our kingis brother?' 'By
my feyth,' said the maister of Rodes, 'ye / For the
king 2 was wounded with a dart enuyned by the
28 sawdans hand in so morta wyse that he is deed
thereof, and he beying yet alyne, he gaf his doughtir in
maryage to Vrian of Lusynen, that slew the sawdan
& dyscomfyted aH his folk.' Whan they thanne ynder-
32 stode hym, they yede & denounced it to theire kyng,
which was sorowfulH of the deth of his brother. but
not withstandyng, he came toward the see syde with
a grete company, and entred in to the vesseH where

1 Truli in Fr. ed. Afterwards spelt Cruli.

MELUSINE.
Guyon and the maister of Rodes were in. And whan guyon wyst of his commyng he went ayenst hym, and eche to ocher made grete reuerence. Thenne said the king to the grete Pryour of Rodes, ‘Maister, sethen this yong damoyseu is brother vnto my nyghtis lord, I were vncurteys whan he is arryued in my land, yf I receyued hym not honourably as to hym apparteyneth. And of this I pray you, that ye vouchesaf to pray hym on my behalf, that it playse hym to come in to our paleys, and we shal doo to hym the best chere that we can.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the grete Pryour / ‘that shal I doo gladly.’ Thanne he spak therof to guyon, whiche anserd to hym right gladly, ‘I wold doo a greter thinge yf it lay in my power for the kyngis sake. For good feyth & rayson requyreth it.’ And thenne they went togider / and guyon lede with hym a fayre companye of knyghtes / but alwayes they had theire cotes of stele on þem, and were in right good aray, as folke vsed to the faytte of armes. And her speke I no more of þem, And shal speke of Florye the 20 doughter of the kyng of Armanye. /

This historye sayth that the kyng of Armanye had a daughter, and none other children / but here. And the quene, his wyf, was deed / and wete it pat this kyng and the kyng of Cypre had to theire spouses the two susters that were doughters to the kyng of Malegres / and eche of them gate a doughtir on their wyues / of the whiche Ermyne that Vryan spoused was one / and that other was the puccelle florye of whome I haue bygonne to traytte. She was that tyme at Cruly ryght glad & joyoun of the commyng of the strangers. She appareyled and arayed her self moche richely, and so dide all her damoyselles. Soone after came the kyngue her fader / guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire felawship, and entred in to the toune, and came to the palleys in to the grete halle.
And then he Florye, that moche desyred their com-
myng, came there, and humbled herself moche ayenst
her fader / and the kyng said to her, 'Cherysshhe and
4 doth feste to this noble men, & receyue them honour-
ably / and in especiall the brother of my nyghtis lord &
husband.' And whan the mayde vnderstode that, she
was full glad & joyous. She thenne came to guyon / 
8 toke hym by the hand swetly, & sayd: 'Sire damoy-
seau, ye be right welcome in to my faders royalm.'
'Damoyselle,' sayd Guyon, 'gramercy to you.' There /
bygan thenne the feest right grete & fayre / and wel
12 they were festyed, & servyed with dyuers meetes & 
wynes / and betwix guyon & Florye were many honeste
& graciously talkyng. and wete it for certayn if guyon
had had leyser, he had dyscouered his thoughte to
16 her. but while they were in that grete solace & joye, a
galeyre arryued to the port that came fro Rodes / and
they that were within were receyued honourably of
them of the toune / and joyful & right glad they were
20 whan they knew that their maister was there. Wher-
fore one of them said to the peuple there, 'Sires,
vouchesauf to lede one of vs there the lordes befor,
to aduertyse them of paynemes that ben vpon the see
24 in grete nombre.' Thanne was a knight brought there
the maister of Rodes was / and said to hym, that
paynemes with grete nauye were passed byfore the yle
of Rodes / and had taken the wind & waye toward
28 Cypre / and how men said that the Calyphe of Bandas
with all hys puyssaunce & power was there. Whan
the maister of Rodes vnderstode these tydynge, he
went & told Guyon of it. Wherfore, guyon seeung
32 hym self as constrayned, humbly said to the pucelle,
'Damoyselle, right hertily I besech you that ye
vouchesaf, sethen I moste departe your presens, to call
me ofte in your remembrance / For as to my part,
36 your vassaH & servaunt shal I euere be vnder the

She takes Guion by the hand, and welcomes him to the land.

A fair feast is served,

and Guion and Flory have much gracious speech together.

News comes from Rhodes

that the pagans are at sea,

with a great navy sailing towards Cyprus.

Guion, on learning this, bids Flory farewell,
The sudden parting makes her sad.

Guion sets sail, watched by Flory from a high tower.

The Caliph of Bandas and the King of Brandymount

resolve to avenge the slaughter of the Sultan.

Thinking there was no King in Cyprus, they sail there,

but are seen, and Urian is warned, and prepares to receive them.

standart of your government.' Florye thanne knowyng for certayn his soudayn departyng, her herte was fylded with dueyl & sorowe / how wel she kept contenbance in the best manere that she coude / and louyngly beheld guyon, whiche toke his leue of her fader, that conneyed hym to the see side, and grete peple with hym. There thenne entred guyon in to his ship, and commanded the sailles shuld be had vp to the wynde, 8 that was good & propyce to them. And wete that Florye was mounted vp vnto the vppermost wyndowe of an hye tour, and neuer departed thens tyl she lost the sight of guyons vessel, prayeng god to presere 12 hym from al daunger. /

Thystorye recounteth & saith here that the Caliphe of Bandas, and the kinge of Brandymount in tharse, that was uncle to the saudan of Damaske, herde 16 tydynges how the sawdan was slayn, and al his folke putte to grete dyscomfytur in the yle of Cypre. Wherefore they beyng fuH sory therof assembled anone their power / and purposyng to auenge his deth entred theire 20 shippes, and toke their way toward Cypre / and they supposyng the Cypryens had be without king, hyed them fast thitherward in suche manere that they shuld not be perceyued where as they shuld arryue. but pey 24 of Rodes perceyued them, and made knowleche perof vnto kyang Vryan, that alredy had assembled his peple, and putte them in array for to receyue the batayH. and morouer had made good ordonnaunce and gardes for the 28 portes, that assoone as they shuld perceyue them commyng to the hauen, that they shuld make a token of fyre, wherby the Countrey might perceyue the commyng of their ennyses, and euery man to be redy in armes 32 thitherward / and so was the kingis proclamation vpon deth. And wete it that the king kept the feldes in the myddes of the portes of his royalmefor to be the sooner at the porte where the sarrasyns shuld 36
arryue to take their landing / And the king made so grete monstre & semblanct that he gaf his peple so grete courage, that with hym & his enterpryse they 4 durst wel fight with the Caliphe, and with his puys-
saussence. It happned so, by the grace of god, that the see was enragid throug the stormes and horryble tempeste, that the sarrasyns were al dysmayed & 8 abasshed / and the tempeste casted them in suche wyse here & there, that within short tyme they ne wyst where eyghte of their galeyes were become. And on the morowe about the houre of pryme, thayer was al 12 clere, and the wynd cessed, and the sonne shone fayre & clere / thenne the grete shippes of the paynemes held them togidre, & toke theire way vnto the port of Lymasson. And of them I leue to speke / and shal 16 shew you of the vii vessels that were sparpyllled by the tempeste, and what way they held / and in thoo vessels was a thartyllery of the paynemes, as gonnes, bowes, arowes / ladders / paneys, & such habylements 20 of werre 1 as they had / and so it fortuned that guyon and the maister of Rodes with theire puyssaunce re-
countred them, and perceyued eche other. but whan our peple knewe that they were sarrasyns / and the 24 sarrasyns knew that they were crysten peuple / they bygane eche of them to lye and bord e other with shotte of gonnes & crosbowes / and whan they were chayned togidre they threw darts as thikk as hayle 28 stones / and the batayH was so grete, hard, & stronge / but guyon, the maister of Rodes, & theire puyssaunce assaylled so manfully the paynemes that they knew not to what part they shuld tourne them to defende, 32 For our peuple that were in the galeyes faught so mightly that the paynemes were as dycomfyted. There might men here them crye on theire goddes / nat that withstanding they were dyscomfyte & slayne. And 36 thanne whan theire admyraH, that was maister of the

1 st. xxiv. ]

THE STORM AT SEA.

A storm causes great damage to the Saracen fleet;

but on the mor-
row they sail
to the port of
Lymasson.

Eight galleys full
of stores, belong-
ing to the Sar-
cens, sparpyllled
by the tempest,

1 fol. 95 b.

were met by the
Master of
Rhodes,

who attacked
them, and fought
so well as to
defeat the pagan
sailors.
The admiral seeing he is defeated,

leaves the fleet in a boat accompanied with eight persons.

The Christians enter the enemy’s vessels, and throw overboard or take prisoners the Saracens.

The spoils are divided.

Guion sending his share to Flory.

1 fol. 96.

and to her father the King of Armenia.

The King welcomes Guion’s knight, who conveys the present, and Flory is very joyful, for she loves Guion much.

The King of Armenia learns from his Saracen prisoners that their comrades have gone to Cyprus.

artylery, sawe the dycomfiture tourned vpon them / he made to be haued a lytel galyote out of the grete galeye with viii hores / and so entred he and eyghte personnes with hym of the secretest / and toke thanen-4 ture of the wynd / & rowed so mightily that our people meruaylled hereof / but they made neuer semblance to pursiew them / but entred into the paynemes vessels, & bygan to cast alle ouerbord. but they toke to the 8 nombre of ij C sarasyss praysoners / wherof guyon gaf oo honderd to the maister of Rodes to make them cristen, and also two galeyss / and guyon toke the other honderd sarasyss and two of the moost richest 12 vessels that they had wonne, and toke it to a knyght of Rodes / and thus said to hym, ‘Conduyte me this two galeyss, and pis honderd sarasyss to Cruly, and recommand me to the kynge & his doughtir / and on 16 my byhalve presente to the pucelle Florye this two vessels as they are garnysshed / and to the kyng the honderd sarasyss.’ Wherof the knyght toke the charge & departed, & hasted hym tyl he came to the 20 Cite of Cruly / and dide his message as he was youen in commandement / and recounted to them the grete dycomfiture and the valyuant conduyte of guyon.

‘By my feyth,’ said the kyng, ‘ye be welcome, and 24 thanking be to that noble damoyseyn’ / And the pucelle was so joyous of these nouelles that she had neuer in her nature lyf so grete joye. For knowe ye wel she loued so entierly guyon pat aH her joye was of hym. 28 The king thanne & his doughtir yaf to the knight a riche jewel, wherof he thanked hem, and toke leue of them, & retourned hastily to Rodes. And anone, after his departing, the kyng of Armenye questyoned with 32 the paynemes where the armee of the Calyphe was / and they said in Cipre to reuenge the deth of the sawdan of Damaske that the Cipryens had slayn in batayH. ‘Par ma foy,’ sayd the kyng, ‘as for you, ye 36
hane faylled of your enterprysé / And thenne he commanded that they shulde be fetyrd with yrons, and to be putte in to parfounde pryson / and the two vessels to be descharged, and all the goodes that were in to be borne into the Castel. It is now tyme that I spoke of guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that had questioned the saraysns wher the Calyphe purposed to land / and they said in Cypre. Guyon thenne by thanys and CounseyH of his barons for cause they had many vessels & lytel nombre of people / commanded that al tharteyrly that they had wonne shuld be putte into theire shippes / and also al other thinges that were of nede to them / and the remanaunt & the vessels also / he gaf to the maister of Rodes that sent them to Rodes. And whan this was don they saylled, & hasted them toward Cypre. And here leueth thistory to spek of them / and retourneth to speke of the galyote where theadmyral was in, where it became or toke porte. /.

Thistory sayth that the kynge brandymount & the Calyphe of Bandas were sorowfull for their losse & grete dommage / and so longe rowed theadmyral on the see that he perceyued the port of Lymasson, & sawe grete nauye before the toune. And whan he came somewhat nygh he herd shotte of gonnes & sowne of trompettes, and soone after he knew that it was the Calyphe of Bandas and his armee, & the puyssaunce of kyng brandymount of tharse, that assaylled them of the toune for to take it. But there was the Captayne of the place & his peple wel paneysed, that valyauntly defended the porte in so moche that the saraysns gat there nought / but lost many of their men, and wysshed ofte aftir theire galeyes with theire gonnes & artillery that were sprad on the see by the tempeste / they wyst not where. Thenne came to them theadmyral that thus said on hye: 'By my feyth, Calyphe, woo

2 Fr. Tarche. 3 Fr. n. p]atout bons pavars.
The admiral announces to the Caliph the defeat and loss of his vessels.

He is grieved, and says that Fortune sleeps for them, but favours the Christians.

The admiral advises the Caliph not to show his grief for the reverse, else his army will lose courage;

and that he should withdraw to the port of St. Andrew, where it will be easier to land.

The Caliph gives up the attack, and sets sail for St. Andrew, followed by a rampin from Lymasson, sent to learn the movements of the Saracens.

may be to you, For your nanye that I conduyted is lost & take, For the Cristen recounted vs vpon the see, and haue dyscomfyted vs / and none is seaped but only we that are here / and at oo word al is lost / for to hold 4 you long compte therof that shuld preeayll you nought.' Thenne when the Calyphe vnderstode hym he was sorrow-
fulH & dolaunt. 'By my feyth,' said he / 'lordis, here ben heuy tydinges. For wel I see that Fortune slepeth 8 as to our help / and so hath he doo long / but fauour-
able & moche propice it is as now to crysten peple, For wel it appereth presently by vs / and so dide but of 1late by our Cousyn the saundan, the which & al hys 12 people also haue be slayn or dyscomfyt in the same yle of Cypre.' Thenne said the admiral to hym: 'Sire, yf ye announce or shew semblauce of abasshement by-
fore your folke that shal cause them to be half dyscom-
fyte / and ouermore knowe ye to this that I perceyue of them of this porte & toune, that they be not shappen to lete you arryue & entre theire land without sore fyghting and grete sawtes gnyung. For they shew not 20 to be aferd of your puysaunce. thefore I wold adnyse & counseyH you, that we shalH withdraw vs into the the se, & lete coule them self / and about the spryng of the day we shalbe at a lytel porte that not ferre is 24 hens called the port of saynt Andrew / and there with-
out ony defense or gaynsayeng we may take land.' 

And this they dide. And when the Captayn of Lymas-
son sawe hys ennuyes departe, he made a rampyn or 28 smal galeye to follow them of ferre, but it coude not be perceyued of them / and aspyed how at euen they anered aboute a myle nygh to saynt Andrews porte. Thanne retournd the rampyn hastily toward Lymas-
son / and to the captayne recounted al that he had seen / Thenne made the captayn fyre to be putte high vpon the garde for manere of token / and when they of the nerest garde or watching place sawe the token of 36
fyre / soone after fyre was made fro garde to garde, that knowleche was therof throug aH the royalmes. Thenne every man, what on foot & on horsbake, drew 4 them self to the place where kyng Vryan was, that al redy had sent hys espyes to knowe wher the paynemes shuld land, and manded to every captayne they shuld kepe & defend wel theire fortresses / 'For,' said he, 8 'yf it playse god none of them shal not repasse the see. And here resteth the 1'hystorye to speke of kyng Vryan / and bygynneth to speke of the Caliphe. /

In this partye sheweth thisstorye / that the sarasyns were entred in to the see / as soone as pey apperceyued the day spryng, they deceueryd, & toke vp theire ancre, and came al in oo flotte to the porte, & there landed. And wete it wel, that they of thabbey 16 of saynt andrew perceyued them wel, the whiche immediatly made knowleche to Lymasson / and the Captayne of pe place gat unto the kyng & knowlech therof / the which had grete joye therof / and fourthwith 20 bygan to apparye hym to go to batayH. And the Calyphe, hys enemy, made to be putte a land his artillery out of the shippes / and dide make hys lodgis therby, as it were half a leghe fro the port, vpon a 24 grete ryuere at a cornere of a lytcl wode, to refresshe hym & his peple also; and lefte four thousand men within the shippes, for theire sauegarde / and in the meane saison guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire 28 people arryued to Lymasson / where men said to them how the sarasyns had landed / and how theire nauye was a leghe fro saynt Andrewes porte. 'By my feyth,' sayd Guyon, 'we shal thanne goo & vysyte them / For 32 who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of them shuld never retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy' / and in these wordes sayeng, they putte them in to the see, & went lightly saylyng, that they came so nygh 36 the panemes that they saved the porte of saynt Andrew,
THE CALIPH'S FLEET CAPTURED. [CH. XXIV.

and the grete nombre of shippes that were there. They putte themself in aray and in good ordynance / and this done, they ran vpone their enemies as thondre & tempeste, smyttyng vpone the shippes of the sarasyns by force of shotte so horribly, that ye bestade were the sarasyns, that weel happy was he that myght reconere the land. And by that meane were the shippes take / and at the sarasyns that were take s were putte to deth. Thanme guyon sent to the abbey foysen of them that he had wonne of the sarasyns / and brought to Lynamon with them as many galeyes & shippes as there were laden with the goodes of the sarasyns, except suche as they bren. And pe other that escaped, came to thousand of theire lord, cryng with a hye voys alarisme / and recounted & said how the Cristen had by force & strengthe discomfited them. Then was the oost gretyly meyld, & came to the port who best coude, and fonde many of their people ded, and som were hyd in the busses. And than the Calyphe perceyued & sawe this grete dommage, he was moche doalaunt. 'By machomete,' said he to kyng Brandymount, 'these Cristen that are come hither fro Fraunce, ben ouermoche hardy & appert men in armes, and ye they soijourne longe here it shall be to our grete dommage' / 'By machomet,' said the kyng Brandymount, 'I shal neuer departe fro this lande vnto tyme I be al dyscomfyted, or bat I haue put them to flyght, & brought to an euyl ende.' 'No more shal I doo,' answerd 28 Caliph. Themne pey recovered there six of their galeyes, & eschiewed hem fro the fyre, and lefte in it good wardes for to kepe them; and after they retournd to theire peple. And here esseth thystorye of them / 32 and retourneth to speke of Vryan / Now sheweth thistorye how the kyng Vryan was lodged in a fayre medow vpon a ryuere, in that self place where the fourragers of the sawdan were 36
dyscomfyted at the brydge, as before is said. And had sent his espyes to haue knowleage where his enemyes had take theyre lodgys / And them came the maister of Rodes, whiche alighted byfore the kinges paulyllon, whom he made reverence moche honourably. And the king, that was moche joyous of his commyng, receyued hym benyngly, and demanded of hym how 8 guyon his brother dyde. ‘By my feyth, sire,’ said the maister of Rodes, ‘wel / as the moost assurest man that euere I knew. Sire, he recommandeth hym to you as affectually as he may.’ ‘Nowe telle me,’ said the king, 12 ‘how ye haue doo syn that ye departed from vs?’ And the maister recounted hym fro brauncche to brauncche of all thauentures that had happed to them. ‘By my feyth,’ said the kyng, ‘ye haue worthyly vyaged; I 16 thanke & lawde my Creatour therof / and as for my vnkle, ye kynge of Armanye, I am moche glad that ye lefte hym in good prosperyte. but we most haue aduys of our Counseyll, to see how we may dystroye 20 the Sarasyns / and as touching me & my peuple, I am rely to departe for to approuche to them, For to long theye haue soiourned in our land without to haue assayed vs. goo thanne toward my brother, and telle hym that 24 I departe for to goo ayenst the paynemes.’ The maister thanne toke leue of king Vryan, and hastily retournd to Lymasson / and immediatly the king & his peuple marched fourth, tyl they came & lodged them a legehe 28 nygh to the Calyphes oost, vnknowyng the paynemes of it. And the maister of Rodes came to guyon, and told hym how the kyng was departed for to recountre & fyght with the sarasyns ; wherfore guyon commanded 32 his trompettes to blow, and departed fro Lymasson in fayre aray; & came vnto a ryuere, and lodged hym therby, vpon the which ryuere were the paynemes lodged, & no distance or space was betwene them 36 & their enemyes, but a 2 high mountayne. And now

Urian sends spyes to find his enemiees' camp.

1 fol. 98 b.

The Master of Rhodes visits the King, and tells him of Guion's bravery, and brings Guion's regards;

and also tells of their adventures.

Urian says he may have the advice of his council how best to overcome the Saracens,

and sends back the Master to Guion.

King Urian marches his people within a league of the Saracen host.

The master of Rhodes gives Guion the King's message, and then Guion also marches his men near the Saracens.

3 fol. 99.
resteth this storye of hym, and retourneth to speke of Vryan his brother.

Thystorye sayth that kyng Vryan desired mochi to knowe where the sarasyns were lodged / also to haue true knowlege of theire conuynye; wherfore he called to hym a knyght, that knew wel al the Countrey, and said to hym: 'putte on your harneys, and take the surest hors that ye haue, and come alone here before 8 my pauyllon: and telle nobody of it / & ye shal come with me there as I shal lede you' / and amone the knight dide his commandement / and wel horsed & armed retourned to hym byfore his tente, wher he 12 fonde king vryan redy on horsbak, the which said to some of his barons, 'Sires, meue not your self fro this place tyl ye haue tydinges of me / but yf I cam not hither ayen / loke ye doo that I shal lete you wete by 16 this knyght.' And they ansuerd that so shuld they doo / 'but take good hede,' sayd they agayn, 'where ye goo' / 'be not in doubte thersore,' said vryan to them / And thenne they departed; and Vryan said to 20 the knight, 'conduyte me now the surest waye that ye can, tyl that I may see the porte where the sarasyns landed.' And the knyght lede hym vnto the hylle ryght high, & said: 'Sire, yonder is the porte that ye 24 desire to see.' 'And how,' said the kyng; 'it hath be said to me that theire nauye was al brent, and yet I see yonder some grete vessels?' Fro whens myght they be come now?' / and thenne behild the king / at the 28 synester syde in to the foums1 of the valey, and sawe his brothers oost, that was lodged vpon the ryuere / and at the ryght syde of the hille he sawe be Caliphes oost, that were in grete nombre. 'By my feyth,' said 32 the kyng, 'yonder is grete multitude of peple payneme / them I knowe wel ynothcul; but pey 2 of this other syde I knowe not what they be. abyde me

1 Fr. font.
here, and I shal goo wete what folke they be, yf I may. The kyng thanne rode tyl he came nygh his bropers oost, and founde a knight on his way, which he
drew well; and anon called hym by his name, and
demanded of hym yf his brother guyon was there /.
When the knight vnderstode hys wordes, he beheld
& knew hym, and soone kneeled before hym, say-
ing in this manere: ‘My liege & souerayn lord, your
brother guyon is yonder with al hys peuple, and the
maister of Rodes also.’ Thenne commanded hym the
kyng that he shuld goo to Guyon hys brother, and
telle hym that he shuld come & speke with hym
upon the said mountayne. And the knight went &
told these tydinges to guyon; wherfor he, and the
maister of Rodes with hym, mounted on horsbak / toke
the way to the mountaynewark, wher as Vryan retourned
to his knyght, whome he said: ‘Freind, wel it is with
vs, For that is my brother guyon which is lodged
yonder.’ Thenne came per guyon & the maister of
Rodes where the two bretheren made moche, ech of
yer. The kinge after shewed to them thoost of their enemyes / and whan they sawe it / they said / ‘we
wyst not them so nygh to vs.’ ‘Now,’ said vryan,
‘they may not escape vs, yf it be not by the meanes of
yonder galeyes,’ wherof guyon was abashed / ‘For,’
said he / ‘these deuels haue brought moo vessels, For
within these foure dayes last passed we toke & brent
al theyre nauye.’ ‘Thenue,’ said the maister of Rodes,
‘I suppose wel what that is / happily some of them
were not fonde, which haue eschewed that few shippes
fro the fyre.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the kyng, ‘thus it
may wel be / but syrto 1\ We most puruey of gardes,
For therby shuld movse escape the chief lorde of
their oost, that happily might adommage vs in time
to come.’ ‘How, sire,’ said the maister of Rodes, ‘it
semeth that ye haue dycomfted them al redy, and

and so rides to it.
On the way he meets a knight he knowa well.

The knight
kneels to him, and tells him to whom the host
belongs.

King Urian sends
for Guion,
who, accom-
panied with the
Master of Rho-
des, comes to the
King.

Urian says that
now the Saracens
cannot escape, ex-
cept by the ves-
sels, Guion is abashed
at the Saracens
having vessels, as he believed he
had burnt or
captured them
all, but the
Master says,
these are some
saved from the
fire.

1 fol. 100.
The King orders
guards to be
ready to prevent
any one embark-
ing,
that it ne resteth more but to kepe the Calyphe and brandymount, that they scape not at pat porte. ‘Certaynly,’ answerd the kyng, ‘yt they be nomore than I see, we nede not so grete peple as god hap leued vs.’ The kinge thenne commanded his knight, pat he shulde goo to hys oost and make them to be putte in aray, and that he shuld conduyte them vnto pe foot of the saide mountayne. The knight departed, & dide as it 8 was yonen to hym in commandement / and al thooest obeyed hym, and came in fayre aray & good onlyonnaunce vnto the hille. Also guyon went and made hys peple to be armed, and brought þem at the other 12 kyng commanded the maister of Rodes, that he with aH hys peuple shuld entre in to þe see / and 16 that they shuld trauserse, rowyng nygh the porte, to thende yt the sarasyns shuld putte & withdraw them self into their shippes, that they might not escape / ‘And I goo,’ sayd vryan, ‘putte my peple in aray, forto 20 gyue batayH to these paynemes.’

The kyng thenne came to his oost, and made his archers & crosbowe men to marche & goo fourth; and after folowed the wynes. & the arryergarde came 24 after in fayre ordonnaunce / and assoone as þe sarasyns perceived them, they bygan alarme, and euery payneme armed hym self / but or they were aH armed, Vryan sent vpon them a thousandþ good men of armes wel 28 horsed, that moche adommaged them, for they fonde them vnpurneyed & out of aray. But notwithstanding, they assembled them in batayH & aray. Thannne bygan the stoure fyers & cruel. For there had ye seen arowes 32 flees as thykk as motes in the sonne / and after Vryan and his auantgarde assembled to his enemys; and so manfull they fought, that they made the sarasyns to withdraw bakward. For vryan made there so grete 36
faytes of armes, and gaf so pesaunt & horryble strokes both to the lyft & right syde, that al them that he recounted he smote & threw down fro their horses to
4 the erthe, in so mochi that his enemyes fled before hym as the partrych doth before the sperhehanke. And whanne the Calyphe of Bandas perceyued hym, he shewed hym to kyng Brandymount, sayeng, 'fy we be
8 abasshed and yl besta(f of this man only, al the other shal preyse & doubt vs nought' / and sayeng these wordes, he brochd his hors with hys sporys that blood ran out of bothe sydes / And know it wel, that this
12 Caliphe was one of the moost fyters & strengest man that was that tyme alyue / he casted hys targe behynd his bakk / toke hys swerd, & rane vpon vryan, the whiche he recounted / and by grete yre gaf hym so
16 menuyllable a stroke vpon that one syde of hys helmet, that hys swerd redounded vpon hys hors nek by suche myght that nygli he cutte his throtte of. Thanne came kyng Brandymount vpon vryan, the
20 which, seeynge his hors almost deed, stood vpon hys feet, & let go hys swerd fro his hand, and embrased his enemy; and by the strengthe of his two armes, pulled hym from his hors down to therthe. There was
24 the prees grete, both of Sarayns that wold rescue theyre lord / and of cypryens also, that wold haue holpen vryan their kyng, to bryng hys enterpysye at afect. The batayH was there mortaH fyers & doubtous
28 for bothe partyes. but vryan drew a short knyff out of the shethe that hanged at his lyft syde, and thristed it vnder the gorgeret thrugh brandymontis nek, and thus he slewgh hym. Thanne stod vryan vpon his feet
32 ayen, and cryed with a high voys 'Lusynen, Lusynen' / and the Poytenyns that herd that, putte them self in prees by suche vertu, gvyeng so grete strokes that the sarrasyns that were about vryan lost & voyded the
36 place. Thenne was kyng vryan remounted vpon kyng

The Caliph, a strong man with sword and shield, runs upon Urian, and gives him a heavy blow, nearly killing his horse;

King Brandymount rushes on him also,

Urian dismounts, and pulls the Saracen King from his horse.

The fighting becomes fierce at this point;

but Urian stabes his foe in the neck, and so slays him;

and his companions put to flight the Saracens,
then Urian pursues the Caliph.

Guion on his side falls upon the Saracens,
and seeing his forces hemmed in, the Caliph with eleven men flies in a boat to his vessels,
weighs their anchors, and puts to sea.

The Saracens seeing Brandimont dead, and the Caliph fled,
lose heart, and try to escape;
but they are all slain,
and all their riches captured.

The Caliph swears he may yet live to avenge himself on the Cyprians;
brandymontis hors, and pursiewed the Caliphe of Bandas / and thus bygan ayen the batayH to be reforched, in so moche that grete occysyon was don on eyther partye. And in that meane season came guyon 4 with his peuple, and courageously rane vpon yeire enemies. And whan the Caliphe saw hym be surprysed on eche syde by his mortal enemies / he with xi departed in the secretest manere that he coude out 8 of the batayH, and fled toward the see / where the admyrall of Damask was, whiche made them to entre into a lytel galyote, in whiche he escaped, as byfore is said / and soone aftir he made the nauye, that he saued 12 fro brennyng, to take vp their aneres, & entred in the see. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of the batayH. /

In this partye sheweth thystorye, & sayth put whan 16 the sarasyns knew the deth of theyre kynge brandymont1 / and how the Caliphe on whos proves & strengthe was al theire hope & comfort 2 was thus departed and fled, they were aH abasshed, and bygan 20 strongly to breke their aray and to voyJe the place, puttyng themself to flight.3 What shuld I make you long compt / the paynemes were putt aH to deth, what in batayH, what fleyng as drowned in the see. 24 And after the chas, retourned kyng vryan and hys barons to the paynemys lodgis, where they found in their tentes & puyllons grete riches. And here thistorye cesseneth of kyng vryan / and I shal shew vnto you 28 how the caliphe of Bandas dyde, the which swore by his machomet & his goddes, that ye he myght ever come to saunet in damask ayen, yet shuld he doo grete hynderaunce & enuye to the Cypiyens. But as he was 32 rowyng in the see / and supposed to hane escaped al

1 Fr. Brandimont de Tarse.

3 xviii. viid. is noted in margin of MS. If it is price of copying up to this point, it would be about the rate of 1d. a page.
parels / the maister of Rodes that kept the see and wayted after hym, as abone is sayd, perceyued the sarasyns flote pat wold haue returned to Damask / by-
gan to lye by them and sayd to his peuple in this manere: 'Fayre Iordes and knyghtes of Ieshu Criste, our desyre and wysshynge is brought to effect, for know-
lege we haue ynownge that the valyant & redoubted 8 kyng vryan hath obtayned the vyctory vpon his ene-
myes & oures / yf we be now men of faytte & valyant, none of them shal neuer see Damaske.' Who thanne
had seen the Cristen putte them self in array, and theire 12 meruayllable shortyng with gonnes & arowes vpon the sarasyns, he shuld haue be meruayllled / and syn oure folke cheyned with them & casted darts & stones with suche strengthe & might, that wonder it was to see.
16 The sarasyns defendid hem self 1 manfully / but at last they were dyscomfyte. And the admyral that sawe the grete myschief pat feH on them hallid vp saylles / rowed in hys galyote with eyght hores and so he
20 escaped. And the maister of Rodes and hys peple toke the galeyes of theire eneemyes and all slew or casted ouer bord / and brought them ayen to saynt andrews porte. Thanne the maister of Rodes acom-
payed with C knyghtes, bretheren of his religyon, went toward kyng vryan & guyon his brother, and recounted to them all their good fortune. but sory was the king that the Caliphe and the admyral were so escaped.
28 kyng Vryan thenne departed & dalt emong his peuple al the proye of his eneemyes that he had wonne / sauf he reteyned for hym the artylery & some panyllons & tentes, and gaf them lene to retourne in to theire 32 Countrees. These thinges thus don, kyng vryan in grete tryumph & honoure as vyctorious prynce, re-
tourned to his cyte of Fanagoce, acompayned of Guyon his brother, of the maister of Rodes, and of al the 36 barons, wher the quene Emuyne receyued them right

MELUSINE.
Urian's wife Hermine, being with child, he prepares to give a feast, but a fair son is born three days before the feast is ready.

He is named Henry.

honourably, thankyng god of the noble vyctorye that they obteyned vpon his enemyes. /

Now sayth this storye, that Ermyne was grete with child & nygh her terme / and that vryan made a feest to be cryed & proclaimed; For he wold in tyme of peas & rest haue festyed his barons of poytou and al other prynces estrangers & other his subiects. Eyght dayes tofore the feste, begane grete multitude of people to come to the Cite, wherof the kyng was joyful, and made cryees vpon payne of deth that none shuld make derrer the vytyalles. And trouth it was that thre dayes tofore the feste the queene Ermyne was delyuered of a fayre son. Thenne bygan the feste to wex grete / and the child baptised and named Henry, bycause of hys auncestrie hight Henry. And so encreased the feest in ryches & in yeftes. And there were some of the barons of poytou that toke theire leue of the king's of his brother, and of the queene, for to departe, whom the kyng yaf grete yeftes of riches. And they were in nombre six knightes and 20 peire companye, which putte them in to the see. Now wyl I cesse of them that are departed to the see / & shal shewe of the feste that was ryght noble and sump-tuous, but soone it was turned to sorowe, bycause of the tydinges of the kingis deth of Armenye that came to the Court. /

Thystorye sheweth aH thus, when the feest was at best, there came xxii knightes of the moost noblest barons of the royalme of armanye, al clothed in black / and it shewed wel by theire contenaunce that they were sorowful in herte. And when they cam tofore the kyng they dye theire obeyssaunce ryght nobly / and the kyng receyued them with grete honour / and they said to him: 'Sire, the kyng of armenye, your uncle, is passed out of this world, on whos sowle god

2 Fr. xvi.
haue mercy / and hath lefte to vs a ryght fayre pucelle 
begeten of his body by lawfull maryage / and she is 
one hys heyre. Now knowe ye thenne, noble kynge, 
4 that in hys playn lyf he dide doo make this lettre, and 
commanded vs to directe it to your noble grace / pray-
eng the same that the tenour of ye lettre ye vouchesaf 
tacomplysshe.' 'By my feith, fayre lorde,' said Vryan /
8 'yf it be of the thing that I may goodly doo, I shal 
fulfyth his wyf lyghtly gladly.' Thenne toke Vryan 
the lettre & reed it, of the whiche the tenour was this :
'Ryght dere lord and right wel beloued nevew, I re-
12 commande me to you as ferfourth as I may / prayeng 
you right hertyly to haue me to my ryght dere & be-
loved? nyghte your wyf to be recommanded. And 
where by these my lettres I make to you the first re-
16 queste that enuer I demanded of you / also consideryng 
that it shall be the last / For certaynly at the makyng 
of thees my present lettres, I felt myself in such paynt 
that in me was none hope of cooaulescence nor of lyf. 
20 I hertyly beseech you that ye haue it not in refus nor 
in dysdayne. It is so thanne that none heyre I ne 
haue of my body, sauf only a doughter, the which 
your brother guyon sawe but of late / when he was 
24 with me. Wherfore I pray you that ye vouchsauf to 
entrette your said brother in manere that it playse hym, 
to take the ceter of my dignite ryal and my doughter 
to hys lady, and thus to crowne hym self king of 
28 armanye. And though she be not worthy to haue 
hym to her lord, yet is she come of royal blydd. con-
sideryng thanne her consanguiinite haue pite on her / 
and yf that mouyth not you to compassyon / yet re-
32 membre that ye be champyon of Crist, exalting his 
feyth. My realme is now cristen, and hath be long 
soo / Woe were to me / yf for wantyng of a preu & 
valyant man it shuld retourne in to the paynemes 
36 handes. Wherfore, noble kyng, haue regarde to this 
and that his 
heir is a fair 
maidenn.

They bring 
Urian a letter 
from the de-
ceased king,

1 fol. 103.
paying respects 
to Urian and his 
wife,

and intimating 
his near end.

The king tells of 
his daughter, 
whom Guion had 
seen, 
and begs Urian 
to entreat his 
brother to marry 
the heiress of 
Armenia, and to 
be king of the 
country;

as the land re-
quires a valiant 
man to protect 
it from the 
Saracens.
that saysed is,' &c. Whan vryan understode the tenour of pe lettre he was moche dolaunt of the kingis deth / & monyd by compassion & pyte, ansuer to the 1 Armanyens, sayeng in this manere: 'Lordes & barons, I shall 4 not sayH you at your nede, For yf my brother wyl not accorde therto, yet shal I endeuoyre my selfe to gyue you helpe, ayde, comfort, & counsel, as ferre as my power shal reche.' Thanne called he to hym guyon, 8 hys broper, that thanne knew the kingis deth, wherof he was sorrowful / and vryan to hym sayd the worde that here folowen: 'Guyon, receyne this yeftte, For I make you heyre of armeyne and possessour of the moost 12 fayrest pucelle that is in aH the land / that is my Cousyn florye, daughter to the kyng of Armanye, which by the wyH of god is passed out of this world / and I pray you that ye dayne to take this yeftte, For it oughte 16 not to be refussed.' 'By my feyth, fayr brother and my lord,' said guyon, 'I thanke you moche therof, and hym also that is causer of hit, on whos soyle god haue mercy.' Thenne were the knyghtes of armanye joyfuH 20 & glad. And as soone as guyon had consentid therto, they kneeled byfore hym & kyssed hys handes, after the custome of theire land / And thanne bygan ayen the feest greter than it was afore. And in that meane 24 saison the king! dide doo make hys nauye rely, that was in to the porte of Lymasson, and in the vessels he made to be putte grete rychedes / and guyon hys brother, accompanied with the maister of Rodes, & with 28 many barons of poytou and of Cypre, toke hys lene, & entred in to the see & sayld so longe that they arrayued in Armenye, 2 where they were receyued honourably. 3

2 Fr. Et iunt allirent, tant de jour comme de nuit, qu'ils appercevaient et visent le ballet du Crub, qui est la maistresse ville du royaume d'Armanie.

3 There is an omission here; the French version opens a new chapter, entitled Comment Guyon espensa la pucelle Florie et fut rey d'Armanie, as follows:—Adonc luyng des
There was guyon wedded with Florye / and after the
feste aH the barons of the land came to Cruly & made
theyre homage to guyon, whiche crowned himself
king & regned honourably. And after these things
doone the maister of Rodes & the barons of Poytou toke
theire leue of guyon, whiche yaf to them grete yeftes
of ryches, & they entred in to theire shippes and rowed
8 tyl they 1eam at Rodes, where as the said maister
festyled worshipfully the estrangeres, and so dide al the
knightes bretheren of hys relygyon. And at thende
of viii dayes the barons of Poytou entred agayn in to
12 the see, and in short tyme they arryued in Cipre, And
recounted to Vryan al the trough of the fayt, and how
his brother guyon was honourably receyued in arma-
nye / and how he had wedded Florye, and was crowned
16 kyng of the land & loued of al the peple there,
wherof moche thankes rendred guyon to god. With/in
few dayes after many of the knightes of poytou toke
theire leue, and to them yaf vryan grete yeftes of
20 ryches / and sent word* by them in wrytyng to his
fader & moder of al thestate & prosperous fortune of
hym & of hys brother. And thus departed the barons
& entred in to their shippes, whiche they fonde wel
24 purveyued of al that was necessary to them, and toke
theire way toward Rochelle in poytou.

Now sayth thystoraye, that the barons of poytou
sailed so long* that they perceyued & sawe
28 Rochelle, where they arryued with grete joye / and

barons d'Armanie parla mont haut addressant sa parole à
Guion, et dist : Sire, nous vous avons esté querir pour estre
nostre seigneur et nostre roy; si est bon que nous vous deliv-
rons tout ce que nous vous devons bailleler. Et voyez ce ma-
dameiselle qui est toute preste de aecomplir tout ce que nous
vous avons promis et au roy Urion votre frère. Par fo, dist
Guion, ce ne demourera mie à faire pour moy; et continues
then as above.

This begins a new chapter in the French version, enti-
titled, Comment les messagers apportèrent les lettres à Rai-
mondin et à Melusine de ses deux enfans qui estoient voiz.
and three days after ride to Lusignan,

where Raymond-din and Melusine receive them with great joy.

They deliver the letters from Urian and Guion,

which please their parents.

This year Melusine builds the Church of our Lady and many other abbey,

1 fol. 194 b.

and Odo marries the daughter of the Earl of March.

Anthony and Regnald, hearing of the brothers' success,

desire to follow their example;

so they ask permission to go out into the world to earn the order of knighthood.

there they refreshed them self the space of thre dayes, and after mounted on their horses & rode toward Lusynen, where they founde Raymondyn and Melusyne and there other children with *pem*, whiche receyued 4 them with grete joy. And *pem* they delyuered to them the lettres of kynges Vryan & guyon theire sones.

And when they herde & vnderstode the tenour of them they thanked god of the good auenture that he of 8 his grace had yomen to theire two sones / and yaf grete jewelles & ryche yeftes to the barons that brought tydyngis of *pem*. And that same yere melusyne fownded the churche of our lady in Lusynen & manie other 12 abbeyes in *pem* 1 lande, and endowed them with grete pos sessyons. And thenne was the trayttee of maryage made betwix Odon her songe and the Erle of marchis doughtir, And was the feest grete & noble holden in 16 a medowe nygh to the Castel of Lusynen. /

Thystorye sheweth here, that Anthony & Regnald were right glad when they vnderstode the ty dinges of the fortune & noble faytes of armes of theire 20 two bretheren / and that in so short space of tyme they had sore adommaged the enemies of god, and said one to other, 'My ryght dere brother, it is now tyme that we goo seke auenture throughe the world, For here to 24 dwel ony lenger we may not acquyre nor gete honoure, as our bretheren Vryan & guyon haue don.' Wherfore they come to theyre fader & moder, and to them said humbly in this manere, 'My lord and you my 28 lady, yf ye vouchsaft it were tyme that we went through the world at our auenture, for to gete & acquere thordre of knyghthode as our bretheren vryan & guyne haue don / how wel we be nat worthy to receyue 32 it so nobly nor in so noble a place as they haue doo / but yf it playseth god our entencion is to endenoyre vs pertie.' Thenne answerd to them Melusyne theire moder, 'Fayre sones, yf that playseth wel your fader, 36
I me consent to your requeste.' 'By my feyth, lady,' said Raymondlyn, 'doo your wyf therof, For what someuer ye wyll I me consent thereto.' 'Sire,' said Melusyne, 'it semeth to me good that from hence fourth they begynn to take on them som vyage for to knowe the world & the straunge marches / also to be renownned & knownen / and to knowe & discerne good from euyl.'

Thenne the two bretheren kneeled before theire fader & moder, & thanked them moch humbly of the honour that they promysed them to doo. And here ceaseth this story to speke of them / and speketh of another matere.

In this partye sayth this storye, that in the marches of Allemayne, betwene Lorayne & Ardane, was a noble Countrey, the which was somtyme called the Erledome of Lucembourgh, and now it is named a duchye. In that same Countree was some tyme a lord erle of the land, whiche after his decesse lefte a fayre daughter his heyre / she was clepyd Crystyne, and her fader was named Asselyn. Alle the barons of the land made theire homage to her as to the rightful heyre of the lande. On that tyme was in Anssay a kynge whos wyf was deed in her child bed at the birthe of a daughter, which the fader made to be baptised & named Melidee. Whan this kynge thanne herde how the Erle of Lucembourgh was passed out of this world, and that none heyre he had but a daughter, which was the fayrest damoyseH of all the land / he sent in ambaxade to her the moost noble & secretest men of hys CounseyH, to speke & treate the marryage of hym with her. But the pucelle Crystyne wold noen con-

1 614. 105.

At the time when the ruler of Luxembourg was a maiden named Christine, the wife of the King of Anssay died.

He wished to marry again, and made proposals to Christine, but was rejected.

In revenge he swore he would have her by force, and challenged her and her land.

Their parents consent.

sent therto / wherfore he wexed sorowful in herte / and sware god that outhire by force or by her wyf he shuld haue her, whatsoever it might fall therof. Thenne made he his mandement, & challenged the mayde & alle her lande. Whan thanne the barons & noble men of
the lande & all the commynalte wyse it / they said & swere that syn theyre lady wold not haue hym to her lord / they shulde shewe to hym that he dide wrong to the pucelle and to them also. And immediatly they garnysshed thereire Cites, tounes, & Fortresses. And the moost part of the barons drew themselve to the toun & Castel of Lucembourgh with Cristyne, their ownne propre lady. What shuld I make you long comte / they were nat that tyme strong ne puysaunt ynough for to fyght ayenst the kyng of Anssay. For he came vpon them with a grete puysaunce of peple & moche adom-maged the lande / and came al breynynge vnto byfore the toun & Fortresse of Lucembourgh, where he layed siege. And of fayttes their was grete scarmysshing & grete losse of one parte and of oper. It happen thanne that one of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche had been with Vryan at the conquest of the royauome of Cipre, and euer was with hym at all the batyayhes that he had ayenst the paynemes / the whiche was come ayen with the barons of Poytou vnto Lusynen / and had receyued of Melusyne riche jewels & grete yeftes of ryches / and sawe there Regnald & Anthony, that were moche strong & grete, & of fyers & hardy contenance / and wel it semed to hym that they shuld ensiew the condicions & maneres of their bretheren, and their high prowes & enterpryse / drew the noble men of the land apart, and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, ye may conceyue and wel perceyue that we may not hold longe ayenst the puysaunce of the same kinge. Wherfore yf it seme you good, myn oppynyon were to see a remedy be had to it rather to fore than to late, For good it is to shette the stable or euer the horses be lost.' And they answerd, 'that is trouth / but we may not perceyue no remedy therto without the grace of god be.' 'For southe,' said the forsaid baron, 'Without godis grace none may but
lytel or nought doo, but with that it is good to take ayde who that may have it. 'Certaynly,' said the barons, 'ye say right wel; ye ye thanne know some gentylman worthy to have our lady, and valyaunt & preu to defende vs ayenst our enemies, lete vs knowe hym. For ye be thereto hold & bounden bycause of your alygeaunce.' This gentylman thanne reheered to them fro hed to hed how vryan & hys brother departed fro Lusynen, and aH thanuente of theire vyage / also the state of theire fader and moder / and ouermore, he shewed to them the fayre maynten & countenaunce of Anthony & Regnald / and that he knew for certayn / that who so went to seke & requyre the socours and helpe of the two brother, they shuld come with grete puysaunce, when they shuld haue knowledge of the faytte. 'By my feyth,' said the noblemen, 'ye say full wel.' Thennve they fourthwith went tofore Crystyne their lady, and worde to worde they recounted to her aH this affayre. And she said to them, 'Fayre lorde, I recommande you my land and yours / doo what semeth you best to thonour of me and of you, for the commyn wele of aH my land. For wete it for certayn, that for to dey or to be dysheryted, I shal not haue the kyng of Anssay to my lord / how be it he is better than to me apparteyneth, but for asmoche that he wyl haue by force me & my land.' And they answere(d) to her / 'doubte you not therof, my lady, For yf it playse god, he shal not haue so moche of puysance as long as we shaH move strete our owne bodye.' 'Lordes,' said she, 'gramercy.' And thennve they departed thens. Thennve said one of the barons to the forsaid gentylman in this manere: 'ye that haue putte vs in this quarelle / say now what best is for to doo.' 'By my feyth,' said he, 'yf it lyke you good, ye shaH deluyere me two of you to goo with me to Lusynen, to wete yf we can fynde there 2ony thing' to vs proufytabel.'

1 fol. 106. and tells them of the bravery of Urian and Guion, and of their two brothers, Anthony and Regnald, who would come to their assistance with great forces if they were asked.

The barons have an audience with Christine. She puts herself in their hands and once more refuses the King of Anssay.

They pledge themselves to defend her.

2 fol. 106 a.
Thenne they anone chose among them, that is to wete, two of the wysest & noblest men for to goo with hym. And they departed about the first slepe, mounted vpon good & lyght horses, and yssued out of a posterne, and passed by that one side of thoost, so that they were never perceyued / and hasted them self on thiere way toward Lusynen. And here cesseth thystorye of them, and speketh of Melusyne & her children, that is to wete, 8 of Anthony and of Regnald.  

T

hystory sayth that the feste was right grete in the medowe byforsaid / and men jousted there valyantly. but aboue alle the younge squyers that 12 were there, Anthony and Regnald dyde best after the sayeng & commendacion of the ladyes and gentyl wemen that were there. And there were grete jewels gyuen. but always Melusyne thoughte to purueye to 16 thestate of her children, and made to them fayre robes & ryche raymentes, and ordeyned and purueyed of men to goo with them, and in especial wyse, and noble men to endoctrine them, & shew to tham the way of good 20 gouernance. Duryng yet the feste, came there the ambaxatours of Lucembourgh / pe whiche made theire obeyssaunce to Raymondyn & to Melusyne ryght honourably, and also to alle the companye / And joyously 24 they were receyued / & soone was there knowen the knight that had be with vryan at the Conqueste of Cypre. and he was honourably festyed, and of hym demanded Anthony, for the wele that he herde saye of 28 hym, yt it played hym to goo with hym & with hys brother Regnald in som voyage where he purposed to goo, & to thayde of god, he shuld be we rewarded. The knyght thanne demanded of Anthony: 'My lord, 32 & whither is your entencion for to goo?' And he answerd: 'At our aventure there as god shal conduyt vs, for to gete honour and cheualrye.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'I shal telle you the fayrest and the 36
moost honourable aventure that euer gentylman had that adventured hym self, and the moost honourable enterpryse.' And whan the two damoyseaulx vnderstod 4 hym, they made moche of hym, & said in this manere:

Noble man, vouchesauff to vttre to vs that noble enterpryse that ye speketh of.' 'By my feyth, lordes,' said the knight, 'in as moche that I were ryght joyous 8 you to see enhaunseed in honour, also for to susteyne ryght & reason, I shal ryght gladly shew to you aH the materre therof.

Ryght dere lordes, it is trouthli that aH thooy that 12 louve ryghtwysnes and that be wylling to gete honour / they oughte to helpe and susteyne the wydowes an orphenyns. And forasmoche, fayre lordes, it is soo that in the marche of Lorayne & of Ardane is a moche 16 ryche & noble Countree that clepen the duchye of Lucembourgh, the whiche duchye a noble man gouerned longe as hys owne propre herytage / the whiche valyaunt man passed to god but of late, and hath lefte a doughtir hys 20 heyre of the land / to the whiche right noble and fayre pucelle alle the nobles and barons of the land hauue as noow don theyre hommage & obeyssaunce. And where it is soo that the kynge of Anssay, knowyng the beaute- 24 fulnes of the mayde, and her grete & noble enheryt- aunce, hath demanded her by maryage / but that pucelle refused hym bycause he had be wedded toefore, & of late he was wydower. Wherfore this kynge of Anssay 28 hath defyyed her and aH her land, and supposteth to hauue her by force & ayenst her wylle / and he is entred in to the land / and hath brent & slayn al byefore hym vnto the toune & Castel 1 of Lucemboorh, where as 32 he hath now besieged the said lady, and hath sworne that he shal never departe thes vnto tyme he hath his wylle of her, other by force or by loun. Wherfore, lordes, me semeth that in aH the world nys more honou- 36 able a vyage ne more raysonnable than that same is,

The knight tells of the fair adventure, and is asked by the brothers for full information.

He relates that

the Duke of Luxembourg

left his daughter his heir,

and owing to her beauty and riches she is sought as wife by the King of Anssay, but because he is a widower she has refused him,

In revenge war has been declared, and the king is trying to get her by force,

1 fol. 107 b.

and now he is besieging her at Luxembourg.
On hearing the story Anthony agrees to succour the maiden,

and the ambassadors promise to conduct Anthony and help him all in their power.

Anthony and Regnald relate the tidings to their parents, and ask for help.

Raymondin thinks it a good opportunity,

and Melusine promises to provide well for her sons.

She announces that any man prepared to serve under the brothers, should come to Lusignan.

For alle thoo that lune honour & gentylenesse ought to draw them self that part. 'In good feyth,' said thenne Anthony, 'ye say trouth / and wete it I shal shew this mater to my lady my moder, to see what ayde and helpe my lord our fader and she wyl gyne vs / and how so euer it happeth, by thayde of god we shal goo and socoure the pacelle that the kynge of Assay wyl have by force, wherof me semeth that he is enyl counteyn.' 'On my feyth, my lord,' sayd thenne the knight, 'yf ye vouchesauf to vndertake that vyage / I & my felawes, two knihtes that be here come with me, shal conduyte & helpe you of al our power.' And pe two bretheren thanked them moche, & saide / 'no doubt we shal goo thither, yf it be the playssire of god.' / And thenne they retournd toward their moder / and the knight toward his felawes / and reherced to them how he had exployst / and that no nede was to speke ne requere Raymondyn ne Melusyn therof. 'Now, veryly,' said the two barons, 'it is ryght wysly don of you / bussid be god therof.' / Here saith this story, that Anthony & Regnald came to their fader & moder, and denounced to them these tydinges, and requyred them of help & ayde tacomplysshe this enterpyse. Thenne spake Raymondyn to Melusyne, & said, 'Certainly, lady, hereto they may have a fayre begynnynge in armes. Wherfore I pray you that ye purueye for them in suche wyse that we may have therof honour & prouffyt.' 'For southe,' said Melusyne, 'Sire, for tacomplysshe your wylle, I shal endenoyre me so diligently therto, that bothe you & they also shal be content.' And thenne she made that any man that wold take wages vnder Anthony & Regnald of Lusynen, that they shuld come at a certayn day to Lusynen, and there they shuld be payed of peir wages for one yere / and also she made it to be cryed al about the marches of poytou.
In this partye reherceth thystorye, that within the day that Melusyne made to be cryed and announced the said wages,1 were assembled many gentylmen in a 4 meddowe bysyde Lusynen; and grete foyson men of armes, to the nombre of fourc thousand helmets and fyue houndred, some archers & oþer crosbowe men / and there were no pages, but al strong men / and were 8 al lodged in fayre tentes & panyllons, and so purveyed of all maner harneys & of al other thinges necessary to þem, that every man was content. And while Raymondyn & melusyne payed them theire wages, & 12 purveyed for al thinges that were nedefull to theyre vyage / Anthony & Regnald araysonned & demanded of the said knight and of his barons, hys felawes, of the estate of the pucelle of the land / And they said to 16 them the very trouth / and were joyful in theire hertes of the grete apparyll that they sawe so soone redy, For wel they had take in thanke half of the same to socoure with al their lady. Wherfor þey thanked 20 god & our lady his blessid moder, And sent fourth with a messager toward the barons of Luxembourgh, for to announce to them the noble socours 2 that god sent to them. Wherof they were joyful & glad. And aftir 24 the barons went & told to theire lady the tydynges, of the whyche she was moch recomforted, and bygan moche denoutely to lawde god her creatour. And when the people knew therof, they had grete joye, and 28 thanked god, and made grete fyres, and cryed with a mery voys, sayeng thus: ‘Joye & victory to our pucelle.’ And when theire enemies withdrawforth herf þem, they wondred moch, & went & denounced it to 32 theire kynge, wherof he was abasshed & penseful. And thenne came tofore certayn personnes, that said to hym: ‘Sire, doo make good watche, For they of the toune awayte dayly for socours.’ ‘By god,’ said the

1 wagged in MS.

On the day appointed for the meeting,

4000 helmets and 500 archers assemble.

They are well armed;

and are paid their wages.

The barons describe the state of the land to the brothers,

and send word of the aid coming to Luxembourg,

2 fol. 168 b.

wherent the barons, the lady Christine, and her people are glad.

The king of Ansay is informed of the rejoicing,
but believes he will starve them out, not knowing of succour on the way.

Melusine calls Anthony and Regnald, and gives them parting advice.

She tells them to love God and keep the commandments of holy Church,

to be courteous to all,

to be cautious in believing scandal,

to be fair to their comrades,

to be stern with their enemies,

Melusine's good counsel to her sons. [CH. XXIV.

... but the kynge, 'I ne wot nor may knowe by no manere flo whens socours shuld come to them; I doubte not / but that I shal haue them at my wyf, other by strength or by honger and for lack of meete.' And thus the kyng of Anssey assured hym self, But afsterward he fonde hym self deceyued. Now I shal leue of hym, and shal retourne to speke of Melusyne and of her two sons.

Melusyne thenne called to her Anthony and Regnald, her two sons / and to them she said in this manere: 'Children, ye now wyl departe fro my lord your fader & fro me / and happily we shal neuer 12 see you agayn. Wherfore I wyl teche & introdryte you for your wele & honour. And I pray you that ye vnderstand & reteyne that I shaH say, For that shal be to you nedefull in tyme to come. First, ye 16 shal loue / doubte, & preye god our creatour; ye shaH fermely, iustly, & deuoutly hold the commandementes of our moder holy chirche / and stedfast shal you be in our feth catholical. / be ye humble & curtseys to good 20 folke / fyers & sharp to the wicked & enyl folke / and be ye 1 always of fayre ansueryng, bothe to moost and leste / and hold talkyng to every one whan tyme requyreth, without eny dysdayn / promise ne be- 24 heghte nothing but that ye may shortly acomplysse it after your power; withdraue not rapporteurs of wordes toward you / byleue not enuyous / nor beleue not to soone ne lyghtly / For that causeth somtyme 28 the friend to wexe mortal foo; putte not in office auaryous nor fel folke / acynte you not with another mans wyf / departe or decele to your felawes of suche things that god shal gyue you; be swete & 32 debonnaire to your subjests / and to your eneymes fyers & cruel vnto tyme they be subdued & vnder your puyssaunce / kepe your self fro aunautyng & fro

Fr. acointez.
menace / but doo your faytte with few wordes this that may be doo. Despyse neuer none enemy, though he be lytel / but loke wel about and make good watche / be not emouges your felawes as maister, but common
with them / and worship euerychon after his degre / and gyue to them after your power, & after that they be worthy. 1gyue to the good men of armes hors & harneys & syluer as rayson requyreh. Now, my children, I ne wot nat what I shuld more saye to you / but that ye kepe euer trouthe in al your dedes & affayres. Hold! I gyue eche of you a ryng of gold, wherof the stones ben of one vertue. For wete it that as long as ye haue good cause, ye shal neuer be dys-
comfyted in batayH. And themne she kyssed them in moderly wyse, whiche thanked her; and toke leue of theire fader, that ryght dolaunt was of theire departyng. They made themne theire troompettes to be sowned & blown, and putte them self al byfore, & conduyted the aanuntgarde / and after folowed the sommage & the grete batayH in fayre 2aray / and the arryergarde also marched forth in fayre ordynaunce. It was a good sight to see the state of the vantgarde, whiche the two bretheren deluyered to be conduyted to a noble baron & valyaut knight of poytou / and them self toke & conduyted the gret baytayH / and by them rode the ambaxadours of Luxembourg. And of the reregarde were captayns the two knyghtes of poytou that ledd vryan & guyon in to Cypre, and that first told to them that the sawdan had besieged the Cite of Famagoce. And to these two knyghtes Raymondyn & Melusyyn had recommendad the estate of theire two sones, Reg-

1 Fr. Donnez aux bons hommes d'armes, chevalx, cottes d'acier, bassines, des premiers, et argent selon raison, et vous se vous voiez ung bon homme de la main qui vienne devers vous mal estu ou mal monté, si l'appellez mault humbument et lay donnez robes, cheveux et harnois, selon la valeur de sa personne et selon le povoir que vous ayz alons.
And march that night to Mirabel, 

where they set good watch.

Anthony orders everyone to ride under his banner in battle array.

This wearies the men.

and in ten days the knight commanding the vanguard

1 64. 110. declares to the brothers that the people think there is no need to be so arrayed till they are in the enemies' country.

But Anthony replies that it is best they should learn themselves, rather than that their enemies should teach them.

and nyght they lodged them nyght to a strong toune vpon a lytel ryuere / and was that same toune named Myrabel, pe whiche Melusyne founded / and that same 4 nyght bygan the two brethern to make good watche, as they had be alreadie in land of enemies, wherof many gaf themself grete merueyH; but they durst not refuse it, For Anthony was so cruel that euery man drad 8 hym. On the morowe next after the masse was doo / the two brethern made cryees vpon payne of hors & haryneys, & to be banysshed out of the felawship, pat eueryman shuld ryde armed vnder his banere, in good 12 aray of batayH. none durst not refuse it / but thus was it doo, Wherof they al merueyld. And in this manere they rode by the space of ten dayes, & so long that they cam in champayne / and many one were wery & 16 ennyed of their harneys / as moche for pis that it was no nede / as bycause they were not acustomed of it / and som spake therof, wherfor the knight that conduyted the vangarde cam to the two brethern, & thus 20 said to them: 'My lorde, the moost part of your people is euyl apayed & content bycause that ye I con-

strayn them to bere their harneys; For them semeth no nede to doo soo tyll that they come nyght to the 24 marches of your enemies.' "And how, sire," said Anthony, 'thynke ye not that the thinge which is acustomed of long tyme be bettre knowen of them that exercice it, & lesse grenable than that thing which is 28 newly lerned?" 'By my feyth, sire,' said the knyght, 'ye say wel.' ' moroner,' said Anthony, 'It is bettre for hem to lerne the payne for to susteyne their harneys in tyme, that surely they may so doo at their 32 ease, & to refresshe them surely for to essaye them self, and knowe the manere how they myght easi susteyn & suffre it whan nede shalbe. For ye they muste be thought of their enemies / their payne 36
shuld be greter & doubtous / and ye wote ynoough, that
who lerneth not his crafe in his youghte, with grete
peyne & hard it shal be for hym to be a good werke-
4 man in his old age.' 'Certaynly, my lord,' said the
knyght, 'ye saye the playne trouth of it, and your
reason is full good.' And thenne he departed fro
hym, and anounced to many one this rayson, in so
8 moche that knowlech of it they had thorough al thooost,
wherof euery man held hym self wel apayed & content /
and al sayd that the two bretheren might not say\H to
haue grete wele, yf god wold send to them long lyf;
12 and that they shuld come to grete perfection of honour.

Thystorye sayth in this partye, that the same nyght
the oost was lodged vpon a ryuere that men
called aisne / and about the first slepe, the two bretheren
16 made to be cryed alarme through the oost right ferfully.
Thenne was there grete trouble, and in euery syde they
armed them, puttyng\H themself in fayre aray of batayH.
euery man vnder his banere byfore theirenttes. And
20 wete it wel, that it was grete beaute to see the good
contenaunce & the noble ordynaunce & fayre aray of
the men of armes, and of the two bretheren, that went
fro bataiH to batayH / and there as fawte was of
24 ordynaunce, they redressid their peple to it. And
the thre barons, ambaxadours of Lucembourgh, beheld
wel their maner & contenaunce, & said that one to
that other: "On my fethy, these two children ben wel
28 chappen to subdue & conquere yet a grete part of the
world / now wel may say the king\H of Anssay, that
dere he shalH abyde his folye & proud enterpyse, and
the dommage that he hath borne to our lady, & to
32 her land & subgets.' In suche party they were long
tyme, tyl the espies that secretly were departed fro the
oost to dyscouere & ouersee the Countrie about, yf
enemies were nygh / came agayn, & sayd that they

1 is in MS.

MELUSINE.
They returned with the news that no enemy was in sight. At last it was known to be a false alarm.

The captains of the van and rear guards complained of the trouble,

but Anthony told them he did it to test the troops.

The next day they marched to Dam Castle,

which is twelve leagues from the besieged town.

The ambassadors advise the brethren to halt and refresh their men,

aspyed no personne; whereof al gaf them self grete wonder of that alarme & affray, but at last it was well known that the two brethren caused it. Thenne came the two knightes, captayns of the arryergarde, & also the Captayne of the vantgarde, to the two brethren, & said to them in this manere: 'My lorde, grete symplenes it is to you thus to trauycyle your people for nought.' 'How,' said Anthony to them / 8 'whan ye doo make a new rayment, be it harneys or clothing, make ye no it to be essayed, for to knowe ye ony fawte is fonde in it, and to haue it mended & sette as it shuld be?' / And they al ansuered, 'For certayn, 12 sire, ye & that is ryght.' Thenne sayd Anthony, 'ye I wold haue assayed my felawes to fore that it had be tyme, for to knowe how I shuld fynd them redy at my rede / sene & considered that we approche our 16 enemys / to them, ye ony fawte we had fonde, to haue purveyed of conuenable remedys therto, at our lesse dommage / than ye in dede it had be.' Whane they [heard] that word / they ansuered, 'my lord, ye say but rayson' / and they wondred moche of theire gouernement, and of theire subytlyte & wyt / sayong betwene them self / that they shuld yet come to grete perfection. Soone after the day was come, the masse 24 was said and the trompettes sowned; at which sawe the vantgarde marched fourth, and the sommage and Cartes folowed / and after the grete oost deslodged, & went so long by theire journeyes that they came & lodged them vpon a ryuere named Meuse, vnder a Fortresse named Damecastel / And fro thens vnto the siege tofore lucembourg, were not past two days journey for them. Thenne came the barons ambaxadours of Lucembourg to the two brethren, & said: 'My lord, we haue no more but xij leghis vnto the siege, it were good that ye shuld refresshe your peple here vpon this

1 Word scraped out of MS.
fayre ryuer; For here is good soiourne & good abydyng, and also is good to take aduys & Counseyl how ye wyl doo.'/

4 Than answerd Anthony royght boldly: 'By my feyth, fayre lordes, thaduyss is ouerlong take, For assoone that my brother & I haue sent toward the kynge of Anssay, yf he wyl not doo after our wy, he may hold hym sure to haue batayH/ and the vctory shal send god to whom it playse hym / but what / me semeth we haue good quareH, And therfor we haue hope on our lord that he shal helpe vs / and also we shall, or euere we fyght, demande of hym royght & rayson / but it muste be aduysedd whom shal goo on the message.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the Captayne of the vantgarde, 'I shal be your messanger, yf it please you, and the gentylman that knoweth the Countre shal lede me thither.' 'In the name of god,' said anthony / that playseth me royght wel / but that shal not be tyl myn oost be but thre leghes ferre fro them / to thende, yf pe batayH muste be that we may be nere them for to fyght, and haue thayde of the toure with vs. 'For yf he wyl the batayH we wold be alredy by hym.' And thus they lefte to speke of this matere.

24 And on the morne erly, after that the masse was doo, thoost marched, & passed the ryuere vnder Damcastel in fayre ordynance / and so long they rode that they aryyed on an euen betwene vertone and Lucem-28 bourgh, and there lodged them self. And on the morow erly Anthony sent the Captayne of the vantgarde, and the said gentylman toward the kynge of Anssay, to whom they said the wordes that herafter folowe. Thenne they hasted them so moche that they came to the siege, and were brought as messagers tofore the kync; whomse they salued, & made reverence as they oughte / and aftir the knyght captayn said to hym in this manere: Sire, hither we are sent But Anthony declines to do so, and says he will send to the King of Anssay, and if he accepts not their terms they will fight.

The captain of the vanguard volunteers to be the messenger.

Anthony says he will send when they are as near as three leagues to the enemy.

In the morning after mass the army marches beyond Virtun, and rests there.

Next morning Anthony sends the captain of the vanguard and the gentle-man to the King of Anssay.

The captain, after making reverence to the king,
says he has been set to show the outrage that has been committed on the noble lady of Luxembourg.

If the king will make amends for the wrongs he has done and depart, he can do so; if not he must fight.

The King of Ansay mocks the knight,

who now demands a speedy answer.

The king replies that he cares not a straw for the knight's masters; whereupon the knight defies the king on behalf of his lords.

from our redoubted lords, Anthony & Regnald, of Lusynen brethern, for to shew vnto you the fawte & grete outrage that ye doo to the noble damoyselle lady of Lucembourgh / the which our lordes redoubted 4 mande, & lete you knowe by vs that yf ye wyl restab-

lysshe the dommage, & to make raysouuable & lawful amendes of the Inury & vylonnye that ye haue don to her / to her subgets & to her propre enherytuação, 8 and after to departe out of her land ye shaal doo wel, and they make them strong to make your peas with her / and yf ye wyl not so deele with her / their entencyon is for to take reparacion upon you of the 12 dommages beforsayd by strength of their armes & by batayH. and gyue to vs an anseure what your wyH is to doo / and after morouer I shal telle you as I am commanded to doo.' 'How, sire knyght,' said the 16 kyng, 'are ye come hither for to preche vs / by my feith lytel or nought ye may gete here. For as to your lettres ne to your preching, I shal not be letted of myn entencion / but as long ye may preche as ye wyl, For I 20 vouchesaf. 1 For I take my dysport in your talkyng & prechement. And also I trow that ye ne doo or saye suche things but for dysport.' 'By my heed, sire,' said the Captayne, that was angry / 'yf ye doo not 24 promptly & anoone this that our lordes mande by vs vnto you / the dysport that ye speke of / shal hastly tourne you to grete myschief & sorowe.' 'Sire knight,' said the kyng, 'of menaces ye may gyue vs ynoughe. 2S For other thing ye shal not haue ne withbere fro me, For your maisters, nor your menaces I preyse not worth a strawe.' 'Thenne, king of Ansay, I defbye you on my ryght redoubted lordes byhalf.' 'Wel 32 thanne,' said the kyng, 'I shal kepe me fro mystakyng & fro losse & dommage, yf I may' / 'By 2 my sowle,' answerd the Captayne, 'grete nede ye shal haue to do

2 MS. read My.
and-mounted. And without any more words they departed. And when they were out of their own siege, the gentleman took leave of the Captayne, and secretly entered into the town for to recount the tidings of the two brethren and when he came to the gate he was alone, known, and the gate was opened to hym, & gladly he was welcomed of everyone and they demanded tidings of hym which answer to them.

'Sires, make good chere, For soone ye shall have the most noblest socours that ever was seen, and were it well that the king of Anssay abydeth so long, that he shall be certaynly other slayn or take, & his people al dyscomfyted, take, or putte to deth.' Thenne byganne the joye to be so grete throug the town that they without hurd the bruyt therof, and woundred moche what it might be and announced it to the kyng.

'By my feth,' said the kyng, 'they recomforte themself for the commyng of thoo two children by whom that knyght hath defyyed vs, For as I trow, they haue herd some tydynges therof, and perch for they make suche joye.' 'In the name of god,' said an auncyent knight, 'al this may be but good were to take heede thereto For there nys none litel enmy, but we ought to haue doubtethe therof. For I know them wel ynough by semblant. For or euery they come hyther from poytou we shold haue brought about a parte of our wyth.' Now I shal leue to speke of the kyng and shal returne to speke of hym that brought tydynges of the two brethren in to the town. Whan the knyght thanne was entred as byfore is said, he went fourth vnto the Castel where the pucelle Cristyne was and after hys obeyssance don vn to her, he rehearsed to her al the playn truth of the maynten & countenance of the two brethren and he said to her 'how Anthony bare a claw of a Lyon in his face' and shewed to her hys grete fyerste & his grete strengthe. Also how

The captain and the gentleman leave the king. The gentleman secretly enters the town to give tidings of the brethren.

He tells the people that the King of Anssay will be either slain or taken, and his people overcome; whereat they make a joyful noise.

The King of Anssay says they rejoice because of the succour of the children who have defied him.

An ancient knight advises the king to take heed of the report.

The Luxembourgh knight goes to the castle where the maid Christine dwells, and describes Anthony and Regnault to her.
Regnald had but one eye / and the beaule of theyro bodyes & of theire membres / wherof she merueyllled moche, & said that it was grete dommage, Whan eny contreyfayture was in the membres of suche noble men. 4 And now cesse thystory to speke of them / and re-tourneth to the of the captayne that retourneth to thost toward Anthony and Regnald. / 

Thystorye sayth that so long rode the Captayne 8 that he came in to thost of the two bretheren, & recorded to them how he had fullfylled hys message, & recounted worke by worke the proude ansuere of the king, and how he had deffyed hym in theire byhalf / 12 and also how the knyght was departed fro hym, & was gon to Lucembourgh to teH there 1 of theire commyng / And whan the two bretheren herd hym they were full joyous / and soone made cryees througe theyre oost, 16 that al they that had no wyH for to fyght & abyde the batayH shuld draw themself parte, & gaf to them leue to retourne agayn in theire Countrey / but they escryed them self with an lye voys. ' Ha / a, franc 20 demoyseaux make your trompettes to be sowned, & lete vs go forth vpon your enemies / For we ben not come in your companye / but for to take thauentre with you suche as god shal send vs / Ha, lordes, goo we 24 & renne vpon our enemies, For with goddes grace, & with the good wyH that we be of, they shal soone be dyscomfyted.' Whan thenne the two bretheren herd the answerd of theire peple they were joyfull, and made 28 theire oost to departe, & came & lodged vpon a lytel ruyere / and the vantgarde & the grete bataiH lodged togidre, bycause they might goo no ferper / and they soupped togidre, and after went to reste them, & made 32 good watche / and at day spryng they were al redy / and lefte to kepe their lodgis two houndred men of armes with an C crosbowes / and thenne the oost in fayre aray marched forth. There myght men see 36
baners & standarts in the wynd; and vnder them the flour of cheualrye in good aray & fayre ordynance / there had ye sene salades & helmets shynyng clere / 4 and harneys knokyng togidre that grete beaute it was to see. They kept & marched nygh togidre, so that one passed not that other. And Anthony and Regnauld rode at the first froun, mounted vpon two grete horses 8 armed of al pieces. And 1 in that estate and aray they went tyl they came vpon a lytel mountayne / and sawe fro thens in the valey the toune & Castel of Lucembourgh, and the grete siege that aduyrond it 12 about. And wete it pat they of the siege had not yet perceyued thoost of the two bretheren / but they were all assured pat they shuld hawe the batayH. Thenme sent anthony foure hounded helmets for to scarmysshe 16 the siege / and the oost folowed with lytel paas in fayr aray of batayH / And on the wynges of thoost were knightes and Crosbowes in fayre ordynance. Now teH we of the foure hounded fyghting 20 men that went for to scarmyssl with them of the siege. / They march forth in good order; Anthony and Regnauld in front on two great horses. fol. 113 b.

There was sent Anthony foure hounded helmets for to scarmysshe the siege / and the oost folowed with lytel paas in fayr aray of batayH / And on the wynges of thoost were knightes and Crosbowes in fayre ordynance. Anthony sends 400 skirmishers in advance.

Thystory saith that the foure hounded fyghtyng men entred vpon their enemies, and slew & hew doune al that they recounted / And when they were come nygh to the kingis tente, they of the night watche that were not yet vnarmed went ayenst them, for the cry that they made that was ‘Lusynen’ / many sperys 28 were putte there al to pieces, and many one cast doune to the ground / and the gretest dommage tourned vpon them of the siege / but sodainly the kyng armed hym self, and putte hym vnder his banere before his tente / These knights slay all they encounter, and come nigh the king’s tent, which was defended by his night watch.

And whiles they held foot alle thoost was armed, & drew them toward the kyngis banere. And he demanded of them, ‘Fayre lordinges, what affray is this?’ The king arms himself, and asks his men what affray is this?

‘By my feyth,’ said a knight, ‘they are men of armes 36 that entred in your oost ryght fyersly, and they call these knights slay all they encounter, and come nigh the king’s tent, which was defended by his night watch.

The knight answers that men of armes have
damaged them sore, but the night watch has driven them back.

Lusynen, and they have adommaged you sore / and yf it had not be the nyght watche the losse had be greter, For they haue fraught with them valyantly / and haue made them to goo back by force.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng / these damoyseaulx, in whos behalf I am defyyed, haue not taryd long to come & bere dommage to me / but wel I think for to auenge me therof.' Thenne is come Anthony and his batayH, which made 8 his trompettes to be sowned clerly. And whan the kyng perceyued them he came withforth the lodgis in fayre aray & batayH renged. And themne the bataylles recountred eche other / and archers & cros-12 bowmen approuched & bygan to shoote, and there were slayne & hurt many one of the king's of Anssays party, and neuertheles the grete batayH assembled togyder / and there was grete occysion & fyers medlee. And 16 themne anthony broched his hors with the sporys, the spere alowed, & smote a knyght by sucli vertue that the targe nor his cote of stele might not warauntysse hym, but that he threw hym doune to therthe al deed. 20

Anthony fights so well And thenne he drew out his swercl, and smote on the lyfte syde & on the ryght syde, gyuyng grete & pesaunt strokes, in so moche that in a short while he was so knowen throug al the batayH that the moost hardy 24 of them alle durst not abyde hym. Thenne came Regnald mounted vpon a grete Courser callyng 'Lusygnen,' which made so grete appertysse of armes that alle his enemies redoubted hym. Thenne was the baytayH 28 fyers, cruel, and mortal on bothe partyes / but alwayes the gretest losse & dommage tourned vpon the kyng of Anssay & his peple, which was moche dolaunt & sorowful, & enverted hym self strong, and made with his 32 handes grete vasselage / but al that preuaylled hym nought, For the poytevins 2 were ryght strong; hard, & fel lyke lyons / and there were the two lordes so puysaunt that none so bold was there that durst abyde 36

1 fol. 114.

Anthony with his men comes up in battle array,
and the king comes forth to meet him.
The battle begins, and much blood is spilt.

2 fol. 114 b.

that the most hardy dare not abide him.

Regnald also does great feats of arms.

[CH. XXIV.]
them. Thenne sawe wel the kyng by the puysaunce & strength of the two brethern, that he myght no lenger suffre their force.

4 Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dys-comfyted the kyng of Anssay tofore lucembourgh / and how he was take.

The kyng thenne, which was a valyauit man & strong, cryed with a hye voys 'Anssay, Anssay, lordes & barons be not abasshed, For the batayH is oures' / and at his callyng his peuple toke courage, & assembled them self ayen togidre about their kyng, and made a fyers enuahye vpon the poyteuyns / there was many man slayn / hewen & sore hurte with grete doleur. That mornyng was fayre & clere, & the soonne shoone bright vpon the helmets / and caused the gold & syluer ther on to resplendysse, that fayre it was to see. And they of the toune that herde this grete affray, toke their armes; & eche of them made good watche, For they were ryght ferdful & doubtous of treson. And the knyght which anounced to them the socours of the two breperi was with the pucelle Crystyne in a hye toure, & loked out at a wyndowe / and he knew wel that it was Anthony & Regnald, that were come for to fight ayenst the king & his peple, & anon called with an hye voys, 'My lady, come hither & see the floure of knyghthod, of prowesse & hardynes / come & see honour in his siege royaH, & in his mageste / come & see the god of armes in propre figure.' 'Frend,' said the pucelle / 'what is that ye say to me?' 'I calle you,' sayd the knight, 'to come hither & see the flour of noblesse & of all curtoysye, that fro ferre land is come hither for to fyght with your enemies for to kepe your honour,

1 Fr. envaye = attack.  
3 for in MS.
GRIEF OF CHRISTINE AT THE SLAUGHTER. [CH. XXV.

the children of Lusignan.

your lande, & your peple / this are the two children of Lusynen, that be come for to defsend you ayenst the king of Anssay & all his puysaunce, and to putte their honour & lyf in auenture for to kepe your honour sauf.? Thenn came the mayde at the wyn-
dowe, & beheld the mortal batayH & horryble medlee / sayeng in this manere: 'O Veray god, what shalH doo this pouere orphenym / bettre it had be that I had 8 drowned myself, or that I had be putte to deth in some other wyse, or elles that I had be deed when I yussed out of my moders wombe / than so many creatures shuld be slyne & perysshe for myn owne 12 synne.' Moche dolaunt & heuy was the yong damoy-
selle of the grete myschief that she sawe, For in certayn thocysyon was grete on both partyes, For the king recomforted his peuple by his wo[ ]py contene-16 aunce & valyaunt maynten; For with his propre swerf he moch adommaged his enemies poyteynys. 1 But Anthony, seeyng the grete dommage that the kynge bare vpon his peple / he was dysplaysed with, & sayd 20 in hym self: 'By my feyth, thy lyf or myn shal not be long; For rather I wold dey than to suffre & see my peuple so murydryd before me.' Thenne he sporyd hys hors / and fyersly as a lyon rane vpon the king; and 24 with his swerf of stele smote hym vpon the hyest part of his helmet by suche strength & vertue that he made hym to be enclyned vpon hys hors neck, so sore astonyed that he ne wyst wheper it was nyght or day, nor he 28 had no force ne power to helpe ne redresse hymself vpward / and Anthony that this sawe, putte his swerf in the shethe ayen; & toke the king by the middes of the body / drew hym fro the hors, & so rudely cast 32 hym to therthe that vmmethe hys herte brake within his bely / and after toke hym to foure knightes, and charged them on theire lyues that they shuld kepe hym, so that because myght ansuer hym of it. And they 36

When the maid sees the slaughter

she is full of grief for being the cause of such deeds.

1 fol. 115 b.

Anthony, seeing the havoe made on his host, resolves to fight the King of Anssay.

He rushes upon the king, smites him,

and casts him from his horse.

He makes him prisoner. Four knights are appointed to guard him.
said that so shuld they do / and they thanne bonde hym & lede hym out of the batayll, and called xxvi archers with them. And after these thinges thus doon

4 Anthony retourned in the prees, callyng ‘Lasynen’ with a hye voys, & said: ‘Now lorde & barons, gyue grete strokes, & spare none, For the journey is ours thankynge be to god; For I hane take the kyng of 8 Anssay my prysoner, that so grete vlyonny hap don to the gentyl pucelle Cristyne.’ Thenn was the meddle rude & paryllous / and there dide the bretheren so moche of armes, that al tho that saw them said that 12 they sawe neuer two so valyuant knygghes. What shuld preuyayf you long compto. 1 Whan the Anssays people knew that thei kyng was take, they neuer syn made no defense / but wer alle owthre slayne or 16 take. And there gate the poytevyus grete conqueste & noble proye, and lodged them self in the paullions & tents of the king of Anssay & of hys peple. And was the kynge brought in Anthonys tente, which a 20 lytel byfere was hys owne propre tente; wherfore the kinge myght not hold his owne tonge, but said: ‘By my feth, damoyseaulx, wel sayth he trouth that sayth / “that god doth / he doth anoone”’ / For this day, in 24 the mornynge, men had doo here within but lytel for your commandement.’ ‘Sire,’ sayd Anthony, ‘your folyshnes & synne is cause therof; For tofore ye wold ranyshe by force the pucelle Crystyne lady of this 28 toune / but therof ye shal be payed after your deserte, For I shal yeld your self vnnder her subjection.’ Thenn whanne the kyng vnderstode hym, he was shamfast & woufuf / and as dysolate & dyscomfyte, 32 ful heuyly answered in this manere: ‘Sith now it is thus vnfortunatly happed with me, rather I wyl dye than to lyue.’ ‘Nay,’ sayd Anthony, ‘ye shal delynure your self / no doubt of / vnto pe mercy & subjection 36 of the pucelle.’
Cap. XXVI. How the kynge of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Cristyne.

Thenne called Anthony to hym the two barons, ambaxadours that were come to Lusynen, with the said gentyllman fro Lucsembourgh and xx other knyghtes of poytou, and to them said in this manere: 'Now lede me this kinge tofore pe damoyselle Cristyne, and recomande vs moche vnto her / and that we send her / her enemy prysonner, for to do with hym her wyll.' And thenne they departed, & lede the king as they were youen in commandement / and came to the toune, where they were wel festyed & honourably receyued. And thenne the Citezeyns conduyted them toward the pucelle, theire lady Cristyne, with grete joye. 'Noble lady,' said the messagers, 'the two yong damoyseaulx of Lusynen recomande them hertyly vn to you, 2 and send you this kyng your enemy prysonner, to doo with hym after your dyscrecyon & wyll. ' Fayre lordis,' ansuerd the damoyselle / 'herto behoneth gret guerdon / but I am not puyssaunt ynough for to reward them as they have deseruyd. I pray to god deuoutely that of hys grace he wyl rewarde them to whom I am mochi bonden / and I pray you, Fayre lordes, that on my behalf ye wyl pray my two 24 yong lordes that they vouchesauf to come and lodge them self here within, & as many of theire barons with them as it shal lyke them good. & in pe meane while men shal burye the deed bodyes, & the deed 28 horses shal be brent / and also they of my Counsayl shal take theire best aduys to see how I shal reward them of theire grete peyne & trauel, that they have suffred for me vnworthy perof, and to recompense 32 them of theire grete expenses & dommages in the best wyse that we can or shal mowe. And ye, kyngge of Anssay, ye swere vn to vs by your ryalte that ye shal
not departe from hens without the wyH & gree of the two noble damoyseaulx, that here haue sent you toward me. For yet so moch I knowe / thankyng to god /

4 that I shuld mysdooy to cast you in pryson / not for your sake / but for loue of them that hither haue sent you. Whan theame the kyng vnderstode the wordes of the pucelle, he answere al ashamed, 'Noble damoy-

8 selle, I sere you on my feyth that neuer hens I shal departe without your leve & theirs also; For so moch of wele / of honour & of valyauntnes I haue sene in them, that moche I desyre to be acouynted with them /

12 how be it that grete dommage they haue borne vnto me & my men.' And theame the noble mayde made hym to be putte into a fayre chambre & riche, & with hym ladyes & damoyselles, also knyghtis & squyres, for to make hym to forgete his losse, & forto reioye & haue hym out of melencolye. And thus don, the messagers returned toward the tentes, & reported the mandement & prayer of the pucelle Cristyne vnto the two bretheren, whiche were counselled to goo thither;

and ordeyned the mareshal of the oost for to gouerne theire peple vnto tyme that they came agayn / and also he commanded hym to make the deed bodyes to be buryed, & to make the place clene where as the batayH had be. Thenne they departed, acompanied with theire baronnye / and aynetn they came, in theire best wyse, an houndred gentylmen / and also the 28 barons of the land mete with them, & made theire obeyssaunce full honourably vnto the two bretheren, prayeng them yet agayn, on theire ladys behalf, that they vouchesauf to come & lodge them in the toune /

32 And they answere that gladly they wold doo soo. Anthony was mounted vpon a grete Courser / and he had on hym a jacke of Cramesyn velvet, aH brouded & sette with perlis, and held a grete vyreton in his hand.

36 And in lyke & semblable manere went hys brother
The barons of Luxembourg, who come to meet them, are astonished at the appearance of the brethren, and marvel at Anthony’s claw, and at Regnald’s one eye.

1 fol. 118.

They enter the town amid the sound of trumpets.

The houses are richly decorated, and the windows full of women.

As the brethren ride through the town, the people say that it would not be wise to oppose them.

Regnald. And when the barons of Lucembourgh saw the two brethren, they wondred moch of theire fyersnes, gretnes & myght, and wel said that there was no man that might withstand ne abyde theire puyssaunce / and moche they merueylld of the Lyons claw that appiered in Anthonys cheke, & said that ye had be that he were the fayrest man in the world / and moche they playned Regnald of that he had but 8 one eye, For in al his other membres he passed of beaulte al oper men.

In this partye sayth thistorye, that in noble estate & fayre aray entred the two brethren in to the toune of Lucembourgh ; & before them sowned trompettes in grete nombre, with heraults & menestrels; And Cyte-seyns had hanged their houses withoutward toward the stretes, with theire best & rychest hangyng clothes / and the stretes where the said lordes passed were couered on high with lynen clothes, that no rayne or other fowH wedryng myght lette peire entree within the toune / and many noble & worshipful ladyes, bourgeys wyues / damoyselles and fayre maydens, were in theire best rayments, eche one after the state & degree that she was of / lokyng out at wyndowes for to behold & see the noble brethren & theire felawship.

Thistorye thanne sayth that the two brethern departed out of theire tentes with noble companye, as barons, knightes, squyeres, & other gentylmen / and as vyctoryous prynces rode fuH honourably vnto Lucembourgh, and through the toune, where as they were behold with joyous herte of every one, sayeng that one to other: See yonder be two the fyers men, brethern that are to be redoubted / he is not wyse that taketh noyse or debat with them / and they had grete wonder of Anthonyes cheke / and also for certayn it was a straunge thing to behold & see / but the grete beaulte that was in his body caused that inconueny.
ence to be forgotten / And thus they rode toward the Castel. The ladyes & damoyselles beheld them out of the wyndowes / and said that they neuer sawe two 4 damoyseaulx of more noble affayre. And thenne they came to the Castel, when they alighted, and entred fourtheith into the halle, where as the noble Cristynee mete them at the gate, wel acompanyed of ladyes & 8 damoyselles in grete nombre, and of knightes & squyers / and with a joyous contenaunce & gracyous maynten honouably recyued them & gretly festyed them. The halle was hanged nobly with ryche clothes after 12 the vse of the land, and fro the halle they went in to another chamble, mochi noble & ryche, & þere the pucelle Cristynee bygan to say to them in this maniere: 'My right dere lordes, I thanke you mochi, as I may 16 of the noble socours & help that ye haue don to me / I am not so mochi worth as ye ought to be rewarded of / not that withstanding I shal endevoyre me therto / al shuld I laye of my land in pledge this tene yere day. 20 And also, my lordes, of your noble grace ye haue sent to me the king of ansay, myn enemy, of the which plaise it you to knoe that I am not she to whom oughte þe punysshemement of hym / but to you appar- 24 teyneth to doo therwith your playesire & volente, that haue had the parel & peyne for to overcom & take hym your prysonner / wherfore after that right requyreth he is yours, & may doo with hym whatsooner 28 it plaise you / and I remyse hym in your possession. For as touching my persone I gyue hym ouer vnto you, & loke not to medle ony more with him tofore you.' 'Noble damoyselle,' said thanne anthony, 'sethen it is 32 your playesire, we shal ordeyne wel þerof, in suche wyse that it shal be to your grete honoure & prouillyye / and to hym grete shame & confusyon / no doubt of / And wete it that my broþer and I are not comé hither for 36 loue of your siluer, but for to susteyne rayson & right /
and because they think all noble men should aid widows and orphans.

He declines all reward, save the lady's favour and good grace.

Christine is abashed, and wishes to pay the soldiers of the brethren, but her offer is refused.

The steward announces dinner; they wash, and send for the King of Ansay, who sits down to dinner with them.

also considered that all noble men oughte to helpe & ayde the wydowes, orphenynis, and the pucelles also. And forasmoch also that we were truly informed, that the kinge of Ansay made grete werre 1 anenst you & your land wrongfully, wherfor no doubte of / of all your goodes we wyl not take the value of one peny / but alonely to be recyedue in your noble fauour & good grace, all yvlounye excepted.' Whan the pucelle 8 Cristyne understode these wordes, she was abasshed of the grete honour that the two bretheren dide vnto her / not that withstandyng she asuered in this manere: 'For southe, my graciouslys lordes, at lest it were no 12 raison, but that I payed wel your peple that be come hither to take your wages as sawdoyers.' 'Damoyselle,' said penye Anthony, 'vouchsaf to suffre that we haue said, For my lord our fader, & my lady our moder, haue payed them alredy for a hole yere day, or euer they departed out of our land / & yet it is not fullyssh a moneth complet syn that we departed thens; And ouermore wete it that syluer & gold we haue yngouhe. Wherfore, noble demoyselle, ye lese your wordes to speke therof, For certayn it shal none other be / and she thenne thanked them in her best manere ryght humbly.

Theuen came the styward, & enclynyed hym tofore the pucelle, & said: 'My lady, ye may wesshe when it playse you, For al thing is redy to dyner' / 'whan, my lordes,' she said, 'be redy perito, I am 28 played.' Whom Anthony ansuered: 'noble damoy- selle, we be al redy whan ye vouchesaf to go therat.' and thenne they toke eche other by ye handes & wesshe. And Anthony desired the king of Ansay to be sent 32 for / and made hym sette first of all at the table / and after the pucelle and syn Regnauld / and anthony satte last. And nygh to them satte foure of the noblest barons of the land. And along the halle were 1 other 36
tables dressed, wherat sette all other gentylmen, barons & squyers, eche one after hys degree. Of the servyse I nede not to hold you long compte, For they were so 4 nobly & haboundantly serued, that nothing according to such a ryall feste they wanted of. And when they had dyned they wesshe handes, and graces were said, and all the tables voydedy. thame said the king: of 8 Ansay in this manyere: 'Lorde damoyseaulx, vouche- sauf to here my wordes. It is trouth that the wyH of god & myn vnfortunate hath brought me to that caas, that by your valiauntyes & prowes I am & haue be 12 bothe myself & al my peple dyscomfyte, & ouer that ye haue take me your prysonner / but I ensure you, consideryng your high prowesse, your boute, & your noble affayres, I am glad & joyous to fynde me now 16 with you, For I shal be the bettrey therfore al my lyf naturel; and syth, sayre lordes, pat my presence & long abydyyng here with you may nought prenaylle to you / humbly I beseech you, as I best can, that it playse you 20 to putte me to raisounable raunson & payement port- able to me, so that I be not al dystroied nor dys- heryetd / thangh it lyeth now in your power / but haue pyte on me, & punyssh me not affir the regarde 24 of my follysshe enterpryse / how be it pat rygour of justice requyreth it.' 'By my hed,' said Anthony, 'who that shuld punyssh ye after the regarde of the grete iniourye, vylonnye, & dommage that ye haue don, 28 and yet had purposed to do to this noble damoyselle without eny lawful cause / ye were not puysant to make amends suffysaunt therof / but for as moche that ye knoweche your synne the lasse penytence shal ye 32 haue / and I wyl wel that ye knowe that my brother & I be not come from our countrie hither for hoop of getynge of siluer vpon you nor vpon other / but for desire & hope of getynge of honour & good fame or 36 renommee, without to haue eny wyH or appetyt to MELUSINE.
haue mortal rycheses. Wherfore, as touchynge our part, we now remysse & putte you free quyte & at your lyberte / sauf that we taxe you to pay to this noble pucelle at such dommages that she hath had at your cause / and perof ye shal gyue good pledges or euer ye departe hens, And yet morouer ye shal swere vnto her vpon the holy Evangiles, that neuer ye shal bere, ner ye shal suffre to be borne ony manere of dommage ne 8 dyshonour to the forsaid pucelle that is here present / but at your power ye shal gyue her ayde, help, & comfort at al tymes anenst at them that iniur ye or dommage wold doo to her. And wel I wyl that ye 12 knowe that ye wyl not swere & accord to that I haue said with your good wylle, I shal send you in to such a place, wherout the dayes of your lyf ye shal not escape. And whan the kyng vnderstode these wordes 16 he ansureth in this manere. 'Sire, I am wylyng & redy to swere that conuenante, yf the noble mayde be content of that ye haue ordeyned & said.' 'By my feyth,' said she, 'I consent me thereto, syn it is my 20 lorde's plaisure' / and yet morouer said Anthony suche or semblable wordes as folowen /

'Yet, sire, I haue not al said that ye muste doo, For ye muste doo founde a Pryoure of twelve 24 monkes & the pryour, in suche place there as my lady shal ordeyne / and ye shal endowe & emposesse them with rentes & revenue conuenable for theire lyuyng & for their successours for euermore / the said monkes & 28 pryour to praye there for the sowles of them that haue be slayne of your part & of myn in this batayH.' 'By my feyth,' said theonne the king, 'I promyse you put so shal I doo, and good pledges & hostages I shal gyue 32 you, & to my lady to be assured therof.' Thenne swere the kyng by his feyth vpon the holy Evangiles that he shuld hold & accomplysse al that beforesaid is / & gaf & deluyered good hostages / & lettres patentes were 36
CH. XXVII.  THE KING MAKES A SUGGESTION.

therof made under his seal, & the seals of all the barons of his lande. And that don, Anthony said to the kyng: 'I now gyue you, and deluyere free all the prysonners that we & our folke haue take, and your tentes & pauyllons also / but the hauoir that is departed amongst my felawes I may not it rendre or yeld to you / And thenne he made to be deluyered to hym 8 foure thousand prysoners or therabout, al men of estate & fayte / And thenne the kyng enclyned hymself, & thanked hym moch therof. What shuld I make longe compte / the feste bygane sumptuous & 12 grete thrughe the toune of Lucembourg, & specially in the Castel / and everyone spake of the grete noblesse and curtoysye that Anthony & regnald his brother had shewed to the king of Anssay /

16 Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourgh to Counseylle.

Thenne called the king of Anssay al the barons of the land to Counseyll, and said to them: 'Fayre lorde, Whan the yron is hooth it mooste be wroght & forged; how be it thanne that I haue be yl wyller bothe to you & to your lady / the tyme is now come that I wold her honour and prouffit & youres also / lust & here, For god hath sent good auenture to you, yf ye can take it in gree.' Thenne said the barons: 'Now, sire, syth that ye haue entamed pe matere / vouchesauf to declare vnto vs the sentence therof.'

Ye moste,' said the kyng, 'fynde the manere & meane that Anthony take your lady to his wyf, and he to be your lord, For thenne ye shal mowe saye surely, pat no nede ye haue of none other / & none so hardy were to take an henene from you ayenst your wyf.' And they answered thus: 'Sire, yf Anthonye and he and his lords delivered 1 fol. 120b. letters patent agreeing to the same under all their seals. Anthony then delivers four thousand prisoners to the king. There is a great feast in Luxembourg, and all men praise the courtesy of Anthony.
They say they wold do so so we were therof full glad & joyous. 'Now thenne, sayre lordes, let me deele therwith / and I hope to god I shal brynge the materie to a good ende. Abyde and tary here a lytel, & I shal goo speke with hym.' Thenne came the kyng tofore Anthony, & said: 'Noble man & curtoys damoyseanu, the barons of this land desire & pray you, that ye, your brother, & your Counseyh come and entre in to this chambre. 8 For they desyre moch to speke with you for your pouffyf & honoure.' 'By my feyth,' said anthony, 'ryght gladly.' And thenne he called to hym hys brother & them of their Counseyh / & syn entred in 12 to the chambre / and the barons of the land that were there enclyned themself, & made grete reverence to the two brethern. Thenne spake the kyng of Anssay, & said: 'Fayre lordes, these two noble damoyseanx are 16 come hither at your requeste & prayer / declare now to them your wylle.' And they ansuerde to hym: 'Noble kinge, humbly we beseeche you, that ye announce & shewe to them our entencion, that ye knowe 1wel 20 ynoughe.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng; 'I wyl.' And thenne suche wordes as folowen he bygan to say /

Anthony, noble man, curtoys & valyaunt knight, pe barons of this Countree have had regarde to 24 the grete honour that ye haue borne & shewed to their lady, to her lande, & to them / also they haue con-

considered how nought ye wyl take of theire ladys nor of them / and for asmoche that they desyre your wele & 28 honour, they humbly beseeche your good grace that it playse the same to graunte to them a yfte, the which shaH not lasse your good nor hanoyr / but shal rather augmente your honour.' 'By my feyth, noble kyngye, ye 32 it be of that thing? that I may recouere / touching myn honour, I graunte it right gladly.' 'Certainly,' said the king, 'theire requeste is theanne fulfilled, For they desyre none other but your honour.' 'Now, say theanne, 36
said Anthony, 'what they desyre of me.' 'Damoy- 
sean,' said the kinge / 'they wyl gyue you the Duchesse 
of Lucembourgh, peire liege lady, to your wyf / refuse 
4 not that noble yefte' /

Whan anthony vnderstode hym he stood pensifull 
long tyme / and syn said in this manere: 'By my feith, 
fayre lorde, I supposed neuer to come vnto this 
8 countre for that quarrel; but sethen I haue accorded 
to you I shal not gaynsay it / lete now the pucelle be 
seent for, For yf she be played therwith I consent me 
erto.' Thenne was the damoyselle fete thither by 
12 foure of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche 
recounted to her al the faytte, wherof she was ryght 
glad & joyous / how wel she made of it no semblant. 
And whan she entred in to the Chambre she made her 
16 obeyssauence tofore anthony, & salued alle the barons 
there / and as she beheld Anthony she bygan to waxe 
in her vysage more rede than a rose / and thanne the 
barons reherced & shewed vnto her al this affayre. 
20 And whan the pucelle had herd them speke 'she 
ansuered to them in this manere: 'Fayre lorde, I ren-
dred & yeld thankes & mercys vnto almyghty god, to 
his blessed moder, and to you also, of the grete honour 
24 that now happeth to me, For I pouere orphenyme am 
not worthy to be addressed in to so highe a place as to 
haue to my lord the flour of knithode and the no-
blesse of alle the world / and of that other part, I 
28 wote & knowe wel that ye whiche are my liege men, 
that bettre knowe myn own affayres than I doo my 
self / wold not couseyelle me that thinge, but it were 
to my grete proufyt & honour. Wherfor I ne oughte 
32 nor wyl not gaynsey it / but I am al redy to do therof 
your playsire.' /
Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourgh. / 

Foosoothe, noble lady,' said the Barons, 'ye say right wel & manerly.' What shuld I bring forth prolique or long talkyng? For shortly to say, they were assured togidre with grete joye / and on the next morne after they were espoused & marayed togidre, & was the feste holden right grete & noble, and the peple 8 of the land was ryght joyous when they understode & knew therof / and pat same nyght lay Anthony with the noble mayde Crystyne, and gate on her a moche valyaunt heyre, & was called Bertrand. The feste 12 thenne endured longe sumptuous & grete, & grete ryalte was seen there / and anthony gaf noble & ryche jewels / and receuyed the homages of the lorde & barons of the land. And the king of Anssay yaf leue to his peuple 16 to retouerne into theire Countrees / and abode with anthony with a pryuy² meyne for to fullfyH & accomplisse that he had promysed at traytee making of the peas. And soone after the duc Anthony with his 20 brother Regnald and the king of Anssay and the baronnye, went through the land to vysyte the tonnes & fortresses & putte al thing in good ordonnaunce / in so moche that euery man said, that he was one of the 24 moost wysete prynces that euer they sawe / and when he had vysyted al pe land he retorned to Lucembourgh, where the duchesse Cristyne receyued hym right joyouly / And thanne by thadys of his Coun- 28 seif he adiousted to his armes the shadow or fygure of a Lyon, for cause of the duchery, wherof the lady Cristyne had oftyme prayed hym to fore. And thus they soiiourned at Lucembourgh with grete dysport & 32 joye / tyl that a messager came fro the king of Behayn lone, whiche was brother to the king² of

¹ fol. 122 b. 

Anthony and Christine are assured together, and on the next morning they are married.

That night Anthony begets a valiant heir, who is called Bertrand.

The King of Anssay gives leave to his people to return home, while he remains to fulfill his treaty.

Anthony, Regnald, and the king go through the land and visit the towns and fortresses.

After his return Anthony adds the figure of a lion to his arms.

² fol. 129.

A messenger arrives from the King of Bohemia,  

² Fr. privet maistynée.
Anssay, and was besieged within his toune of praghe by the paynemes & sarrasyns.

Cap. XXIX. How the kyng, of behayne sent a messager toward the king, of Anssay his brother. 

Thystorye sayth that a messager came to Lucembourgh fro the kyng Federyk of behayne, that was moche valyaunt & a true man, whiche ryght strong susteyned the feyth catholicke ayenst the Sarasyns / It is so that the paynemes entred in to his land / and seeyng hym self not payssault ynoth for to gyue them iourney of batayH, drew hym self & his peple with hym in to hys toune of Praghe / and had this kyng Federyke but one only doughtir to his heyre, whiche was named Eglantyne / & certayn it is that he was brother to the king of Anssay. Wherfore he sent a messager to Lucembourgh there as the kyng of Anssay his brother was at that tyme. And shortly to speke, the messager came & directed his lettres to the king of Anssay, whiche opened & redde it / by the tenoure of whiche he vnderstode & knew the myschief where his brother was in / and sayd al on high in heryng of eueryone there in this manere: 'Ha / a, Fortune, how art thou so peruerse & so cruel, certaynly wel is he decayned pat trusteth in the nor in thy yeftes by no manere. it hath not suffysed the to haue ouerthrawn me fro the vppermost stepp of thy whele vnto the lowest / but utterly wylt dystroye me for euer, whan my brother, whiche [is] one of the moost trewest & valiaunt kyng in the world, thou wylt so dysempare & putte out fro his royaume, yf god of his grace purueye not of remedy therto / and thenne he returned hym self toward anthony, & sayd: 'Ha / right noble & valyaunt

2 Fr. version reads: Certes l'homme est bien deceu que en toy ne en tes dons se fit en riens.
prynce, it is now with me wers than ever was. For your noble chenalrye & puysaunce haue not only mated me & made lasse myn honour, but also ye haue dyscomfyted with me the moost true & valiaunt kyng; that ever was of my lynee, & that more valiauntly hath defended the cristen feyth ayenst the enemyes of god. For Federyke, my brother, noble kyng of Behayne, beyug socent oppressed & besieged within his 8 torn of praghe by thinsideles & enemies of god, writeth1 vnto me ful tenderly for help & socoure / alas, now your grete fayttes in armes haue kept me therfro, so that I may not help hym / how be it that al 12 this commeth through myn owne fawte & folysshe enterpyse, For god hath punysshed me lasse ynough than I haue deseruyd.' And thenne he bygan to make suche sorowe that grete pite it was to see./

Thystorye sheweth in this partie that the duc Anthony was ryght dolyant & sorowful whan he understode the pyteous bewayllynge of the kyng of Anssay, and said to hym in this manere: ‘Sire, telle 20 me why ye demene & make such dueyl.’ ‘By god,’ sayd the kyng, ‘wel I have cause / loke & see what the tenoure of this lettre specyfyeth.’ Thenne toke anthony the lettre and redde it al ouer, Wherby he 24 vnderstode & knew the grete myserye & myschief wherein Zelodyus, kyng of Craco, held Federyk, kyng of Behayne, besieged within the Cite of praghe. And thenne the noble duc Anthony consideryng the grete 28 myschief wherin the Cristen peple was hold by the puysaunce of the paynemes, his herte was al replenyssed with pite, and said in hym self that yf he might the Sarasyns shuld bye full derly the peyne whiche they 32 made the Cristen peple to bere / and he thenne said to the kyng: ‘Sire, yf I wold helpe you for to socoure your brother, wold ye not be soon reddy to goo thither-

1 vnritheth in MS.
ward? ’ And when the kyng understood the words he kneeled doonne toefore the duc, 
& said: ‘Sire, if ye wyl graunte me so moche of your grace I swere & promise you feythfully that I shall make Regnald your brother kyng of Behayne after the decease of my brother, which is elder than I almost xxth yere. For wete it that he hath none heyre sauf only a ryght fayre daughter, which is cleepe Eglantyne / and she is about xv yere of age, & that pucelle shall I gyne, if ye vouche-sauf, to Regnald your brother.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said thezne Anthony, ‘and I acorde therunto. / goo thanne
12 hastily to Assay and make your mandement, and be with vs ayen within this thre wykes, and lodge your people in yonder medowe, Where your tentes as yet ben, and in the meane season I shal sende for my men, 16 which are with a knyght of myn at the Leffe, where men had doon wrong to hym.’ And the king ansuerde, ‘Noble & curteys lord, he rewarde you therof, that suffred deth for vs and bytter passyon.’ And thezne 20 he take his leue of the duc and of the duches, of Regnauld, & of all the baronnye there, & syn mounted on horsback / and with his owne meyne rode tyl he came in to his land of assay, sorrowful for his losse 24 & joyfull for the socours that the Duc Anthony promised to hym, for to helpe his brother ayenst the panemes & enemys of god. /

The king thanks him, and takes his leave.

He rides to Assay, sorrowful for his losses, but glad that Anthony will help his brother against the Paynims.

The king arrives in his land, and visits his daughter Meteyde.

He returns to his barons, and explains all his affairs.

The barons think that as the brethren of Lusignan
are going to help their king's brother, they are sure of success.

The king assembles a host of seven thousand men. He leaves his land in charge of a noble baron, and in three weeks is back in Luxembourg.

The duke has nine thousand five hundred men;

one thousand of whom he leaves behind to guard the land, which is left in charge of the lord of Argemont.

Christine is sad at Anthony's departure, and begs him to return soon.

Anthony takes leave of his lady. [CH. XXX.

hit may not fare but wel. For aynst theire puysausance & worthynes may none withstand nor abyde / hast you theire to make your cryes & manement, For we al shal go with you.' Thenne made the kyng his cost 4 to be boden & sent for, & prayd al his frendes & al ye / & within a lytel space of tym he assembled about seuen thousand fyghtyng men / and departed fro his royalme, which he lefte in good gouernaunce vnder a 8 noble baron of the land. And syn dide so moche by his journeys, that at the ende of thre wykes he came & lodged hym & his cost byfore Lucembourgh, in the medow where his tentes were lefte. And theyn were 12 also come the dukes people, that were in nombre fyne thousand helments and a thousand V.C. archers & croswowe men, beside them of the duchery, that were in nombre thre thousand, of pe whiche anthony toke 16 with hym two thousand & the other he lefte behyned for the sauegarde of the land / of pe whiche he ordeyned chief captayne and protectour a noble baron of poytou / and that was the lord of Argemount. / 20

Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leave of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys cost.

Now sayth here thystorye, that whan the Duc 24 Anthony toke his leue of the Duchesse hys wyf, she was right dolaunt & sory in herte, how wel she durst make no semblant / but she prayed hym to retourne asoone as he goodly myght / and he said 28 to her that so shuld he doo / And, morower, he said to 2her in this manere / 'Duchesse, take good heede of your fruyte that groweth in your blod, and cheryssh your self / and ye goddis grace gyne that it be a sone, 32 make hym to be baptysed & named Bertrand. For thus is my playsire. Thenne they embraced & kyssed eche
other, takynge leue one of other / and syn departed the 
duce & came to hys peuple, and made his trompette 
to be sowned. Thenne mounted sperce men on hors-
back, and bygane euery man to marche forth in fayre 
array. The vantgarde conduyted & led the kyngge of 
anssay and Regnald with hym, which was mounted 
vpon a hye Courser, armed of al pycces except his 
8 helmet, and held a grete staf in hys fyst, and putte 
his men in ordre ful wel, & semed wel to be a prync 
courageous & of hye enterpryse / and after folowed the 
Cartes, Charyots & bagage, & the grete batayH / and 
12 after siewed the ryergarde, which Anthony conduyted 
in fayre onlynaunce of batayH, For it was tolde hym 
pat in that countre were many theevys / but the duc 
Anthony manded, & sent word fro fortresse to fortresse 
16 that yf they were so bold to take on hym or on hys 
peuple ony thing, that he shuld punysshe them in 
suche wyse that other shuld take ensample therof. 
And so he passed throug all the Lefse / and no man 
20 was so hardy that he durst take ony thing on hys oost. 
It is trouth that on an euen he lodged hym tofore the 
Cite Acon1 with all hys oost / and the Citezeyns there 
made & presented to hym grete yeftes of ryches, wherof 
24 he thanked them moche, and proffred to them his ser-
uyse, yf they myst er of it. And on the morne after 
the masse he deslodged, & so longe marched fourth on 
his way with his oost, that he came & lodged upon 
28 the ryure of Ryne, which is grete & meruayllous. 
And they of Coloyne made grete daunger to lete 
passe the oost thrughe the Cite at brydge / wherof 
anthonye was angrily & dolaunt, and fyersly sent worde 
32 to them how he had entencion to reys e the siege, that 
the kyng of Craco had layed, & sette with lx thousand 
Sarasyns tofore the Cite of praghe, wherinne was in 
grete oppression and dystres the kyng of behayne, 

1 Fr. Ays:—Aix la Chapelle, Ger. Aachen.
and asks if they are on the Pagynias' side or not.

When the men of Cologne understand how matters are,

they send four burgesses,

who tell Anthony they will let him pass through on condition that the citizens are protected from all damage by Anthony's men.

Anthony replies that he wishes them no harm,

and inquires if any of his ancestors had at any time done them any mischief.

The burgesses return to the city, and tell their story to the Council,

who can remember no quarrel with the Dukes of Luxembourg.

and that they should send him word if they held with the paynemes or not. and upon that he should take hys aduys what he shuld doo / and also that magre them he shuld fynde good passage, but not so short as 4 by theire Cite. And when they of Coloyne understode this mandement, & were wel infourmed of the grete prowes & fyersnes of the two bretheren, they were dreadfuH & doubtous. And soone after they sent 8 toward Anthony foure of pe notablest & moist worshipfuH burgeys of the cyte, whiche came & made to hym ryght honourable and humble reverence / and wondred moche of hys fyersnes and proude contenauce / not 12 that withstanding, they said to hym in this manere: 'right high & myghty prynce, the Citezeyns and commynalte of Coloyne haue sent vs toward your good grace. And know ye pat gladly they shal suffre you 16 & al your oost to passe peasibly thrugh the Cite, soo that ye shal kepe & preserve them fro al dommage that your peple might bere vnto them.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'yf I had be wylyng to doo the 20 contrary of theire wyH, they shuld haue haad of me knowlege therof / and also I haue no cause to doo soo, For I knowe not that they haue mysdoon to me of any thing; nor to the myn nother / How wel they cause 24 me to thinke other wyse / goo and telle to them, yf they remembre not of olde some mysdede don to them by myn auncenstry, or of the Dukes, my predecessours, wherof as yet they be not pacyfyed & accorded / 28 that they wyl suffre me & myn oost passe surely / or ellys to send me wordes therof.' When they understode hys wordes & knew his wyH, they returned to the Cyte, & announced to the Commynalte the mandement of the Duc Anthony. And they anone assembled theire counseyH, & the auncyent men / and found that nouer they had no hate ne dyscorde with the dukes of Lucembourgh, nother to theyre frendes 36
nor alyez / and that sethen he was so noble a man & so
valyaunt, they shuld lete hym passe, and al his oost
also. And they remanded to hym theire wyle with
4 grete yeftes of ryches that they made to be presented
to hys grace / and purveyed for hys oost mocli of
vytayH, as bre<, wyne, and flesshe / & ootys for theire
horses / And whan the Duc vnderstode theire ansuere
8 & sawe their grete yeftes, he thanked them moche /
and was joyous of that they of Coloyne wold be hys
frendes. Wherfor he said to them, that yt they had
nede of hym & of hys powere, he was reedy at theyre
12 co^maundement / and they thanked hym ryght
humbly. And the duc Anthony made to gyue to
them that had brought to hym the said presents of
vytayH, many ryche yeftes, that asmoch were worth, or
16 more than the presents & yeftes gyuen to hym by the
toune, For he wold not that thabytants of the Cyte
shulde suppose or thinke that he wold haue ought of
them for nought.

20 In this partye sheweth thestorye, how that same
nyght souiourned the oost byfore Coloyne, & was
wel refreshed of them of the Cite & of theire vytayH.
For as the dukes commandement was / they were
24 departed in suche wyse that[t] every man there had
part therof. And on the monre erly, 1 the Duc entred
into the Cite with hym, two houndred men of armes /
and made his cryees, vpon payne of deth, that none
28 were so hardly to take any thing of them of the toune;
but he payed wel for after rasion. And soone after
passed the vantgarde in fayre aray ouer the bridge, and
so forth through the Cyte. And so passed al thoost,
32 and lodged them at the oper syde of the ryuere of
Ryn / and it was about even tyme, or ouer al the
Cartes, Charyots, & bagage were past. And that nyght
the Duc & grete part of his baronye lodged within the
36 Cyte, where as grete honour was doon to them. The

They agree to let Anthony and his
host pass,

and send him
many gifts for
himself and
victuals for his
host.

When the duke
understands
their answer, he
thanks them,

and gives them
as rich gifts and
presents as had
been sent to him.

The host remains
opposite Cologne
for the night.

1 fol. 127.

In the morning
the river is
crossed, and the
host marches
through the city.

The duke and
his barons stay
all the night in
the city,
and give a great supper, and great gifts to the ladies of the town.

He leaves in the morning, after thanking the townspeople, who offer him aid.

As the duke comes from mass, four knights and five hundred men arrive from the city.

duc Anthony bode at souper with hym all the ladies of the Cyte, & festyed them ryght honorably, & gaf grete yeftes ar he departed in so moche that they of the Cyte wysshed hym to be their lord.

In the morne the Duc toke his leue of them of the toun / and thanked them moche of the grete honour that they had shewed to hym & to his barons. And they ansuerd all with one voyce: 'Noble Duc / the Cite / we & all our goodes ben at your commande-ment more than to any other lord that marcheth about vs / and spare vs not of nothing: that we may doo for you, For we be now, & shal ever be, redy to do you 12 playsure, ayde, & comfort at your mandement and first callynge' / And he departed fro them, and went in to his tente. And on the morne as he came from the masse, & commanded the trompettes to be sowned for 16 to departe & meve / there came fro the Cite foure knyghtes wel mounted - on horsbak, & armed of all pyeaces sauf the helmet, whiche alyghted before the duckes tente with foure houndred men of armes, and 20 C crosbowe men in their felawship. These knyghtes made their obeysaunce / and syn sayd in this manere: 'Right noble & puysaunt duc, the Cite & commynaunte of Coloyne recommande them to your good grace / and where as ye haue sene so moche of noblesse & curtoysye in you / &desyreng right affectuvely to be frenydes & alyez vnto you, they send you foure houndred men of armes & an C crosbowes, al payed of theire 28 wages for tene monethis day, for to goo with you where so ever it playse you to goo.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'thanking be to them, whome I am moche beholden to / this curtoysye is not to be refusse / & wete it I shal not forgeto it / but remembre in tyme & place.' 'Sire,' said one of the foure knyghtes, 'there nys none of vs foure, but he knowe wel al the way fro hens to Craco / and yf it myster, we shal guyde & lede.
you wel & surely thrughye all the passages & ouer al the ryuere betwix this & that. To that ansuerd the Duc & said / 'this that ye say hurteth not our affayre, 4 and I gaynsay not your sayeng, whan tyme shalbe.' Thenne he putte them in ordynaunce, and receyued them vnder his banere. And penne desyled the vantgarde, the grete batayH, & the ryegarde, and marched 8 on theire waye in fayre aray so long, that they entred in the land of Bavayre, nygh to a grete Cite named Nuenmarghe, where as the Duc of Ode was with a grete companye of peple, For he doubted the kyng Zelodus of Craco, that had besieged the kyng Federyke of Behayne, and held hym in grete necessite, For he had with hym fourse score paynemes / and the Duc Ode was doubtous lest he shuld come vpon hym, 16 yf he subdued and dyscomfyted the kyng Federyke. And therfore, he had assembled his Counseyl to knowe & see what best was to doo. /

Thenne cam to the Cite an auncyent knyght that was of the Duc Ode, to whom he said after his obeyssaunce made: 'My lord, by my sowle I come from the marches of Almayne / but there is commyng a grete oost hitherward of the moost goodlyest men of armes and best arayed that euer I sawe in my dayes / but I wot not where they purpose to goo / but so moche I know, that they draw them self hitherwan?,' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc, 'I gyue me grete wonder what folke they may be, yf the king of Ansay had not be of late dyscomfyted tofore Lucemourh, I shuld suppose that it were he that wold socoure his brother Federyke aynst the Sarasyns / and on my sowle yf it were he I shuld goo with hym for to helpe his brother.' 'My lord,' said the knyght, 'it were wysely doo to haue knowelche certayn what folke they be, ne yf they purpose other wyse than wele.' 'Sire knyght,' said thanne the Duc, 'ye muste your self goo to knowe & reporte

The duke accepts the company, and puts them under his banner.

The army marches to Bavaria, nygh to Nuenmarghe, where the Duke Ode is taking council what to do about the siege.

The duke says if it were the King of Ansay he would go with him to help Frederick.

The duke sends the knight to ascertain what host it is.
the certaynte of it, syn ye haue sene them.' And he anserde, 'By my feyth, my lord, I am redy thereto.' And soone he departed, and so longe he rode that he perceyued thoost in a valye by a ryure. There he sawe grete companyes of gentyl men here & there, some castynge the barre of yron / other held theire spere & shild and esprouued theire self that one on put other / some assayed theire harneys with shoot, with 8 strokes of swerdes, and in many other appertysse of armes they exercyted them self. 'By my feyth,' said the knyght / 'there is fayre mayntene and noble conteynance of men of armes / suche folke is to be 12 doubted and drede.' Thenne he loket on the ryght syde vpon a lytel mountaynne & sawe the grete batayl, and sawe the watche and the scourers al about the oost. 'By my feyth,' said the knyght that moche thing 16 had sene in his dayes / 'this ben 1 worthy men of werre and able to subdue ony lande.' And theynne he entred in to thoost / and demanded after hym that had the governaunce & guydyng of it / And soone he was 20 brought tofore Anthony. And whan he saw the Duc he was moche abasshed of his facion / but alwayes he salued hym ryght curtoysly / and syn said to hym, 'My lord, the Duc Ode hath sent me toward you to 24 wete of you what ye seeke in hys lande / and ye ye thinke or purpose other wyse than wele / also what ye be that conduyteth so fayre company of peple that I see here assembled. For he woteth wel that ye come not hither 28 with suche a felowship without it be for som grete af-fayre' / 'Frend,' sayd anthony / 'telly your lord that we ne demande ought of hym, nor suppose not to dommage his land in no wyse. Also ye may telle hym that it is the 32 kinge of Anssay / Anthony of Lusynen, Duc of Lucem- borough, and Regnald his brother, with theire pay-saunce that supposen to goo reye the siege of praghe, that the Sarasyns haue besieged.' 'Sire,' said thaun-
CH. XXX.] DUKE ODE BECOMES AN AUXILIARY. 225
cyent knyght, ‘god graunte you good vyage.’ And so
he departed and returned toward the Duc Ode of
Bauyere, to whom he reherced as abow is said, and
4 shewed hym the fyersnes and facion of Anthony, and
the contenaunce of his oost / sayengt that they were
folke to be redoubted & dreqt. ‘By my feyth,’ said
there the duc Ode, ‘It commeth of noble courage to
8 that two bretheren to haue come fro so ferre lande
for to seke aventure of cheualere & honour, and also
for to come & gyue ayde & socour to kyng Federyke
anest the enimyes of god / and I promise god that
12 shal not be without me. For it shuld be tourned to me
to grete shame yf that I went not thither / seeyng that
he is my Cousyn, & that my land is so nygh his
royalme / and that the straungers comre fro so ferre
16 for to ayde & helpe hym ayenst the paynemes.’ And
there the Duc Ode made his mandement but of
late, and had assembled al redy foure thousand fighting
men. What shold I make long compt / thoost desloged
20 and passed byfore Murmych. And thanne the Duc
Ode yssued out of the toue with a fayre companye of
people, and came and presented hym self and al his
peple tofore the kinge of Ansay, Anthony / and his
24 broper, whiche Joyonsly receyued them / and thus
marched thoost forth in fayre aray and good ordynaunce
by the space of six dayes. And now seaceth thistorye
to speke of them, and speketh of the kynge Federyke
28 and of the siege. /

Here sheweth thistorye how the puyssance of
Zelodyus, kyng of Craco, was ryght grete / and
the kynge Federyk durst not goodly have yssued / but
32 alwayes he scarmousshed ofte with his enimys / and
almost dayly was at the barrers / the medlee was grete
& stronge / and there were within the toune about
a houndred helmets of Hongery, that were valyautm
36 knyghtes & good men of werre / the whiche yssued /
MELUSINE.
Early one morning the pagans assault the town.

Frederick drives them back to their camp;

but the king of Cracow comes with fifteen thousand Saracens,

and forces Frederick to retreat.

Frederick sees Zelodius,

1 fol. 129 b.

cuts his way up to him,

and smites him on his helmet.

Zelodius is succoured by his men;

and launches a dart at Frederick,

ofte & dide grete dammage to the sarasyns. It happed on a mornying erly that the paynemies gaf a grete sawte to the town & and the king Federyke with his peuple yssued out vnto the barrers / and there the scarmysshing bygan grete & mortal & / and so manfully faught the kyng, that with the help of his men he grely dommaged his enemies / and made them to cesse of the sawte / & made them to goo back vnto their lodgys. 8 And that tyme was the kyng of Craco mounted vpon a grete hors, his banere to the wynd accompanied with xv M sarasyns, and came in fayre ordynance to the batayle. There was many stroke gyuen & receyued / 12 and by force of armes the kyng & his peple was constryaned to withdrawe hym back vnto the barrers. There was grete occysyon made, For horrible strokes were gyuen of bothe sydes, and the king Federyke re-16 comforted wel his peple, For he dide grete faytte of armes of his owne handes. And whan he perceyued kyng Zelodyus that sore dommaged his peple, he sporyd his horse and toke his swerd in his fyst / and 20 rane smyttynge on the lyft syde and on the ryght syde vpon his enemyes tyl he made place, and came & smote Zelodius vpon his helmet, by suche strengthe & vertue that he made hym to encylyne vpon his hors neck 24 al astonyed / and lytel fayllde that he was not overthrowen to the ethe, For he lost bothe the steropes / but soone he was socoured of his men whiche redreced hym vp ryght / and the king Federyk adreced hys 28 swerd vpon a payneme, & suche a stroke he gaf hym that he slew hym therwith. The king of Craco was theenne redreced as said is / and he perceuyynge the kyng Federyk / that hewed legges & armes, & casted to 32 therthe al that he recounted of the sarasyns / had grete anger in his herte and came nygh at hym / and with an archegaye or dart launched at hym, by suche strengthe that the dart entred so depe into hys body 36
that the he[ft] of it was sene at the back syde of hym. That doon the kynge Federyk that felt the dystresse of deth myght no more hold hym self up ryght, but fell & reversed deedef from his hors to the ground. Thence was his peple full heuy and doloant, and withdrew them self anoone, and reentred into the town & shetted the gates after them. And thence byganne the sorowe 8 to be grete in the town al about.

Cap. XXXI. How the kynge of Craco dide do take the body of kynge Federyke that he had slayn and commanded it to be brent.

1 The king of Craco thence glad & joyous for cause of kynge Federyke's deth, commanded the corps to be brought byfore the gate, & there to be brent for to haue abasshed the more pemen of the Cite, seyng theyre king 16 in a fyre. Whan the Cyteseyns & commynalte of praghe knew the deth of theire kynge / and the grete tyrannye of Z[el]odyus, they made grete sorowe / but in especial the pucelle Eglantyne, his doughtir, was sorowful in herte, and so pyteously bewaylled and lamented, that grete pyte it was to here & see / sayeng such or semblable wordes : 'Ha / god ! who might conforte me when I see my faders deth byfore me, & the total dys-24 comfyturie of hys peple, & also the destruction of my self; For I see no way wherby myght come ony socoure vnto me, For I haue herd say that myn vnclle, the kynge of Anssay, on whom I trusted more than to 28 all 2 other men in the world, hath be dyscomfyted tofore Lucembourgh. Ha, veray god ! creautur of Creatures, I ne wote other refugge for me for to escape the tyraunt Z[el]odyus handes than the mercyful bosom 32 of your grace to hyde me therin. O ryght noble, ryght puyssaunt, & ryght excellent pryncesse! virgyne & moder of god! Marye, my lady & maistresse / haue which pierces his body through and through.

1 fol. 130.

Zelodius com-
mands Fre-
derick's body
to be burnt.

The citizens of Prague are sor-
rowful for the
death of their
king.

His daughter,
the maid Eglan-
tine, piteously
mourns her
father's death,

2 fol. 130 b.

and calls on the
Virgin Mary.
A PROPOSAL TO CAPITULATE. [CH. XXXI.

compassion on me! pourre orphenyn & faderles. Certainly the pacelle Eglantyne bewayed, syghed, & complayneed so piteously that no personne beheld her / but they were of pyte constrained to wepe how hard that there hertes had be, For in her anguysshe & sorowe she made none ende, but euer she wept & rendred teeris habundau7tly. Thence the commynaltee of the toune, sore agast and timerous, were in propos 8 & wylle for to yeld the toune & themself ouer to the kyng Z[el]odyus, but made them to be requyred & admonusted1 therof / shewing to them how they myght not long endure nor withstand ayenst his grete puys-12 saunce / & that theire CateH & goodes shuld be saued to them / but yf he toke theire Cyte byforce, he shuld make þem bothe theire wyues & children to be brent al to asshis, as theire kyng was. Wherfore the cyte 16 henge in balaunce to be delyuered & gyuen ouer to the Sarasyns. But emonge other were there two good men, true & aunycyent kniglite, that said in this manere: 'False peuple, what wyl you now doo, yet is not the messager come agayn that rode toward the king of Anssay for socour, take courage & comfort your self, For within short space of tyme ye shal here good tydnynges / thinke that ye be Cristen / & that 24 Criste shal helpe vs or it be long.' And whan they herd hym so speke they were aH recomforted, & ansered to the paynemes ambaxatours that they shuld never yeld them ouer vnto the last 2mans lyf of aH 28 them. And whan the kyng Zeloydyns knewe theire wyll, he was wood angry & sorrowful, & swere his goddes that he shuld putte al on fyre. /

The kyng3 Zeloydyns was mouyd to yre & grete 32 anger for thansuer of the commynalte of Pragh, wherfor he scarmysshed them sore, & gaf grete sawtes to theire Cite, but the noble and valyaunt men that

1 Fr. faisoit remonstrer. 3 kynge of: MS.
were within defended it strongly. I wyll now retourne to speke of the Duc anthony and of hys brother Regnauud, of the kyng of Anssay / and also of Ode, Duc 4 of Banyere, whiche conduyted theyre oost, & marched fourth hastily, For they had tydlinges of the myserye that they of the Cite were in / but nothing they knew of the deth of kyng Federyke. And on a thursday at 8 euen, they lodge themself nygh to a grete ryuere, a leghe & a half fro the Cite of Pragh / and that same euen was a knight of that same Countree that was in theire felawship commanded that on the morn he 12 shuld anounce their commyng to them of the Cite / and he on the morn erly mounted on hys hors, and toke his way toward the Cite / and after a grete sawte was seased for fawte of daylight, he cam vnto a lytel 16 posterne / and they of the garde there knew hym anone, and lete hym entre the town / and as soone as he was entred he rode softly along by the gardes, cryeng alowde in this manyere: 'Lorde, defende you wel, For here 20 commeth the floure of knighthode to your socours & helpe with the kyng of Anssay, & anoone ye shal see them bygynne the bataylle / and be a good chere, For on my hed not one Sarasyn shal escape, but he be 24 deed or take.' And when they understode hym, they bygane to make such a Cry, & so lowde, that it was wonder to here sayeng: 'Lawde & thanking be to god almighty prof.' And thence theyemployed them self, 28 & defended so valiantly, that no sarasyn durst no longer abyde nygh the waH a bowe shotte / & many paynemes were theane slayne, in so moche that the dyches watre was as tourned & dyed with theyre blood. 32 And when Zelodyus sawe the grete & courageous defense of them of the toune he was abasshed, & meruayled moche of theire joyfull contenaunce. / Thenne when Zelodyus perceyued that his folke 36 withdrew them self thus backward, he was
sorrowful & dolaunt, & had grete mervelyle, why & wherfore they of the toun were of so corageous defense more then in other sawtes tofore gyuen / but soon after hys doleure & sorowe encreeced much more, For 4 anthony approched in fayre aray. He, & Regnald hys brother, conduyted the first batayl; and the kynge of Anssay, & his Cousin the duc of Bavyere, led the aryer garde. There had ye seen fayre companye of 8 gentilmen in good aray / the baners & standarts dys-played / helmets & salades wel garnysshed with fyn gold & syluer, which resplendysshed ful clere / And so they cam & sawe the Cite that the paynemes assayled, 12 & gaff grete sawte & sawe theire tentes & paullons, where were grete nombre of sarasyns. Thenne made Anthony his folk to tary and be styl a while, tyl the aryer-garde were nygh to them / and ordeyned archers 16 & crosbowes to be vnder the wynges of hys batayl. and thenne they were apperceyued, & and seen of the paynemes, which went & made knowlege therof to theire kynge, sayeng in this manyere: 'Sire, leue the 20 sawte, that in an euyl heoure was bygonne / wete it that such a multitude of Cristen peple be commynge hitherward that aH the feldes be covered with.' When Zelodyus vnderstode these tydymes he was woode wroth, & grety abasshed, and lefte the sawte, and made the trompettes to sowne the retrayte, & that every man shuld assemble togidre vnder hys banere, he thenne ordeyned his bataillies as he coude best. 28 And Anthony commanded hys trompettes to be sowned for to bygyyne the batayl / and they approched the paynemes, keping good ordynance. Thenne bygan the shotte to be grete & thikk as snowe in the ayer / and syn the men of armes medled togidre, and entred one upon other, & valyautly brake spere, & ouerthrew eche other as it happe. The Cristen faught corageously / and the paynemes withstode & susteyned theire
grete strokes manfully. There was many sarasyne re-

versed to thertli & slayn. Wel assayed the poyteynys

them self, & dyde grete faytte of armes vpon theire

4 enemyes. But the king** Zelodyus putte his sheld to-

fore his brest, & held his spere alowe, and broched

his hors with the sporys, & rane vpon the Crysten;

and aftir hym folowed xv Mt paynemes. Zelodius

8 dide there grete merueyHe of armes, and ouerthrew

many a Cristen to therthe, & gretyly dommaged them.
For his folke that folowed at back syde of hym faught

merynaylyssons. Themne cryed the kyng** Zelodius his

12 baner: 'Lorde, barons, auaunce, the journey is oure,

For they may not vs escape;' And they of poytou

receyued them moch hardlyly, and wete it wel that

there was grete losse of peple of bothe the partyes.
16 Themne came due Anthony with the swerd** in his

fyst / and whan he perceyued his peple recule a lytel,

nygli he deyed for sorowe / and cryed: 'Lusynen!'

with a high voys, and putte hym emong the sarasyens

20 more hastyfully than thundre falleth fro heuen, and

faught & smote on eche syde vpon his enemyes, and

ouerthrew all them that he recounted. And his peuple

followed at back syde of hym that were al wondred of

24 his grete fayttes & valyauntnes, For there ne was so

hardy a sarasyen put durst hym abye / but fledd &

reculed vnto theire tentes. And this seyng the king**

Zelodius, he cryed: 'auaunt, lordes & barons, and

28 defend you / how is that for one man alone that ye

flee / it is to you grete shame.' And aftir these wordes

he retorned, & assembled his peple ayen togidre, and

gaaf grete batayl mortal vnto anthony & the poyteynys.

32 Themne came thadmyral with ten thousand** fighting

men / and thenne enforced the batayH ryght horryble,
For there were many of the sarasyens slayn and sore

hurt.

Zelodius with a great host rushes on the Christians,
and greatly hurts them,

and cries 'the day is ours.'

1 fol. 132 b.

Anthony sees his people re-
treating; he
cries 'Lusignan,'
and falls on the
Saracens like
thunder from
heaven.

The Saracens flee.

The admiral arrives with ten
thousand men.
Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slayn in bataylle.

1 Thenne came the ryerward that the kinge of Ans-
say and the Dœ Ode conduyted put entred 4
vygourously into the bataylH, where was grete occysyon,
For the bataylH was mortal on bothe partes. And vpon
that arryued Anthony & Regnauld, that entred by one
assent vpon the sarasyns, making suche occysyon that 8
there ne was sarasyn ne Cristen, but he meryaylled of
pe meryayllous strokes that they gaf. And in con-
clusyon there was none so hardly a sarasyn that durst
withstan<em> them, For wher someuer they sawe them 12
they feldd, and so strongly fought the cristen / that
the sarasyns tourned theire back, puttyng<em> them self
to flight / but the kyng Zelodyus valy-auntly encouraged
and reteyned them togidre. And wete it wel that he dide 16
grete dommage to the Crysten. But whan Regnauld
perceyued the king<em> Zelodius, that rendred so grete a
stoure & bataylH mortaH to hys folke / he swere that
he shul<em> dye or he shuld deluere the place fro the 20
sarasyns / Thenne tourned he the targe behynde and
sporyd his hors by grete yre and came vpon the king<em>
of Craco. And whan Zelodyus the kyngge sawe hym
come he hauen<em> hys swerd<em> and smote hym vpon his 24
helmet / but his swerd<em> glenced doune by the lyfte
syde vnto his thye, & hurted hym in such manere that
the blood rane vnto his foote / And thenne Regnauld
put was faH dolaunt, with bothe handes lyfte vp his 28
swerde and smote the kyngge Zelodyus vpon the helmet
with so grete yre that he was therwith astonyed, in so
moche that the swerd<em> fell out of his hand<em> and bowed
vpon his hors neck, and therwith brake the taches of 32
his helmet. And thenne Regnauld retorned <em> smote
hym ayen, and charged hym with so many hydouse
strokes that he moste nedes parforce faH to therth.
And fourthwith was the prees grete aboute hym bothe of horses & men / but hys peple came & socoured hym fro the horses feet / but in conclusyon they coude not obteyne nor hym ayde / but he was slayne. And when the sarasyns sawe that they went to flight / And the cristen peple pursiewed hem manfully and slough them bothe in feild & in wodes. And wete it wel 8 that there escaped but few, and thus was the batayll fynysshed. And this don the Cristen lodged them in the tentes of the sarasyns. And the two brethern / the king of Anssay and the Duc Ode departed with 12 a C. 1 knyghtes with them toward the Cite, where as they were nobly receyued, For the Citezeyns had so grete Joye of the vctorye that they hadde wonne vpon the sarasyns. And thenne came they & descended at 16 the palays ryaff. Thenne came the pucelle Eglantyne and recounted her vnkle the king of Anssay and all his barons.

Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius & the other saracyns were brent and bruyleld.

The pucelle Eglantyne was themne joyfull & glad for the dyscomfytuere of the paynemes and also of the commyng of her uncle. But not withstanding she had sorowe at herte for the kynge, her faders deth, that she might not forget it. And neuertheles, whan she cam byfore her vnkle she enclyned & honourably made to hym her obeyssauce, sayeng: 'My right dere vnkle, ye be right welcome / played god that ye were arrayed two 2dayes rather, For thenne ye had found my fader on lyue, whiche Zelodius hath slayne & made to be brent & bruled to the moost vytipere & 32 shame of the Catholycal feyth.' And whan the kynge of Anssay vnderstoode it he was wroth & dolaunt, and swore that thus and in suche wyse shuld he do of the

and though Zelodius' people come to defend their king,

Regnald slays him.

The Saracens then flee; many are slain,

and but few escape.

The Christians take the camp of the Saracens.

The brethern enter the town.

She welcomes her uncle, the King of Anssay,

and tells him how Zelodius has burnt her father's body.

He swears
to treat the Saracens the same way.

Their bodies are laid in a heap, and are burnt; but the bodies of the Christians receive Christian burial.

The King of Assay is woful for his brother's death.

He has the cathedral prepared for his brother's obsequies:

and goes toward the Saracens camp,

where the brethren were dividing the spoil.

The King of Assay tells how his brother was slain and his body burnt, and how he burned the Saracens.

kynge Zelodius and of all the sarasyns, that he coude fynde done or alyue. And anoon were cryees made through the toun, that of euerie hous one man shuld goo in to the feeld for to assemble the deed bodyes of the 4 sarasyns togidre vpon a mountayne, and that men shuld bryng thither wood ynoough for to brule & bréne the corps. And thus it was don. And was the corps of Zelodyus sette vpon a stake so that it was seen abone 8 al other / And so was the fyre grete about them / and so they were al brent & bruled / and all the deed bodyes of the cristen men that were found were buryed there as cristen people ought to be. And these thinges 12 doon, the kyng of Assay made al thing to be redy for to make thosbsequeye of the king his brother, and that moche honourably as it is shewed herafter. /

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that wooful & sory 16 was the kyng of Assay for the deth of his brother / but syth it plesed god to be so he lefte & passed his deuel the best wyse that he coude. Thappareyl was theame made for the obsequie whiche was 20 don in the Chirche Cathedral of the Cite. And syn the kyng of Assay and the due of bayere mounted on horsback and many barons of behayne with them, and al clothed in black went toward the sarasyns tentes, 24 where the two brethren were whiche had do cóme per all the Sommage, Cartes, Charyotes, & bagage, And syn departed among theire peuple all that they had wonne vpon the paynemes /. Themne arryued there 28 the kyng the Assay, the due Ode, and all the baronnye and nobly salued the two brethren, And the due Anthony, & Regnauld his brothe recyued them joyfully. Themne reccounted the kyng of Assay to be 32 two brethren how the kyng solederyk was slayn in the baytyayH, and how Zelodyus had made hys body to be brent in despyt of all cristianyte / and therfore he had doo like wise of Zelodyus body & of all the sarasyns 36
that were founde al ye or deed. And Anthonye penne 
anseyr, 'On my feyth ye haue don right wel / and 
veryly kyng Zelodius mysdede onermoche grete cruelte, 
4 For syn a man is deed / grete shame is to hys enemy 
to touche hym ony more.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said 
the due of Banyere, 'ye say trouth, but the kinge of 
Aussay is come hither to you for to beseche you & 
yor brother to come to the obsequye of the kyng Federyke 
his brother.' And thenne anssay the 
bretherne, 'we shal thither goo gladly.' Thenne they 
mounted on hors back & rode toward the Cite, where 
a the ladyes and damoyselles, knightes & squyres / 
cytyzeyns & commynnalte beheld them fayne and mer-
uaylled moche of the Lyons clawe that shewed in 
Anthonyes cheke / and preysed moche his fayre & wel 
16 shappen body, and also of Regnauuld hys brother / and 
said emong themself, 'these two bretheren ben able for 
to subdue al the world.' And thus they came to the 
chirch where thobsequye shuld be made and there 
20 alyghted.

Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were 
at buryeng and obsequye of kyng Federyk of behayne.

24 Eglantine that was in the Circh came and re-
countred the two bretheren, whom she made hum-
bly her obeyssaunce, thankyng them mekely of theire 
noble socours that they had doo to her, For they had 
28 saued her honoure, her lyf, and her land. And theanne 
anthony anssay humbly to her, sayeng, 'Damoyselle, 
2 We haue nought doo but that we ought to doo, For 
eyvery good cristen is hold & bound aftir the playssire 
32 of god toppresse & dystroye themenyes of God.' The 
pucelle was there nobly acompanyed of the ladyes & 
damoyselles of the land, thobsequye was honourably &
After the service, which is nobly done, the brethren convey Eglantyne to the palace, where they have dinner.

The King of Ansay calls the barons of the land, and tells them they must take counsel how to govern the kingdom.

They say that in his presence they must not speak.

1 fol. 130 b.

He advises them to marry their lady.

They ask the king to seek her a worthy man.

nobly doon as it apparetyned to suche a noble kyng as he was. And after the seruyse fynysshed the two bretheren mounted on theire horses, and theire mayne also, and conveyed the pucelle Eglantyne vnto the paleys where they descended, & syn mounted in to the hal where the tables were redy covered / and them they wesshe theire handes & satte at dyner / and syn were nobly seruyd & festyed / and after dyner the tables 8 were voyed & take vp & wesshe handes / and syn they conveyed Eglantyne vnto her chambre, pat was ever sorowful for her faders deth. And the king of Ansay called to hym al the barouyne of the land, & 12 said to them in this manyere:

"Lordes, barons, ye muste Cousenys Dabei among you, & take your best aduys how ye myght have a valyaunt man for to gourne the royaume, For the land which is in the guydyng & gouernance of a woman only is not surely kept. Now, loke them what best is for the prouffyt & honour of my cousyne Eglantine, & for pe common wele of this land." Thenne answered 20 one for them alle & sayd: 'Sire, we knowe none that oughte to medle hymself therwith tofore you, For yf your Cousyn were passed out of this mortal lyf, that god forbede, al the royaume of Dehayne shuld appar teyne to you. Wherfore we al bes[c]he you that therto ye puruey after your play sire.' Thenne answered the king, & thus said: 'Sire, as touching my persone, I may not long abyde with you to be rewler & protectour of this land, For thanked be god I haue land ynoyche to entretayne myn estate with / but in conclusyon lete my cousyn take some valiaunt man to her lord, that shall defende the land ayenst the enemies of god.' Thenne ansered the barons fourthe with, 'Sire, yf it plaise you pat your Cousyn be maryed, seke for her some noble & worthy man to be her lord & our, For tofore you none of vs oughte to medle withaH.' Thenne 36
ansuerd the kyng in this manere, 'We thenne shal purueye therto to her honour & proffyt & to yours also / and that anoone, For I go to speke with her for 4 this cause.' The kyng thenne departed and came in to the Chambre where his Cousin was, that moche humbly receyued hym. And the kyng said to her in this manere, 'Fayre cousyne, thankyng to god your assayres 8 be now in good party, For your land is deluyere& fro the paynemes by the puyssaunce of god & of the two brethern of Lusynen. Now it muste be aduyseyd & sene how best your reaume may be guyded in good 12 gouvernance to your proffyt & honour, and of your people also.' Thenne ansuerd the mayden, 'My right dere vncl, I ne haue noon of CousyynH & comfort but you / so I requyre you that of good reme dy ye pur-16 uye therto. And conuenable & lawful it is that I obey you more than any other personne in the world, & so wyl I doo.' Thenne had the kyngge pite on 1her & said, 'Fayre Cousyn, we haue alredy purueyed 20 therto / ye muste be maried to suche a man that can kepe and deffende you & your land & ayenst alle enemyes, the which is fayre, noble, & valyaunt damoyseau, & not ferre hens.' 'Certaynyly,' ansuerd the pucelle. 24 'Dere vncl, wel I knowe for certayn that ye wold neuer CousyynH me pat thing4 but it were to my grete honour & profit, and for the commyn wele of all my land / but ryght dere vncl, I to be maried so soone 28 after my faders decesse / shuld not shewe semblauant of duyeH for his deth. Wherfor me semeth I were blamed to doo soo / and suche shuld shew to me fayre semblauant before me,2 that wold moke me at a pryvy 32 place /.'

To that ansuerd the king, & said: 'My right fayre Cousyn, of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had. But, fayre

2 Fr. qui en tendroit mains de compte derrière.
He would like to 
wait to be at her 
wedding,
but he lives afar 
off.

Then the 
brethren must 
be rewarded,

but half of her 
kingdom would 
not be sufficient 
for this, 
1 fol. 187 b. 
and she is not 
worthy to have 
Reginald as 
her lord,

Then the maid 
was ashamed,

and told her 
uncle to do 
with her and her 
knight as she 
thought best.

The King bids 
her cease weep-
ing.

He goes to the 
brethren,

Cousyn, it is well trouth, that who myght goodly tary 
the day of your weddyng; it were your honour / but 
what, FAyre Cousyn, my dwelling place is ferre hens / 
and here I may not make long soiourne, without my 4 
grete dommage, as wel of other mens goods as of 
ymyn. Also the two bretheren most be recompenséd & 
rewarded of theire noble socours, outhre of my goodes 
or of yours / and some saith that bettre is to have 8 
more of prouffyt & lasse honour. And to say that ye 
coude recompense them as they oughte to be, by raision 
of the grete curtoysye by them shewed vnto you; the 
half of your royame shuld not suffise. And over 12 
more, FAyre Cousyne, wete it that ye be not to suffys-
saunte 1 for to haue suche & so noble a man to your 
lord as is Regnauld of Lusynen, For in ceretyn he is wel 
worthy to marie the gretest lady in the world. What 16 
for his noble lynee, as for his bounte, beaute, & noble 
prowesse. Whan the noble pucel Eglyntyne vnder-
stode the kyng her vncle, she was shamful & hontous / 
and on that other part, she consyderyng the daunger 20 
where bothe she & her peple had be & myght be wyst 
neuer what to say, and bygane to wepe / but at last 
she ansered in this manere: 'right dere vncle, all my 
trust, my hoop & comfort is in god & in you, wherfor 24 
doo with me & with my reume what it playse you' / 
'FAyre Cousyn,' said the kyng, 'ye say right wel / and 
I swere you by my feyth, that nothing I shal say in 
this party ne doo, but that it shal be for the best. 28 
Now thanne, noble Cousyne, seace your wepyng; & 
delyuere you of this affayre, For the more long that 
these baronye with their peple that be in nombre xv. 
M. be soiournyng in your lande the greter dommage 32 
shal ye haue.' And she that wel knewe he said trouth, 
ansered to hym in this manere: 'Dere vncle, doo ther-
of al your playsyre.' Thanne came the kyng in to 
the grete halle where the two bretheren were, & the 36
baronye with them, and said to Anthony in this manyere: 'noble Duc, vouchesaf to understand my wordes, the barons of this land that be here present, 

besech your good grace / & as touching my self, I hertyly praye you that it plesse you, that Regnauld your brother be king of this royale, and that he take Eglantyne my Cousyn to his lady / prayeng hym that he this wyl not refuse, For the barons of the land desire hym moche to be theire lord.' 'Sire,' answert Anthony, 'this requeste is worthy to be granted, & also shal it be. Doo hither come the noble damoy-

And fourthwith the kynge the Duc Ode yede & fette the pucelle, and despoyled her of her dueyl & black clothing: / and syn was arayed ful rychely of her noblest raymentes, and accompanied

with her ladyes & damoyelles, she was conueyed by the forsaid lorde into the presence of the noble bretheren, whiche merueyld moche of her grete beaute / and she humbly enclynd before them, mak-

ving her obeyssance. Thenne bygan the king of Anssay to speke, & thus said /

Noble Duc of Lucsembourgh, holde ye to vs your couenenauntes; this is wherof we wyl holdoure

promesse.' 'For sooth,' said Anthony, 'it is wel reason. come hither Regnauld brother, receyue this pucelle to your lady, For she maketh you kynge of behayne.' Thenne said Regnauld, in her-year of alle that were

there present / 'thankyng' be to god, to the kynge, & to all the baronye of this lande, of the grete honour that they doo to me. For ye thys noble pucelle had not one foot of land, yet wold I not refuse her loue

to haue her to my lady, after the lawes of god re quyren. For with thayde of almighty god, I hoop to conquer ynough to hold & entreteyn therwith her noble estate' / 'Fayre brother,' said penne anthony / 'ye say raison / this royaume ye haue worne already / god yeue
Anthony hopes that he will. The bishop comes and affiances Regnauld and Eglantine; after that the feast is great, and the townsfolk make much joy. [Ch. XXXV.]

Anthonij hopes that lie will. The bishop comes and affiances Regnauld and Eglantine; after that the feast is great, and the townsfolk make much joy. [MS. the the]

2 fol. 138 b.
Rich robes are made for the ladies.

The maid is led to the tents,
good watch is set, and a good supper is served
before bedtime.

you grace to subdue & conquer other reames & landes upon her enemies.' And in conclusioryon, the bysshop was sent for, & assured them togidre. And syn bygane the 1 feest sumptuous & grete, For soone it was knownen 4 through al the toun, wherof the peple made grete joye / and were the stretes hanged with ryche clothes, & grete & noble apparayls was there made, as to suche a feste apperteyned / and was ordeyned that the weddyng 8 shuld be hold in the field within the chief pavilion. Many riche rayments & robes were made what for the spouse / as for the ladyes & damoyselles. That nyght passed, and on the morne on which day they shuld 12 be espoused / the pucelle nobly was conueyed & ledd vnto the tentes, whiche were al of cloth of golde / And that night was good watche made as pe enemies had be nygh to them / and there the feste encressed, & 16 were honourably servyd at souper. And whan tyme was, every one went to bed vnto the morow erly, when Aurora shone clere. /

Cap. XXXV. How Regnauld espoused 20 Eglantyne, daughter to the kyngge of Behayne. /

At day spring many ladies accompany the spouse to mass.

2 fol. 139.
where the bishop solemnly espouses Regnauld and Eglantine. They return to the pavilion to dine.

Here sheweth thisistorye, & sayth that when the day spryng appecred, & the day was ful fayre & clere, 24 the spouse nobly & rychely arayed in her robes of cloth of gold, & fourred with Ernynes, & purfylled al with precious stones, accompanied with grete nombre of ladyes & damoyselles, was right honourably conueyed 28 vnto the place where as the masse shuld be sayd; and solemnly the bysshop espoused them here / and aftir the masse, she returned to the panyllon with al the noble baronye with her, where they fom al apparylled 32 & redy to dyner. They were ful wel & nobly servyd of al things that to suche a feste be requysite & con-
uenable. And after they had dyned, graces were said, & wesshe their handes, and syn were the tables voyded, thanne bygane they to daunce & to make grete joye.

Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquiers jousted after dyner.

Thistorye sayth that after the daunce was seaced the ladyes & damoyselles mounted vpon the scafoldes. Thezene cam the knightes rychely armed, & bygan to jouste / trompettes sowned, & knightes reuersed eche other / but none might withstand the noble bretheren, but he was overthrow, bothe hors & man / so that no man dide there nought to the regarde of theire prowes. Wherfore, they seyng that the ioustes affeablysshid for cause of them, they departed fro the lyses & toke of their armeures / and syn dured the jousting tyl tyme of souper came. And thezene the joustes seaced, and the knightes & squyers departed, & went & dysarmed them. Thezene mynestrels with dyuerse Instruments of musique sowned & played melodously the first cours of the souper / & syn they were nobly serued of al maner wynes / and after souper they daunced. But whan tyme was, the spouse was ledd to bed with grete honour & Joye. And anone after came Regnauel there, whiche went to bed with the pucelle. Thezene voyded every one the chamber / some to theire rest / some retourned to the daunce / some sang, & other made grete reueyll. Regnauel, thezene that laye nigh Eglantyne, swetly embraced & kyssed her / and she to hym moche humbled her self, sayeng in this manere:

'My lord redoubted, ne had be the grace of god / your curtoysye & prowes, this poure orphelym had be / no doubt of / exilled, desolat, & lost. Wherfor, my ryght redoubted lord, I yeld thankyng to god, & to you also

MELUSINE.
and thanks him for making her his wife.

Regnald declares she has done more for him than he for her.

He beggeth Olyphart, who became famous for deeds of arms.

In the morning before dinner letters are brought to Anthony from Christine which tell of the birth of a fair son.

that hau e dayned to take to your wyf her that was unworthy therto.' 'By my fayth,' said Regnauld, 'dere herte, & my best beloncd, ye hau e do moche more for me than ever I dide me possible is to me to doo for yoo / sene & consydered the noble yfte youen by you to me / that is your noble lady / and yet besyde that of your noble royame ye hau e endowed me / and with me nought ye hau e take / sauf only my symple body.' Thenne answere Eglantyne, & said / 'Ha / noble lord, your valyant body is derer to me & better worth than ten other suche royames as myn is / & more it is to be preyed.' Of theire wordes 1 wyf 12 seace / but that nyght was begoten of them a noble sone that was named Olyphart / he made in tyme afterward grete fayttes of armes, and subdued & gate al the low marche of holland & Zeland, Vtreghyt, & the 16 Royame of Danemarche / and al the partyes of Northweghe also. On the morne the day was fayre & clere. Thenne was the noble lady Eglantyne led to here the masse / and al the baronye, ladyes & damoyselles, accom 20 panyed her thitherward. And after the mass was doo, they retourne to the ryche paunyllon / and as they were redy to sette pen at dyner / came there two knightis fro Lucemboorgh, that brought lettres to Duc Anthony 24 from the Duches Crystyne his wyf / the whiche after theire obeyssance honourably made, said to hym in this wise: 'My lord, ye oughte to take grete joye / For my lady the Duches is brought to bed of the most 28 fayrest sone that ever was seen in no land.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said anthony, 'blessid be god therof / and ye be right welcome to me' / & syn toke the lettres.

Thistorye sayth that anthony, Duc of Lucem 32 bourgh, was joyful & glad of these tydynges, and so was his brother Regnauld. Thenne opened he the lettres, wherof the tenour was aording to that the knightes had said. Thenne made anthony moche of 36
them, gruuyng to them grete yeftes of ryches. Thenne
he satte hym at dyner nygh to Eglantyne / and dured
the feest eyght days, sumptuouse & open houshold.
4 And whan the feste was fynyshed, they reentred in to
the Cite with gret honour & joye. And on the morne
next the kyng of Anssay / Anthony & the Duc Ode, &
al theire baronye toke theire leue of 1 Regnauld & of
8 Eglantyne, whiche were dolaunt of theire departing.
And anthony made coïnenaunt with Regnauld his
brother, that yt the paynemes made mony moo werre
with hym, he shalde come & aHH his baronye with hym
12 to ayde & helpe hym. And the kyng 2 Regnauld thanked
hym mochi. And eche of them thanked & kyssed eche
other at departyng 3 / Soo longe marched thoost that they
came to Mouchyne 4 in Banyere / & lodged them in a
16 fayre medowe nygh the toun. There the Duc Ode
festyled them right honourably the space of thre dayes /
and on the fourteth day they departed & toke theire
leue of the Duc Ode / and rode so long tyl [they] 5
20 came a day journey nygh to Coloyne. And there the
foure knyghtes that conduyted the Coloyners announced
them self byfore Duc Anthony, & to him said in this
manere: 'My lord, it is best that we hast vs byfore
24 you toward the toun, to apparyH & make al thing
reedy for your passage.' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc
Anthony, 'that playseth me wel.' Thenne departe
d the foure knyghtes & theire men with them, & rode
28 tyl they came to the Cite of Coloyne, where they were
receyued with Joye / and the Cytezeyns & gouernours
of the cyte demanded of them how they had exployted
in theire voyage / And they recounted to them aHH the
32 trouth of the fayte and the vallyantnes & noble prowes
of the two brethern / & how regnauld was made kyng
[of] Behayne. And whan they of Coloyne 4 understode
them they were rytgh glad & joyous, sayeng they

2 Fr. Muchin. 3 MS. has day.
were well happy & courteous to have acquired the love of such nobles, and the theme they made great appearance for to receive the Duc Anthony, and the king of Ansay with their barony. Soo long rode those that they came to Coloyne, where the Cytezeysns cam & met them honourably, and to the princes they made great reverence, praying them that they would be lodged that night within the town, where they were nobly festyed & honourably served at supper. And on the morrow Anthony & his oost passed over the Ryn, and take his leave of them of Coloyne, which he thanked moche, 12 sayeng: 'if they were in any wise oppressed by their enemies he would be ever ready for tayde & succour them after his power.' Whereof they thanked hym moche. 

The theme the Duc Anthony & the king of Ansay dyde so moche by their journeys, that on an even they came & lodged them in the meadow night by Luxembourgh. /

Christine is joyful at her lord's return.

2 fol. 141 b.

The duchesse Cristyne was replenished with joye, 20 when she knew the comming of her lord anthony / and immediately she, nobly accompanied, issued out of the town / and all the noble cyteseyns followed her to meet with their lord, the whiche they recounted a half a mile from the town. What shall I say / greater joye was never seen than that was made for the return of Duc Anthony. The Duchesse made humbly her obedience unto hym / and hertily welcomed hym. 28 The people cried on hie for Joye, sayeng thus: 'welcomme our lord ryght redoubted.' The joye was grete throug the town where the Duc festyed the kyndge of Ansay by the space of six days continually, & for-32 gaf & rendred to hym all his obligations, and had hym quytte / except the Foundation of the priory, where as sowles shuld be prayed for / for the love of Regnault

1 Fr. cures.
his brother. And the kinge of Anssay thanked hym moche, & toke his leue of hym / departed, & came in Anssay, where as he was rec eyued with joye / And the 4 Duc anthony abode with the Duchesse Cristyne, on whom he gate a sone that same yere which was clepid Locher, whiche afterward deleyuered the Countrey of Ardane fro theys, murderers, & robbeurs; and in the 8 wodes there he founded an abbeye, and endowed it with grete pocessyons / And he also dyde doo make the bridge of Masyeres vpon the ryuere of Meuze, and many other fortresses in the basse marche of holland, / 12 and dyde many fayre fayttes of armes with the kinge Olyphart of behayne, that was his Cousyn, & sone to kyng Regnauld. It happed not long after the kyng of Anssay was returned in to his royame, that warre 16 menyd betwix hym & the Duc of austeryche & the [Erle] of Fyerbourough. wherfor he besought the Duc Anthony for socour, that gladly obtempered to his requeste, in so moche that he toke by force of armes 20 the Erle of Fyerbourgh / and syn passed in Austeryche, where he dyscomfyted the Duc in batayl, and made hym to be pacyfied with the kyng of Anssay, to the grete prouffyt & honour of the kinge. And bertrand 24 theldest sone of the Duc Anthony, was assured with Melydee the sayd king's of Anssays daughter / the whiche Bertrand afterward was kyng of ansay, and hys brother Locher was Duc of Lucembourg, after 28 the deceesse of the Duc Anthony hys fader. But of this matere I wyl no more speke at this tyme / but shal retourne to speke of Melusyne & of Raymondyne, and of theire other children. / 32 Now sayth thystorye, that Raymondyne by hys no- blenes & grete vasselage conquers grete countrees / and to hym many barons dyde homage vnto the land of Brytayne. And Melusyne had two yere after 36 that two sones, the first was named Froymond, that

Anssay thanks him, and after- wards returns to his country.

Anthony begets Locher, who frees Ar- dennes from thieves, and builds for- tresses, and does feats of armes along with his cousin Oli- phart of Bo- hemia.

The King of Anssay asks the help of Anthony against his ene- mies.

1 fol. 142

Anthony assists him.

Bertrand is as- sured to Melyde, the daughter of the King of Anssay.

Raymondin con- quers great coun- tries, and many barons do hom- age to the land of Brittany.

Melusine bears two sons, Froym-

mond,
entierly lounyd holy Chirch, and that was wel shewed in his ende, For he was professi<ref>1</ref> monke in to thabbye of Maillezes, wherof there beseth a grete & an horryble myschief, as ye shal here herafter by thystorye / and the other child that they had the yere folowyng was named Theodoryk, the whiche was ryght batayllous. Here I shal love to speke of the two children / and I shal shewe you of Geffray with the grete tothi, that 8 was yrous & hardy / & most enterpyrse ride of al hys bretheren. And wete it wel that the said geffray doubted neuer man / And thystorye 1 sheweth, & the true Cronykle that he fought ayenst a knight, that was 12 gendred with a spyryte in a medowe nygh by Lusynen, as ye shal here herafter. It is trouth that themne Geffray was grete & overgrowsen / and herde tydyinges that there was in Garande peple that wold not obey to 16 hys fader / themne sware Geffray by the good lord that he shal make them to come as reason requyreth, and to do that he toke leue of hys fader, that was right wroth of hys departyn / and had with hym to the 20 nombre of fyue houndred men of armes, and a houndred balesters, and so went in to Garande / and anoone enquyred after them that were dysobedyent / and they that held the party of Raymondyyn shewd hym the 24 Fortresse where they were, & armed them to goo with hym to helpe to dystroye hys enemies. ' By my feyth, fayre lorde,' sayd Geffray with the grete tooth / ' ye are ryght true & loyal people / & I thanke you of 28 thonour that ye profire me / but as for this tyme present I shall not nede you, For I haue men of armes ynough for tacomplyssshyn enterpyrse.' ' For soothe, sire, ye haue more to doo than ye suppose, For your 32 enemys ben ryght strong & of meruayllous courage, & they be frendes & cousyns, and of the grete & moost noble blood of al the Countree.' ' Fayre sires,' said Geffray, ' doubte you not, For thurghte thayde of god 36
omnipotent I shal the matere \(^1\) wel redresse. And wete it wel there shal be none so myghty / but I shal make them to obeye my commandement or to deye of an enyl deth. And also, rayre lordes & true frendes, yf I nede you I shal send for you’ / And they anwerd, ‘we are now al redy, and also shal we be at al tymes that it playse you vs to calle.’ ‘Fayre lordes,’ said Geffray with 8 the grete toth / ‘that ought to be thanked for.’ Thezne toke Geffray hys leue of them / and went forth on his way toward a Fortresse that was called Syon / & within the same was one of the enemies of geffray that hight 12 Claude of Syon, & were thre bretheren. Moche were the thre brethern yrous & proude / and wold haue subdued and putte vnder theire subjection all their neyghbours. Thezne sent geffray with the grete toth wordes 16 of defeuance / outhre to come & make their obeys-sauence to hym for Raymondyn his faders. And they ansered to the messager, ‘that for Raymondyn ner for no man on his byhalf they shulde nought doo / and that 20 he shuld no more retourne to them for this matere, for than he were a folke.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the messager, ‘I shal kepe me wel therfro / but that I bryng with me a maister in medecyne, that shal make suche 24 a lectuary or drynk wherof ye shal be poysonne?, & syn hanged by the neck.’ And of these wordes were the iij bretheren wood wroth. And wete it wel that yf the messager had not hasted his hors away he had 28 be take & deed without ony remede, For \(^2\)they were fuly rous & cruel, and doubted not god nor no man lyuyng. Thenne retourned the messager toward geffray and recounted hym the grete pryde & auautuing of the 32 bretheren. ‘By my heed,’ said Geffray with the grete toth, ‘a lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynde / & doubte you not but I shal pay them wel their wages.’

Thystorye sayth, that whan geffray vnderstode the grete pryde & the fel anserue of the thre brethern,
GEFFRAY EXAMINES THE FORTRESS OF SION. [CH. XXXVI.

without any moo wordes he came & lodged hym &
his peuple half a leghe fro the said Fortresse. Thenne
he toke his armures & armed hym of al pieces; toke
with hym a squyer that wel knew the Countrey / 4
mounted on horsback / commanded his men that they
shuld not meue them thenes vnto tyme they had word
of hym, & departed with his esquier / but there was a
knyght that wel knew hys noble & fyers courage, & 8
that he doubted nothing of the world / which toke x.
men of armes with hym and went after Geffray, folow-
yng hym fro ferre, For he moche loued geffray. Geffray
rode so long2 that he sawe the Fortresse of Syon vpon 12
a hye roche. 'By my feyth,' said thenne geffray, 'yf
the Fortresse be so strong at that other syde as it is at
this syde, hit shall gyue me moche peyne or euer it be
take, I must see & know yf it be also strong at that 16
other parte.' Thenne he & his esquier aduyronned
the Fortresse about, al along by a lytel wod, that they
might not be aspyed ne sene. They came & de-
sended1 in a valey / and euer the forsaid knyght that 20
was named Philibert2 folowed hym a ferre / and so long
rode geffray tyl he had ouer sene the said fortes al
round about / and hym semed wel that it might be
take by the brydge syde, For it was the feblest syde of 24
it / Thenne entred geffray & his esquier in a lytel
path, & retourne vpon the mountayne toward hys
lodgis, where his peple were hym abydyng. Philebert,
that sawe Geffray retourne, thought he would let hym 28
passe tofore hym, Wherfor he and his felawship reculed
within the wode, to thende thay shuld not be perceyued
of hym / but soone after they sawe a companye of men
of warre comyne that same way that geffray came 32
toward the Fortresse, and were to the nombre of xiii.
personne wel armed. Wherfore the said knight phili-
bert was abasshed & agast, lest they shuld mete with

2 Fr. Ver. Philibert de Mommoret.
geffray. For wel he wyst that geffray wold fyght with them / as he dide / and that shal ye here herafter./

In this partye, sayth this storye, that vpon the topp of the mountayne geffray recounted the said companye, And who that shuld enquire of me what folke they were; I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon bretheren that came toward his brother at his mandate. And wete it wel, that the way was there so narow that vnethe one hors myght passe by other. And whan Geffray with the grete tooth recounted them, he sayd to hym that rode first of alle that he shuld tary and make his company to stand asyde tyl he were passed the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said he that was proude & orgueyllous, 'Sire daw folke, wel we muste first knowe what ye be, that say that we retourne vs for you.' 'By god,' said Geffray with the grete toth / 'that shal you knowe anone, For I shal make you retourne ayenst your wyll. I am Geffray of Lusynen / tourne back / or elles I shal make you to retourne by force.' Whan Guyon the brother of Claude of Syon vnderstode hym & knew that it was geffray with the grete toeth / he cryed to his folk, 'auaunt, lorde barons, For yf he escape grete shame shal be to vs / in an euyl heure is he come in to oure land for to demande seruytude of vs.' Theane whan geffray vnderstode these wordes he drew out his sword & smote the nethermost of alle vpon his heed, so grete a stroke that he ouerthrew hym all astonyed dounne to the erthe, and syn passed forth by hys hors, & ouer hym that laye alon' the way, in suche wyse that he al to brusid the body of hym / And theane geffray atteyneyed another in the brest foynynge with hys sword, so that he feH dounne deed to therthe / and syn cryed aftir the opwr, 'False traytours, ye may not escape, ye shal retourne to your euyl helthe.' Thenne he passed fourth because he knows Geffray will fight them.

Geffray encounters one of Claud's brethren, and his men on a narrow road. They ask who he is. He answers, 'Geffray of Lusignan,' and bids them turn, else he will make them. Guion cries to his men not to let Geffray escape. But Geffray draws his sword and smites one of his company so hard that he is overthrown. He foils at another in the breast, and kills him.

2 Fr. dämp musart.
to the iii\textsuperscript{rd}, which was grete \& strong, \textsuperscript{1} \& smote Geffray 
on the helmet with all his strengthe \& but the helmet 
was hard \& p\e sword\textsuperscript{e} glanced asyde \& dommaged 
hym nought \& but Geffray toke his sword\textsuperscript{e} with two 4 
handes and smote hym \non the coyffe of stele \nto the brayne, \& reuersed hym deed to the erth. And 
whan guyon perceyued this myschief he was wode 
wroth \& full of yre, For he might not come to geffray, 8 
wherfore he commanded every man to retourne, that 
they might have them self at large to defende eche 
other. Thenne every man tourned back \& fledd, \& 
yssued out of that narrow way in to a playn feld, \textit{And} 12 
geffray with the grete toth pursiewed them, the sword\textsuperscript{e} 
in his hand. \textit{Now shal} I speke of the knight philibert, which 
was approched nygh the said way, \& herde the noyse \& so he called\textsuperscript{e} to hym his felawes. 16 
And themne guyon and his men were in \p\e playn \& 
assayled geffray on al sydes of hym \& but as preu \& 
valyaunt he defendaed vygourously his fleshe \& and 
also his esquyer bare hym valyauntly \& and was ryght 20 
strong the batayl. \textit{Now most} I speke of hym which 
geffray first ouerthrew to therthe in the path forsaid, 
For whan he perceyued that guyon was retourne by 
the force of geffray \& and sawe his two felawes lyeng 24 
deed by hym, he was moche dolaunt, \& beheld\textsuperscript{2} all 
about hym \& fond\textsuperscript{e} his hors, wher on he with grete 
peyne mounted, for he was al to brasyd in hym body, \& 
hasted hym as he coude best toward Syon. And whan 28 
hem came to the fortresse he fond\textsuperscript{e} Claude at yate and 
some of his men with hym \& the whiche perceyued 
that he that was commyng toward hym was al bloody 
and knew hym wel \& of hym demanded who so had 32 
arayed hym \& And he recounted thatadventure how they 
had recounted\textsuperscript{e} geffray, and how he adommaged them 
and had made guyon hys brother to retourne fro the 
narow lane by force, \& that yet lasted theyre batayle. 36
Thenne whan Claude vnderstode hym he was sorowful & angry, and yede and armed hym, and made his men to be armed.

4 Mocche doneant was Claude whan he vnderstoode of the vyonnye & dommage that geffroy had don to Guyon his brother / and how yet they were fyghtyng togidre & armed of al pieces. his men with hym rode thitherward / and were in nombre thre score bassynets. But for nought he toke his waye, For philibert with his ten knyghtes were come to the batayH, & faught in suche wyse that al guyons meyne were slayne & he take / and soone sware Geffray that he shuld make hym to be hanged by the neck. Thenne came the said esquyer, whiche was retourned in to the forsayd land, to fette a fauyre swerd, that he tofore sawe faH fro one of Guyons men / & said to Geffray in this manyere, 'My lord, I haue herc grete bruyt of men armed commyng hitherward.' And whan Geffray vnderstode hym he fourthwith made Guyon to be bound at a tree within the woode nygh by them, & syn retourned with hys men toward the said path or lane for to abyde there his auenture. And philibert rode vnto the top of the hyH, and perceyued Claude & hys felawship that entred the lane / thanne he retourned to his felawes & sayd to Geffray, 'Sire, the best that ye can doo is to kepe wel this pathe, here com your enemyes.' And Geffray with the gret toeth ansuered / doubt ye not / but it shal be wel kept & deffended.' Thenne he called to hym the squyer that was come with hym, & said: 'renne hastily toward thooest, & make my folke to come hither.' And he anone de-parted toward thooest, and whan he was there arryued he said to hym, 'Fayre lordes, now lightly on horsback, For geffray fyghteth ayenst his enemyes.' And they armed them & soone mounted on their horses, and hasted them to folowe the squyer that guyded them Claud orders his men to arm, He rides to aid his brother, but is too late; as the men are slain and his brother is Geffray's prisoner. A knight tells Geffray that more men of arms are approaching. Col. 146. Guyon is bound to a tree. Geffray and his company return to the path to wait the arrival of Claud. Geffray sends a messenger to his host. His lords haste
to succour him. The nearest way there he supposed to find Geffray, fighting with his enemies.

The story says that Geffray, Philibert, and their knights were at the end of the path and at the same time Claude and his men with great puyssaunce along through the lane, and well they supposed to have mounted the montayne. But Geffray was at the theatre of the path that vygourously and valyauntly deff ended the path, and while the Knight Philibert and three men ascended the mountain, and threw stones on Claud and his men, the passage was not so hard but he made hym to recule. For there were two of his knightes that descended from their horses, and stode at eyther syde of geffray, and proudly rebuckyd Claudes 12 men with their speres, and many of them were there slayne. Philibert was thene descended from his horse, and three of his company, and recovered the montayne aboue the path, where as they gadred 16 stones and threw them vpon them that were in the lane, through suche yre & grete strength, that there was none so strong bassynets nor armure but it was perced; and therwith they were astonyed or elles ouerthrawn / 20 and wete it wel put there were more than xxi. slayn. There came there the squyer with the batayH that he brought. And when geffray knew it, he commanded thre hounded men of armes, that they shuld draw at the other ende of the lane to kepe the passage, that Claude nor hys peple should not retourne to thire fortresse. And anone from thens the squyer with his company departed, & came hastily to fore the medowe, 28 & passed before the Fortresse. And when Clerevauld, the iii* brother of Claude, sawe them, he demed that it was some socours that came to them / For he trowed not that in the land shuld hawe be so many enemies. 32 The whiche esquyer with his companye came with any-able contenance, shewyng no semblauent but as frendes. And thene Clerevauld, that byleued wel that they were thryre frendes leta fah the bridge, & opened the
yate where he stode with xxii. men of armes. And
whan the squyer & his companye perceuyed pat the
bridge was down & the gate open, they drew them
hastily in the way to passe the Fortresse. And passyng
by the Fortresse, Clervauld demanded what they were /
and they ansuercd: 'We be frendes,' and in approach-
ing of the said bridge to the nombre xxii knightes, they
enquyred after Claude of Syon: 'For fayn we wol speke
with hym.' And Clereuauld them approached, sayng: 'he
shall retourne anoone, For he is departed to fygth with
Geffray with the grete toeth our enemye, 
that he & Guyon our brother haue enclosed in yonder
mountayne that is there byfore you / and wete it wel
that Geffray may not escape them, though he were
tempred with fyne stele, but that he shal be slayne
or take.' 'By my fayth,' sayd the squyer, 'this be
good tydynges.' An theynne he approched with his
knightes nerer & nerer, askyn hym where shal
we goo to helpe hym. 'By my fayth,' sayd Clere-
uauld, 'gramercys it shal not nede at this tyme.'

Thystorye sheweth that the squyer approched to
Clereuauld so nygh by his fayre wordes, that he
& hys companye came vpon the bridge / & theynne he
cryed to hys peple / 'auaunt, lordes, the fortresse is
coure.' And whan Clereuauld herd these wordes, he
supposed to haue reculed & to haue lyft vp the bridge /
but the squyer & his peuple came so rudly that it
was not in theire powere to haunce the bridge / but
bare it doune by force, and anone alighted & entred in
at the gate / and with two speres vndersette the porte-
collys / & inmedyatly descended more than an houn-
dred of the squyers men on foot, & came & entred into
the Fortres. Therene was clereuauld take, and al hys
peple that were there with hym, & brought vnto a
chambre fast bounden, where they were surely kept
with fourty men of armes / And after this don, they
He allows them to come near the fortress.

Clerevald asks who they are; 1 fol. 147.
"We be friends," they answer.

The squire and his company by fair wordes get on the bridge. He
then cries, "The fortress is ours."

Clerevald tries to pull up the bridge, but is too late.

He and his men are taken prison-
ers.

2 fol. 147 b.
THE RETREAT OF CLAUD. [CH. XXXVI.

assembled them, & toke CounseyH how they might best send word vnto geffray of this faytte, & how they shuld kepe them within the Fortresse to thentent to take Claude yf it happed hym to retouerne / And thenne said the squyer that he hym self shuld goo to gyue Geffray knowlege of this aventure. And thenne anone he departed and came to Geffray, to whom he shewed the trouth of the faytte / and whan geffray knew thauenture he was joyful, & made hym knight, & gaaf hym the gouernaunce of a houndred men of armes / & commanded that he shuld go anone in to the countrey, to kepe wel that Claude shuld take none o[er] way, but 12 the way to the Fortresse; For yf he escaped he might do grete harme tofore he were take, & that bett[e] it were to close hym in that lane, & there by force to take hym. 'Sire,' said the new knight, 'doubte you not he shal not escape you, but yf he cane flee, yf that I may come by tymes to the lane.' Thenne he departed & descended the mountayne with his men of armes. And geffray taryed at the pathe, that mightily fought with 20 his swerde vpon his enemies. And wel fourty knyghtes were alyghted on foot vpon pe hylle, & threw stones vpon Claude & his peple in suche wyse, that by force he & his peple was constrained to retouerne / And 24 Geffray & his peple entred in to the lane & chaced them / but vnethe he might passe to pursiwe men for deed men that were slayn with castyng of stones. Now shal I shew you of the new knight that was com-28 myng at the other lanes ende with his company / but whan he herd the bruyt of the horses / he thought wel that Claude retourned / and he toke the couert of the mountayne & suffred Claude to take the way toward 32 the Fortresse.

Thystorye telleth that Claude hasted hym fast to come out of the lane for to saue hym self & his peple in the Fortresse of Syon, but that the fol[e] 35
thinketh oftymes commeth to foly. It is veray trouth
that he spede hym so fast that he was out of the lane
& came to his large / and so he ne taryed neyther for
4 one nor for other / but came walapyn toward the
Fortresse. And whan he was nygh, he cryed with a
high voyce / 'open the gates' / & so they dide / and
thenne he passed the bridge and entred, & was alyghted
8 afore that he perceyued that he had lost the Fortresse /
and fourthe forth he was seasyd & bounde by hys enemes.
Thennne was he gretly abasshed ; For he sawe not about
hym no man that he knew. 'What dyuel is this?
12 where are my men become?' 'By my feyth,' said a
knight / 'ryght foorth shal ye knowe, For ye shal lodge
with them' / And so immedyatly he was brought to
the chambre where Clerenaund, his brother & his people
16 were in pryson. Thenne when he perceyued them bound
& kept as they were, he was ryght doalant. And whan
Clerenaund sawe hym, he said : 'Ha / a, Claude, fayre
brother, we are faH by your pryde into grete captynite /
20 and doubte it not we shal never escape from hens with-
out losse of our lyues, For to cruel is Geffray.' And
Claude ansuerd hym : 'We muste abyde aH that therof
shal faH.' Thenne came Geffray lyght foorth to the
24 Fortresse, & had slayn or take aH the residu of Clauedes
peple / saaf hys brother Guyon which was brought
with hym, & putte prysonner in the said pryson where
as Geffray entred / and emong al oper said to Claude :
28 'How,' said he, 'thou fals traytour, durst thou be so
hardy to hurt or dommage my faders Countre & his
people, thou that owest to be his subget / and by the
feyth that I owe to my fader I shal punysshe the, in
32 exemple of aH other, For I shal doo the hang before
Valbruant, the Castel in syght of thy Cousyn Gueryn,
that is a traytour as thou art, vnto my lord my fader.'
And whan Claude herked that gretynge, wete it wel / he
36 was not therwith playesd. But whan the peple of the

Claud and his people reach the fortress, and cry,
"Open the gates."

He is seized and bound.

He asks about his men.

Clerenalde sees his brother, and upbriads him.

Geffray arrives and brings his prisoner Guion.

Geffray tells Claud that he intends to hang
him before Val-
bruant, the castle of his
cousin Guerin,
who is also a
traitor.
The people of the land are glad that Claud and his people are taken or slain;

because they robbed them and despoiled all passers by the fortress.

Geffray sets up a pair of gallows and hangs all the people of Claud, but spares his two brothers.

Geffray leaves the castle in charge of a wise knight.

3 fol. 149.

and departs to Valbruyant.

He erects gallows in front of the castle, hangs Claud and his brothers, and orders them of the castle to yield on pain of hanging.

Guerin departs from his castle to Mountfrayn to have counsel.

Country knew that Syon the Fortresse, & Claude and his brethren were take & their peple slayne / thenne came playntes of robberyes & other euyl caas vpon Claude & vpon his peuple, & within that same Fortresse 4 were founde more than a C prysonners of the good peple of the Countrey, as marchants & straungers that were robbed passyng by the way / For tofore that tyme none passed by the said Fortresse vnsponed?. And 8 when geffray herd of this tydynges, he made to be sette vpon the syde of the hille a payre of galowes / & therat dide do be hanged al the peple of Claude / and his two brethern he spared for that tyme / and gaaf the 12 Castel in keping vnto a knight of the Countrey that was ryght valyaunt & wyse / & commanded hym vpon his lyf to kepe it wel / and to gouerne lawfully his subgets, & to kepe good justice / And he promysed hym so to doo, For he gouerned the countre wel & rightfully. And after his commandement he departed on the morowe toward Valbruyant / and toke the thre brethen with hym, the whiche had grete fere of 20 deth / and that was not without cause / as ye shal here herafter.

Thystory sayth that geffray & his peuple rode tyl they cam tofore Valbruyant / whe as tentes were dressed & sett vp, and euery man lodged in ordre. Thenne made geffray ryght foorth to sette vp galowes tofore the Castel gate, and there dide do hang incontynent Claude & his two brethern / and sent worde 28 to them of the Castel / yf that they yelded not to hym the Fortres, that he wold hang them yf he had it by force. And whan Gueryn of Valbruyant herd these tydynges, he sayd to his wyf: 'It is so for trouth, 32 madame, that ageynst this strong dyueH I ne may with-stande ne kepe this Fortresse, wherfor I wyl departe & goo vnto mountfrayn to Guerard my nevew, & to other my frenedes for to haue CounseyH how we may haue 36
traytye of pais with Geffray.’ And thenne the wyf that was right sage & subtyl said to hym / ‘go foorth / by the grace of god, & kepe you wel that ye be nat take by the waye, and departe not from Mountfrayn tyl ye haue tydynges fro me, For by thayde of god I hoop that I shal purchasse a good traytye with geffray for you; For had ye don after my CounseyH, & blyeued me, ye shuld not hawe medled with the werkes of Claude & of his bretheren / not with standing yet haue ye not falsed your feyth toward your liege lord Ray- mondyn of Lusynen.’ Thenne Gueryn her said: ‘My 12 dere sustir & spouse, doo that ye thinke best, For my fyaunce is in you / and I wyl blyeue all that ye may counseylle.’ And thenne departed he by a pryvy posterne vpon a swyft hors, and passed by the conerts 16 of the wodes, so that he was not aspyed. And whan he was a lytel passed he sporyd his hors, and the hors bare hym swyftly, and wete it that he had so grete fore lest he shuld be aspyed, that he was almost out of his 20 wyt / & thanked god moche when he fond theatre of the Forest put dured wel two leghes / and toke the way toward Mountfrayn, as moche as he coude ryde.  

Thystery testyfyeth, that so long rode Gueryn that he came to mountfrayn, where he found guerard hys neuw, & recounted to hym al these werkes; and how Geffray with the grete toth had take Claude theire Cousyn & his two brethern, & brought tofore 28 Valbrayaunt, where he dide al thre to be hanged / and how he was departed them, doubtyng to be take with- in the Fortresse. ‘By my feyth,’ said Guerard, ‘Fayre vncle, ye haue do wysely, For after that men speke of 32 Geffray, he is a valyaunt knight of lyhe & puysaunt enterpyse / and he is moche cruel & moche to be doubted. Woo is to me that euer we went to Claude! For wel we knew that he & hys bretheren were of euyl 36 gouernement, & that none passed foreby theire For-
tresse vnrobbed. Now pray 1 We god, that he preserueth bothe our lynes & honour in this affayre. Fayre vnclie, vpon this caas we muste seke remedy / It is good that we lete haue knowledge to our parents & frendes 4 jerof, pat haue be of this folyssh alyaunce.' And gueryu ansuerd: 'that is trouth.' Thenne they sent wordes to theyre frendes that they shuld al come to mountfrayn, so that they might haue Counsell to gidre 8 vpon this faytte, & to seke the meane to escue them toward geffray. Now resteth thystory of them / and speketh of the lady of Valbruyant that was moche subtyl & sage / and she ever blamed her lord of that he 12 had consented to Claude & to hys brethern. This lady had a daughter, whiche was of the age of ix yere / & fayre & gracyous; and also a sone that was ten yere of age, whiche was fayre & wel endoctryned. And thenne 16 this lady as she had of nothing 1 be abasshed 2 / mounted upon a palfray rychely arayed, & did do be mounted her two children vpon two horses, and ordeyned two auneyent gentylmen to conduyte theire horses / and 20 acompanyed with six damoyles, dide open the gate where she fond the new knight that brought the manement of geffray, which she recyeyed benyngly, and he that coude moche of honour made to her the 24 reuere / and the lady seyd to hym temperatly : 'Sire knight, my lord is not within / and therefore I wyl go myself toward my lord your maister to knowe 3 what is his playsyr, For it semeth me that he is come hither 28 to make werre / but I byylene not that it is for my lord nor for none within this fortesse. For god defende that my lord or any of this place had do that thing that shuld dysplayse geffray or my lord his fader / and 32 by aduenture yf some of his synester frendes have informed geffray otherwyse than raizon, I wold humbly beseche & pray hym that he vouche sauf to here my

2 Fr. Adone la dame ne fut ne folle ne esbahie.
said lord & husband in his excuses & defenses / and thenne when the knight herd her speke so sageously / her ansuerde: ‘Madame, this requeste is reasonable,  

wherfore I shal conduyte you toward my lord / and I hope that ye shal fynd hym frendly, & that ye shal have a good traytye with hym / how be it, he is in-  
fourned of gueryn your lord ryght malcyously / but I  

byuleu that at your requeste he shal graunte a part of your petycion / And thenne they departed & came toward the lodgys of Geffray.  

The new knight undertakes to conduct her to Geffray.  

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray saw the com-  

myng of the lady he yssued out of his tente &  
came ayenst her / and she that was wel nourrytured  

held her two children tofore geffray, to whom she made  
humble renuerence / and thenne geffray enclyned hym  

inclines to her, and bids her welcome.  

to her, & toke her vp right humbly, & said: ‘Madame,  

ye be right welcome’ / and ‘my lord,’ said she, ‘I  

see pat I desyre’ / and thenne her two children dyde  

inclines to her, and bids her welcome.  

theyre obeyssance in the moost humble wyse / and  

20 he gaf to them ayen his salut. Thenne toke the lady  

the word / and feynyg as though she had known  

nothing of hys euyl wyH / said vnto hym in this wyse:  

‘My lord / my lord ! myn husband as for this tyme he  

is not present in this Countre. Wherfore I am come  

toward you to pray you that it may playse you to take  
your lodgys in your Fortresse, and take with you as  

many of your peple as shal you playse ; For, my lord,  

28 thanked be god, there is ynoough to plese you with /  

and wete it wel that I & my meyne shal receyue you  
gladly, as we owe to doo the sone of our soneryn  
lord naturaH.’ Whan geffray ynderstode her requeste  

She feigns to know nothing of her lord’s ill-  
doings.  

She tells Geffray that her lord is away from home,  

and invites Geffray to lodge in the fortress.  

32 he was gretly abasshed how she durst desyre hym /  

consyderyng how he was infourmed ageynst Gueryn her  

husband. Neuerthele he sayd, ‘By my feth, fayre  
lady, I thanke you of your grete curtoysye that ye offre  

Her request abashes Geffray,  

36 me / but this requeste I ought not to agree, For men
who says that he haue youen to me knowlege that your husband hath not deseruyd it ayenst my lord, my fader, & me / how be it, my fayre lady, I wyl wel that ye knowe that I am not come for to make warre ayenst ladyes & damoy- 4 selles / and be ye of this sure, that neyther to you nor to none of your fortres I wyl nought say nor hurt, yf your husband be not there’ / And she theyne said: ‘gramercy, my 1 lord. But I requyre you, that it playse 8 you to shew me the cause of your indignacyon that ye haue vnto my lord myn husband, For I am in certain nother he nor I haue never do no thing‘ to our knowlege that shuld be your dysplaysure / and I byleue 12 that yf it might plese you to here my lord & husband & his excuse, that ye shal fynde them that thus haue informed you, be not matere of trouth / and my lord, therupon I make me strong‘ that in conclusyon ye shal 16 fynde as I say.’

In this partye sheweth history, that whan geffray herd the lady thus spake he thought a lytel, & syn answerd & said: ‘By my feyth, lady, yf he goodly can 20 excuse hym that he haue not falsed hys feyth, I shalbe glad therof / & I shal receyue hym gladly in his excusacyons with his felawes & al theire complyces / and from this day seuen nyght I gyue hym saaf gooyng & 24 commyng, and fourty personnes with hym.’ Thenne toke the lady her leue & retourned to Valbruyant, where she lefte her children / and acompanied with ten knightes and squyers, & with thre damoyselles 28 departed, & rode so long tyl she came to Mountfrayn, where she was receyued joyously of her lord & his frendes, to whom she recounted how gueryn her lord had safeconduyte of geffray for hym, & fourty personnes 32 with hym / & yf he may excuse hym geffray shal here hym gladly, 2and shal admynystre hym al rayson. ‘By my feyth,’ said an auncent knight, ‘thenne shal we haue a good trayyte with hym / For there nys none 36
that may say that ever we mysdyde in any thing ayenst our soueraynle lord naturel. Yf Claude, that was our Cousyn, had vs requyred of ayde, yf he neded, & we had promysed hym to helpe hym / not for that we ne haue yet mysdon / nether g effray nor none other may not say that ever we had the helmet on heed, nor that we yssued ever out of our places for to comforde or 8 ayde hym ayenst geffray by no wyse / goo we thene surely toward geffray, & let me doo there withal, For I doubte not but that we shal haue good traytye with hym. The frendes & cousyns of gueryn confirmed 12 this propos, & made their appareyl for to goo toward geffray on the 3de day folowyng. And thenne the lady departed, & returned to Valbruyant, where she sent for breed, wyne, capons, chikkons, conyns, & suche 16 vytyayl, with hey & ootys, and presented it to geffray / but he neuer receyued of it / but suffered that who wold toke of it for his money / and the said lady let geffray haue knowleche how her lord & his frendes 20 shuld come toward hys grace. /

Here sayth thystory, that Gueryn of Valbruyant & guerard hys newe, taryed for their frendes at mouatfrayn / and whan they were come they mounted 24 on their horses & rode tyl they came to valbruyant / and on the morne they sent word to geffray of their comynyg, and that they were al redy to come toward hys good grace to their excuse. And geffray answered: 28 pat he was apparylled to receyue them. And penne they departed fro the Castel & came tofore the tente of geffray, to whom they made their obeyssance ryght honourably. And there thauynceyt knight of whiche 32 I spak tofore toke the word, & said: "Mighty & puys saunt lord, we are come hither toward your highnesse for this, that we understand how ye are informing ayenst vs, that we were consentying to the yllnesse & 36 dysobedyence of Claude ayenst our souerayne lord good treaty with geffray, for they did not help Claud against Geffray.

The lady returns to Valbruyant and sends victuals to Geffray, and tells him how her lord is about to come before him.

Guerin and Gerrard arrive at Valbruyant, 1 fol. 159 8. and send word to Geffray, who announces his readiness to receive them. They present themselves and make their obedience.

The ancient knight tells that he has heard that Geffray thinks they consented to Claud's misconduct.
naturel, your fader. My lord, it is wel trouth that the said Claude our Cousyn, tofore hys folysshe enterpryse, he assembled vs togidre, & thus said to vs: ‘Fayre lorde, ye be aH of my lynage & kynred e / & I of your / wherfore rayson requyreth that we loue eche other.’ Thenne sayd we / ‘by my feyth, ye say trouth / but wherfor say ye soo?’ And theune he answered couertly: ‘Fayre lorde, I doubte me to haue 8 shortly a strong werre & to haue a doo with a strong partye; Wherfor I wyl wete yf ye wold helpe me’ / & we thenne asked of hym / ayenst whom / he answered: ‘we shuld knowe it al in tyme, & that 12 he was not parfytte frend, who that relenquysshed hys cousyn at hys nede.’ Thence we saide to hym, ‘we wyl wel that ye knowe that there nys none so grete in this countrey, 1 ne so myghty, yf he wyl 16 hurt or dommage you, but that we shal helpe you to kepe & susteyne you in your ryght.’ and vpon that he departed / and syn had he many rancours ayenst some where we ayed hym / but my lord wete it wel 20 that fro the tyme of hys dysobedyence to my lord your fader, we ne doubte nor fere neyfer god nor man that we euer putte piece of harneys on vs / nor that none of vs aH yssued out of his fortres, nother for hym nor for 24 his faytte / and the contrary shal be nother knowen nor fond, For herof we wyl not haue grace / but we requyre only right & justice / and yf there be other cause that our euyl wyllers might haue contruyed vpon 28 vs throught enuye or hate / I say by right that ye ne owe to be therfore indigned ayenst vs, bat are very subgets & obedyent to my lord, your fader Raymondyn of Lusynen, For yf some were wylling to vexe or 32 moleste vs by ony wyse ye oughte to helpe & kepe vs / and herof I can no more say, For we can not thinke that none of vs dide euer that thing that myght dys-playse my lord your fader. Wherfor we al present 36
beseeche & pray you that ye be not infornted but of rayson."

\[\text{When geffray had here the excuse of the old kyght that spake for a\text{H}, he called his CounseyH to hym / and syn said to them:} \text{‘Fayre lordes, what seme yow of this fayte?} \text{1 me semeth that these folk excuse them self ful wel.’} \text{‘By my feyth,’ sayd they a\text{H} in 8 commyn, ‘that is trouth / nor ye can not aske of them, but that ye make them to swere vpon the holy Ewaungylles, that yf the siege had be layed tofore syon / they had socoured Claude or not ayeast you / 12 and yf they swere ye / they are your enemyes / and to the contrary, yf they swere that noo / ye owe not to bere to them euyl wyH.’} \text{To this they a\text{H} accorded / & therewith concluded their counseyH. And thenne / 16 were gueryn & hys frendes called tofore geffray / and after he had recorded to them the sayd conclusyon / they said that gladly they shuld swere as they dyde. Wherfore they had peas with geffray, and syn went 20 with hym al about the Countr e vysytyn t the Fortresses & places by the space of two monethes. And after Geffray toke lene of the Barons there / and lefte gounernours to kepe & rewle the Countr ey / and syn departed 24 & retourned to Lusynen, where he was grealty festyed of hys fader & moder, that were glad of his retourne. Theane was there come a knyght of poytou fro Cypre, whiche had reported tydynges how the Calyphe 28 of Bandas, and the grete Carmen were arryued in Armenye / and moche they had adommaged the kynty Guyon. Also how kynty vryan had tydynges how they entended to make werre ayenst hym in Cypre. 32 Wherfore he made hys assemble of men of armes & of shippes, for to recounted & fyght with them in the see. 2 For his entencion was not to suffre them to entre in his land. Whan thenne Geffray vnderstode these tydynges 36 he swere by the good lord, that shuld not be without and beg to be informed of their fault.}

\(^\text{1 fol. 153 b.}\)

\text{Geffray tells his council that he thinks they have made a good defence. The counell advises that Guerin and his friends should be made to swear that they would not have helped Claud had his castle been besieged.}

\(^\text{2 fol. 154.}\)

\text{Guerin is ready to swear; so he has peace with Geffray.}

\text{Geffray returns to Lusignan, and is greatly feasted.}

\text{News comes from Cyprus that the Caliph of Bandas is attacking Guion, King of Armenia.}

\text{Urian is assembling ships to fight his brother’s enemies.}
Geffray resolves to aid his brethren.

Geffray asks the knight from Cyprus to accompany him.

He assembles xiii. C. men of arms and iii. C. archers, and marches them to Rochelle, where Raymondin had provided and victualled many vessels.

Geffray sets sail.

The Saracen lords resolve

hym, and that to long he had kept his fyre / and said to Raymondin hys fader, & to Melusyne his moder / that they wold make hym chenysaunce of help for to goo ayde hys brethren ayenst thenemyes of god / And they accorded thereto / so that he promysed them to retourne within a yere day toward them.

Ryght joyous was geffray when his fader had granted hym his wyH. and thenne he prayed 8 the knight that was come fro Cipre, that he wold retourne with hym, & that he shuld reward hym wel therof. 'By my feyth,' sayd the knight / 'men telleth me as touching your prowes may none compare / and I shall go with you for to see yf ye can doo more than Vryan & Guyon your bretheren; For tho two I knowe ryght wel.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said geffray, 'it is a lytel thing of my faytte concernyng the puys-16 saunce of my lorde, my bretheren / but I thanke you of this lyberaH offre to goo with me / & I shall meryte you, theryfore, yf it playse god.' Thenne he made hys mandement & dyde so moch, that he assembled xiii. C. 20 men of armes, & wel iij. C. arbalestres, and made them to drawe toward Rochelle / And raymondyn & melusyne were there, whiche had don arruyed many vessels, & wel purveyed of vytylles necessary. 24 And thenne Geffray toke leue of his fader & of hys moder, & entred into the see with his companye, & saylled so pat they lost syght of land, For they made good way. Here resteth thystorye of them to speke / 28 and begynneth to speke of the Calyphe of Bandas & of the Sawdan of Barbarye, that was neeve to the sawdan that was slayn in the batayH upon the heed of Saynt Andrew abone the black montayne.

Thystorye sheweth vs that the Caliphe of Bandas & the Sawdan of Barbarye / the kynge Anthenor of Anthioche / and the admyral of querdes had made

1 Orig. of of.
2 fol. 154 b.
3 Fr. Cordes.
to equip them for the ensuing campaign.

265 They intend to
first destroy the
Isle of Rhodes, afterwards
the Kingdom of
Armenia, and
then to capture
Urian of Cyprus,
and make him
die on the cross.

A spy of the
Master of
Rhodes among
the Saracens

returns to his
master and tells
all that they in-
tend to do.

Word is sent to
the Kings of Ar-
menia and Cy-
prus, and they are
asked to set out
to sea and to
meet the Master
of Rhodes at
Jaffa.
Guion sails to Rhodes, where the prior receives him joyfully.

They set sail to Jaffa.

Urian gathers his barons at Lymasson, takes leave of Ermine, and soon sails out of sight.

Geffray arrives three days after at Lymasson, but the master of the port will not let him enter.

As he fonde the grete maister at the porte / And when the grete Pryour of Rodes sawe him he had grete joye, & forthwith he entred with hym & al his puyssauence into the see to the nombre of iiii. C bretheren men of armes, 4 & vi. C balesters or crosboumen. When they were assembled togidre fayre was the Flote, 2 For by very estymacjon they were fonde to the nombre of ten thousand men of armes / & about xviii. C what balesters & as Archers. And wete it wel, it was a fayre syght, For the baners & standarts wayned with the wynd / and the gold & azure vpon the helmets & armures resplendysshed brigh & clere, that it was grete meruayle / and 12 syn they rowed toward the porte of Japhe, wher the Sarasyns had made theire nauye to dryue. And here resteth thystorye of them to speke, & sheweth of vryan as ye may here herafter.

Thystory sayth, that the kyng Vryan made & sent his mandement throug al his land of Cypre, for to gadre his baronye togidre with theire puyssance, & when they were assembled at the porte of Lymansson he 20 toke leue of the quene Ermyne, his wyf, & entred into the see. And wete it they were in nombre, what men of armes as balesters & archers xiii. 31, And penne they departed fro the porte, & saylled by suche force of 24 wynde that quene Ermyne, which was vpon a hye toure, lost soone the syght of them. And wete it wel that geffray with the grete toth, within thre days after arryued under Lymansson / but the maister of the porte 28 suffred them not to entre within the porte. how be it he was abasshed to see the armes of Lusynen in theire baners vpon the toppes of theire shippes, & wyst not what to deme or say; wherfore he went anoone to the 32 Castel & anounced these tydnyges to the quene / And she pat was full sage, said to hym / 'go ye to know

2 Fr. six mille hermins et bien trois mille archestriers. Hermins = Armenians.
what folke they be, For without treson, they are some
of my lorde's lynee / speke thenne with them, hauing
your men prest & redy vpon the porte to thende, yf
4 they wolde arryue by force, that ye may withstand
them'. And he anone fulfylled the queenes comman-
dement & came to the barryers of the clos & demanded
of them what they sought. Thenne answere the knight
8 whiche tofore that tyme had be in Cypre / 'lete us
arryue, For it is geffray, kyng vryans brother, that
commeth to socoure & ayde hym ayenst the Sarasyns.'
And thene whan the maister of the porte vnderstode
12 pe knight he knew hym anone, & thus sayd: 'Sire,
the kyng is departed from hens thre dayes agoo, &
hath take hys way and hys puysiunce with hym
toward the porte of Japhe, For he wyl not suffre, yf he
16 may, that paynemes entre in his royame / but pray, my
lord, hys brother, that it playse hym to come & see
the queene that ryght ioyous shal be of hys comyng.'
And he al this said to geffray, whiche anoone entred
20 into a lytel galyote, & with hym the said knight and
other of hys felawship, & rowed to the chayne that
anoone was open / & so they entred in to the hauen,
where as they fonde many noble men that honourably
24 receyued geffray & his felawship, whiche meruaylled
them gretly of hys grete courage & of hys fyersnes, &
brought hym toward the queene that abode for hym,
holdying her sone Henry in her armes. And as Geffray
28 approched to her she enclyned herself tofore him / and
geffray to her made his obeyssaunce & toke her vp &
kyssed her / & syn said to her, 'Madame, my sustir, god
yeue you joye of al that your herte desyreth' / And
32 she welcommed hym freundly & honourably. And
thenne geffray toke vp his neew Henry, that kneled
tofore hym. What shuld I now make long compte.
Geffray was thenne glad / & the port was open & hys

1 fol. 156. The Queen says they may be of her husband's lineage.

2 Fr. chainne.
His navy enters the port and is refreshed.

Geffray asks for a pilot.

The queen orders the portmaster to prepare a galley with the sages mariner that can be found.

He has a rampin ready, which guides Geffray, who soon sails out of sight.

1 fol. 157. Urian comes to Jaffa, and sees the Saracen fleet there.

The Saracens intend to sail against Rhodes.

nauey entred, & whan they were wel refreshed geffray said to the queene: 'Madame, I wyl deparde, let me haue a maronner that wey knoweth the costes of this see, so that I may fynde my brother.'

To this answerd the queene, 'My right dere brother / By my fuyth, I wold it had cost me a thousand poundes that ye were now with my lord, your brother, For wel I knowe he shal haue grete joye of your comyng;' and thenne she called to her the maister of the porte, & sayd / 'go make a galyot to be shipped redy with ten oores, & seke for the sages maronner & best patron that can be fount, for to conduyte my 12 lord my brother toward my lord.' 'Madame,' answerd the maister of the port, 'I haue wel a rampyn alredy shipped to rowe, wel armed & vytayled, & resteth no more than to meve & deparde.' Thenne was geffray 16 right glade & toke hys leue of the queene & of hys nevew, & entred in to his shipp / and the said rampyn or gallele gyded hym / & so deparde with hys flote, & rowed & made good way, so that in short space they 20 of the porte lost the syght of them. And the queene Ermyne prayed deuoutely to god that they myght re- tourne with joye. Of hym I shal leue to speke. But Vryan his broper rowed so long tyl they perceyued the 24 porte 1 of Japhe, & the bygge & grete vessels that were there assembled / and thenne was there comme the Caliphe / the Saudan of Barbarye, the kynge of Anthioche, & thadmyral of querdes, with theire puys- 28 saunce. And was by them concluded the king antenor & thadmyral shuld make vantward, & shuld hold the way toward rodes / and yf that they neded socour they shuld wryt to the Caliphe & to the Saudan, 32 whiche alwayes be redy to helpe & ayde them / and the kyng antenor of Anthioche & thadmyral of Cordes departed fro the porte of Japhe with fourty thousand panemes, & toke theire way toward Rodes by suche 36
wyse that Vryan knew nothing of theire departynge / and had rowed but two dayes journey when they per-
ceyued kyng guyon & the nauye of rodes, and also the 4 Cristens perceyued them / Thenne was there grete alarume of bothe partes, and soothe they borded togidre. There was grete occysyon & horryble medlee / and at the first recountryyng were six galleys of the sarasyns 8 souken & perysshed in the see / And the noble cristens endeuyroyred them self wel & faught valyuantly, But the force & the quantyte of the Sarayns was grete / and the Crysten people susteyned grete charge, & had 12 be dyscomfyt red yf god of hys grace had not conduyted geffray that part as it shal be recounted heraftre.

Thystory saith, that geffray & his peple sayllled in the see by force of wynd that they had at theire 16 wyth so long, that they 1 approuched the place where the batayH was. And first of all the rampyn that conduyted them approuched so nygh that they sawe them fyght / and anone returned & said to geffray, 'Sire, 20 commande al men to be redy, For we haue perceyued the batayH / & as we suppose they are sarasyns & crystal fyyghting togidre.' Thenne rowed the galyote & came so nygh the batayH that they herde crye on hye, 24 'Cordes & Anthioche' / and at the other part 'Lusynen & saynt John of Rodes' / and immedyatyly returned the rampyn toward geffray, & said to him, 'Sire, at that one party they ben sarasyns / and at the other part theire 28 calyng is Lusynen & Saynt Johan of rodes / but cer-
taynyly it is not the kyng vryan / but I bylene, my lord, that it is the kyng guyon hys brother & the maister of Rodes that thus fyght with the Sarayns.'

32 'Ryght foorth,' sayd geffray, 'goo we to them asprely' / thenne they hauynce saylles vp & sayllled foorh by such wyse that it semed as it had be the vyreton of a Crosbow, & stemed the shippes of the sarayns in suche 36 manere that they were sparpyllld, so that there rested

They meet Guion, and fight, There is much slaughter,
six Saracen gal-
leys are sunk;

but because of the multitude of Saracens the Christians would have been de-
feated,

1 fol. 157 &
had not Geffray come to their aid.

Geffray is told that it is a fight between Chris-
tians and Sar-
cens.

He saileth swift as an arrow and breaks up the Saracen fleet.
not foure of al the flote, and cryed 'Lysynen' with a high voys. Wherfor the Ermayns & they of Rodes byleued pat it had be the kyng Vryan that were côme fro cypre. And thenne toke they good herte to them courageously. And the kyng of Anthioche 1 & thadmyrah of Cordes gadred ayen their peple, and rane vpon the crysten with grete force. But geffray & hys peuple, that were fresshe & new, ouerrane them in 8 suche manere that they dominaged gretly the sarasyns / and thenne the vessel where geffray was / borded the vessel of the kyng anthenor & were chayned togidre.

And geffray entred into the vessel of the kyng & bygan 12 to make grete occysyon of the sarasyns, & his peuple entred & faught so valyauntly with suche a strentgh that there was no sarasyn so hardly that durst shew hym or make defense / and many of them for theyre 16 relyf supposed to haue entred into thadmyral shipp & they were drowned / the whiche admiral, guyon & his peuple assayled strongly, & drowned foure of the sarasyns shippes.2 The batayH was fyers & horryble 20 & thoccessyon hydouse / and briefly to say, the sarasyns were putte in suche manere so low that they had noyng them to defende. /

M oche was the batayH hard & strong, but aboue al 24 other faught geffray manfully, & so dide the poyteynys that were come with hym there, & so dyde guyon the maister of Rodes & theire peple / but they were abasshed for this that they cryed 'Lusynen' / 28 but thenne it was no saison tenquere. And thenne the kyng anthenor & thadmyral perceyued wel pat the dyscomfiture fyH on them, For they penne 3 had lost more than the two partes of theire peple, wherfore they 32 made the resydu of theire peple to withdraw them.

2 In Fr. et toutefois le roi Anthenor se sauva au vaisseau de l’admiral de Cordes et fut tantost son vaisseau pillié de ce qui y estoit de bon, et phys fut effronté en mer.
toward the port of Japhe to have socour / and the said kyng & admiral put them self in a shipp of auauntage & made grete sayH fro the batayH, and when the sara-
syns perceyued they went after, he that might. But the Ermayns & they of Rodes ouertoke the moost part & putte them to deth & threw them ouerbord. But when geffray perceyued the departyng of the kyng 8 anthenor & the admiral, he dyde make sayH & went after with al hys nauye, & made so fast way that anoone he lefte the Ermayns & the maister of Rodes at sterne. And when the rampyn ship of auauntage perceyued 12 geffray, the patron cryed to hys people with a hye voys / ‘after / after / fayre sires, For yf geffray leseth his way & faylleth to mete with hys brother, I shal neuer dare retourne to my lady.’ And thezne the kyngge 16 Guyon, that knew the rampyn, asked of the patron what was that lord cristen that so had socoured them. ‘By my feyth,’ said the patron, ‘it is geffray with the grete tooth, your brother.’ And when the kyng guyon 20 vnderstod it he cryed with a hye voys, ‘make more sayH, but we were with our brother, For yf he were perysshed I shuld neuer haue hertly joye.’ But pe rampyn went tofore so fast that in short tyme he ouer-
toke geffray, that was neer the sarasyns that approuched the porte of Japhe. Here I shall leue to speke of them, & shal shew of Vryan that tofore was come to the port and had fyred the sarasyns shippes 28 there / but the paynemes rescued them in theire best manere / not that withstanding there were more than ten vesselles brent.

In this partye sheweth thystorye that Geffray with 32 the grete tooth pursiewed so long the king anthenor & thadmyral of Cordes, that they approuched nygh to the port of Japhe, where they entred in / and geffray after them; For by no manere he wold leue them / 36 though men shewed to hym the grete multitude of

Geffray enters the port of Jaffa after the king and the admiral.
paynemes that the\nme were entred in to the vesselles to
soccure the kyng\' anthenor. But he anoone bygan the
batay\n that was hand\& morta\n, in so moch that the
kyng and thadmyrah\n were constrayne\n to take land\, 4
and went to the tonne of Japhe, where they fond\n the
calyph\n of Bandas and the Sawdan of Barbarye that
were grety abasshed\n that so soon they were returned,
and demanded\ of the cause wherfore / and they re\-8
counted to them al thadventure, And how the kyng
of armenye & the maister of Rodes were dyscomfyted\n, had not a knyght araged or wodd\ that came & so-
coured them with a few peple that cryed\ "Lusynen\" / 12
& there may none with\stand\ hym, which is now
yonder at the porte where he fyghteth ayenst our peple /
and al that he recountreth is brought to hys ende.
And whan the sawdan understod\ it he had no wy\n to 16
1 lawghe / but said, 'By machomet, it is tolde me of ol\n\nthat I, & many other of our sette and lawe, shall
susteyne grete parels vpon the see, by the heyres of
Lusynen / but yf we might haue them on land\, and 20
that our peple were out of pe shippes they shuld be
soone all dyscomfyted.' 'By all our goddes,' said the
Caliphe, 'ye say troth, / and also yf they were here
dystroyed\ we shuld subdue lyghtly Rodes, cypre, & 24
armanye / Lete vs thenne make our peple to come to
land\, and suffer the Cristen to take peasybly their
landing;' But in certayn for nought they spake soo,
For they yssued out without any commandement, by 28
the vertue & strength of Geffray that therto constrayne\n
them / and Geffray with his peple pursiewed them at
land\, & chaced them vnto the Cite of Japhe / and all
thoo that were ouertake were put to deth / and they 32
that entred in the toun cryed\ "treson, treson!" Thenne
were the gates shette, and euery man went to hys
garde / and geffray returned to his shippes / and com-
manded that the horses shuld be had\ out aland. For 36
he said that neuer he shuld departe but he shuld dey or he shuld make men to say, that Geffray with the grete toth hath be here.

4 Thystorye telleth vs that whyle Geffray was about to haue out of the shippes hys horses, the rampyn perceyued the baners & penons of the kyng vryan, that moch strongly scarmysshed the nauye of 8 the sarasyms that knew nothing that geffray had take land, For they had take the deep of the porte. And 1 the kyng & thadmyrah were arryued at the narowest syde to be the sooner on land. Thenne departed the 12 rampyn shipp of auautage, and rowed toward vryan. And thenne they recounted guyon, whiche asked of the patron tylynges of geffray. 'Yonder he hath take land,' said the patron, ' & hath chaced the paynemes 16 vnto pe Cite / and yonder is the kyng vryan your brother, that scarmyssheth theire nauye, to whom I goo for to anounce hym your aventure, and the commyng of geffray, his brother' / And thenne the rampyn 20 rowed fast, and came to vryan to whom, after his obeysance, he recounted al the faytte. Wherof and tell of Geffray's doings.

Vryan thanked god devoutely / & cryed to hys peple, 'auaunt, lordes, thinke to doo wel, For oure enemies 24 may not escape vs, but that they be other slayn or take.' Thenne the crysten borded theire enemies, the which were gretly abasshed of this, that they had knowleche that the kyng anthenor & thadmyrah were 28 retourned to Japhe. wherfor they toke land who that might, & fledd toward the toun. And thenne whan the Calyphe and the saudan sawe theire peple aland, they dyde send ambaxades toward the pryaces Cristen 32 for to haue trews the space of three dayes, & that they shuld suffre their landing, & on the foureth day they shuld gyue them journey of batayH. Kinge Vryan accorded therto, and sent word thereof to his brethern 36 guyon and geffray / and thus they landed peasybly, and MELUSINE.
Thystorye sayth that the thre bretheren and their people made moche eche of other, & refreshed them during the trews. But pane the Sawdan of Damoske that had knowleche of the crystens landing 8 sent word to the Calyphe & to the sawdan of Barbarye, that they shuld not fyght with the crysten tyl he were come with them, & that they shuld take othre three days of trews / & so they dyde; wherto the 12 noble prynces crysten accorded. And duryng that terme the Caliphe & the sawdan of Barbarye dyde withdraw theyre people toward Damoske to thentent that they might have the Cristen more within the land, so that none might flee to theyre nayye; but he were ouertake & slayne. For they wend to haue all their wyH vpon the Cristen. For they were after the sawdan of Damoske was assembled with them to the 20 nombre of VII score thousand fyghtyng men / and pe crysten were but xxii. good men / the which, whan they knew of the departyng of the sarasyns fro Japhe, they were fulH dolaunt; For they supposed they had 24 fledd / but for nought they wend soo / for at ende of six dayes they came & approuched nygh them, & on the morne gaf them batayH. Thenne came a trucheman mounted vpon a dromadary, whiche alighted tofore the 28 tentes of the thre bretheren, and humbly salued them / and they rendred hym gretyngs / and he beheld them long or he spake. For he wondred moche of their noble maynten & fyers contenaunce / and in especial he meruyllde moche of Geffray that was the hyest of personne, & saw the tooth that passed ouer the lypse along hys cheke; wherof he was so abasshed that almost he coude not speke / but at last he said to 36

Thynne was the Joyo grete emong the thre bretheren, and their oost was nombred xxii. what men of armes / balesters & archers.
kynge Vryan in this wyse. 'Noble kyng of Cypre / my right redoubted lordes the Sawdants of Barbarye & of Damaske / the Calyphe of Bandas / the kynges of Anthioche & of Danette & thadmyraH of Cordes send word by me to you that they be prest1 redy to lyuere you batayH, & they tary after you in a medowe vnder Damaske where ye, with al your puyssaunce may come / saf and peasyblly there to make and take there your lodgyes tofore them wheresomeuer it playse you / and by aenture whan ye haue sene their puys-

sauce ye shaH fynd some good & amyable traytys

12 with my said lordes. For certaynly it is not to your power to withstand their strength.' And whan geffray herd there wordes, he sayd to hym / 'goo thou to thy kynges & sawdants, & to thy Caliphe / and say 16 them that ye were none only but I & my peuple, yet wold I fyght / & say them pat of their trews we haue nought to doo / and when thou shalt come to them say that geffray with the grete toth deffyeth them /

20 and anoone after that thou art departed from hens Ishal sawte the Cite of Japhe, & shoal fyre it / and al the sarasyns that I shoal fynd, I shoal putte them to deth / and say to them, as thou passe by 2 that they puruey 24 them wel, For I right foorth shaH departe to assayH them.' And whan the trucheman or messager hereH this ansuere, he was al abasshed / and without eny more proces he lept upon his dromadary, For he had so grete 28 feer of the fyersnes of geffray that alwayes he loked behynd hym, for fere that he had folowed hym / & sayd in hym self: 'By mahon, yf al the other were suche as that with the grete toth, our lordes, nor theirre

32 puyssaunce were not able to withstand them.' And thenne he came to Japhe, & said to them that geffray with the grete toth wold come anoon tassayH theire Cyte, and that he had sworne that he shuld putte in

1 Fr. pretz.
THE INTERPRETER RETURNS HOME. [CH. XXXVI.  

Many fly to Damascus.

Geffray approaches Jaffa.

The interpreter returns

1 fol. 162. to the Saracen knights,

and relates the result of his embassy.

subjection of hys swenkt al them that he fond. Thenne were they all abashed / and wete it wel that the more partie of the peple there fled for fere toward Damaske, and toke with them their goodes. And anoon geffray 4 dide blow vp hys trompettes, & armed hys peple, & went incontinent to sawte the toun, and wold neuer cesse therof, For ony thing that his brefern said / and swear by god that he shuld shewe them suche tokens that men 8 shuld knowe that he had ben in surye. But here seaceth thisstorye of hym, & speketh of the forsaid messanger but rode so long that he came tofore the lodgys of Damaseke. 12

In this party, sayth thystory, that the messager rode so fast vpon his dromadary that he cam / vnto thoost tofore Damaske / & fond in the tente of the Calyphe the two sawdans, 1 the king's anthenor / thad- 16 myral of Cordes, the kyng golofryn of Danette, & many other that asked tydynges of the Cristens. And the messager them said / 'I haue don your commande-ment & message / but when I shewed vnto them, 20 yf that they had seen your puysausance it wold haue be a meane of traytye with you / and thenne one of them that had oo grete toth, wold not suffre the kyng of Cypre to haue the worde, but he hymself said jus, 24 "Goo thou to thy kynges and sawdants, & say them we haue not to doo with there trews, / & that yf there wer but he & his peple only, yet wold he fyght with you" / and morouer said to me / that assoone as I shuld come 28 to you that I shuld take you ayen ye patents of your trews, & that ye shuld beware of hym / and that in despyte of you all he wold assawte Japhe, & putte the fyre throug al the toun & destroye them for euer / and 32 that thus I shuld say to them when I passed by the Cite / and so haue I doo / and wete it wel that the more2 part of the Cytezeyns be come after me, & immedy-

2 MS. has more twice.
atly after my departyng I herd hys trompettes blowe thassawe of Japhe / ye coude neuer thinke thorryble & syers contenaunces of the prynce crysten with theire
4 puyssance / And wete it wel after the semblance that they shew, ye be not of power tabyde them, & in especial he with the grete toth hath none other fere but that ye sall flee or they come to you.' And whan
8 the saudan of Damaske vndersto$ it, he bygan to lawgh, & said, 'By machomid, in asmoche as I haue percyued now your hardynes, ye shal be the first in batayl ayenst hym with the grete toth.' Wherto answerd by the mes-
12 sager / ' vnhappy be that heure or day that I approche hym / but yf there be a grete ryuere or the toures or walles of Damaske or some other Fortres betwix hym & me / and yf I doo other, let me lord mahomid
16 drowne me,' / & therwith bygane euery personne to lawhe. But there were suche that lawhe$, that afterward, yf they might have had leyser, they wold have wept. Now shal I shew how geffray assawte Japhe,
20 and toke it by force, and putte to deth aH the sarasyns there, and toke their haunor and goodes out of the Cyte / & bare it vnto the vesselles, and after sette fyre on the Cite / and this don, returned the crysten to their
24 lodgys, where geffray requyreth his bretheren that they shuld take hym, the maister of Rodes, & hys people, to make the vantgarde / & they were agree$/ / and that same nyght they rested them tyl on the morowe.
28 The next day, as the hystory wytnessest, after the masse her$1, deslove the vanward, and after the grete batayl, & the sommage & syn the ryergarde / and it was a noble syght to see thoost & the fayre
32 ordynaunce to departhe. Thenme came a spy to geffray, & hym said: 'Sire, about halfe a leghe hens ben a thousand sarasyns, which drawe them toward baruth to kepe the hauen of the toune.' to whom
36 geffray asked / 'canst conduyte me thither?' / 'ye, by

He tells the Sarreens that he thinks they are unable to withstand the Christians.

The Sultan of Damascus jeers and says he will make the interpreter the first to fight Geffray.

The interpreter declares he will not fight Geffray.

Geffray assaults Jaffa, slays the inhabitants, and takes their goods to his vessels.

The battle is arranged.

The host marches in good order.

A spy tells Geffray of the march of a thousand Sarreens to Beyrouth.
my feyth, sire,' sayd the spye. Thezane said geffray to
the maister of rodes, that he shuld conduce the van-
warde, puttyng fyre upon the way where he went, to
then he shuld not fayr to fynd hym by the trasse 4
of the fumyer / and the maister of 1 Rodes said / 'it shal
be don.' And thanne departed geffray with the spye,
and went before, where he perceuyed the sarasyns
commyng fro a mountayn ; & he shewed to geffray the 8
sarasyns, which was joyful therof, & hasted his people.
and then he had ouertake them / he sware: 'by god /
ye gloutons! ye may not me escape' / & so rane upon
them, & ouerthrew the first that he recounted to the 12
erth, & syn drew hys sword, & dyde meruayllous
fayttes of armes, & his peuple in lyke wyse. What
node is to speke more of the sarasyns, they were dys-
confyte, & fled toward Baruth, & the Crysten in the 16
chaos. And when the sarasyns of baruth sawe the
fleers, they annoe knew them, & leta falt the bridge,
& opened the gates & barryers / thenne the fleers entred
within the toune / but alwayes geffray folowed 2 so 20
hastly, that he entred with them within the town with
wel fyue C men of armes. And when Geffray was
entred he commanded to kepe [the] gate 2 tyl the
resydu of hys peuple were come / And thenne bygan 24
the batayH to be fyers & strong / but nevertheles the
Sarasyns might not endure, but fled at another yate out
of the toune. And he that peyne had a good hors was
wel bestaH, For they sporyd fast, som toward the Cite 28
of tryple, & some toward Damaske. And geffray &
his peple slew al the sarasyns that they fond in the
town, and threw them in the se / and he that sawe
the toune strong & the Castel nygh the see, fayre porre 32
garnysshed with toures for the sauegarde of the nauye /
sayd / 'that place shuld be kepe for hym self' / and
there geffray lefte two houndred men of armes & a

2 Fr. à garder. MS. has repegate = kepe [the] gate.
C balesters of his people / and he himself sojourned there all that same nght. And on the morne he toke leave of his men that he left there, & rode after thost 4 by the trace of the fumer & smoke / but the maister of Rodes was afar'd lest he should have grete empesement/. Here seaceth the hystorye of hym / and sheweth of the fleers out of Japhe toward Damaske, whiche 8 came to thost at the tente of the Saudan, where as the lorde's sarasyns were / and piteously recounted to them the destruction of Japhe / how the Cristen had putte to deth bothe yong & old, & settle fyre on eche part 12 of the town. Whan the saudants & kynges sarasyns vnderstode it, they were full dolaunt. 'By al our goodes,' said the saudan of Damaske, 'Moche hard ben the crysten, & they doubte nought as it semeth / 16 but full wel they knowe that they are not of power to withstand our grete puysaunce; wherefore they make semblaunt, that nought they lere vs, & make suche sawtes while that we are ferre fro them / but ye we 20 marched forth / no doubte they wold recule & withdrawe them in to there shippes.' 'By mahon,' said the saudan of Barbarye / 'if they were here alle rosted or soden, & ye it were custome to ete suche fleshe, they 24 were not to the regarde of our peple suffysaunt for a brekfast / by my lawe, ye there were but I & my peuple only, yet shuld none repasse of them homward.' But whan the trucheman or messager here k hym so speke 28 he coude neuer hold his tongue, but that he sayd / 'myghty sawdan, ye now ye sawe the kyng Vryan / the kyng guyon his brother, & he with the grete toth, there horryble & fyers contenurance, shuld cause ye 32 to be in peas & cesse your grete menaces. And wete it wel, or the werke be ful doo ye shal not hawe them fo[r] so good chep as ye say / but oft he that menaceth is somtyme in grete fer & drede hym self, & afterward 36 ouerthrawen.' / And thence whan the saudan vnder-
stode the messagers wordes, he said to hym: 'By Mahomied, fayre sire, I see wel by the grete hardynes that is in you, ye wold fayre be ordeyned at the first recounts of þe batayf ayenst Geffray with the grete tooth.' & he answerd: 'By my lawe, sire, ye be not recounted of none other but of me / he may' wel come surely; For I shal tourne myn heelys toward hym / ye / one leghe or two ferre fro his persone.' Thenne the lawhing was there grete / but soon after they herd other tydynges, wherof they had no wyll to lawhe, For the fleers fro Baruth forsayd came to thoost, and to them recounted the dommage & pyte of 12 the tourne of Baruth, and how geffray with the grete tooth had chaced þem by force, & al the resydu of them he had slayn / & 'by mahon,' said they, 'wete it wel he is not of purpos to flee, For he hath lefte garnyson 16 at Baruth, & wel vytylled it, & commeth hyperward in al haste to tym possible / & men see nothing through al the Countre where he passeth but fyre & flame, & the ways be al covered with sarasyns that he & hys 20 peple haue slayn.' Thenne whan the saudau of Damaske vnderstode it he was moch dolante & angry. 'By mahomied,' said he, 'I byleue fermely that he with the grete tooth hath a dyuel in his body.' Thenne said 24 the saudau of Barbarye, 'I am in doubte of that is told me.' 'What is that?' 1 said the saudau of Damaske / 'it is said that the heyr of Lusynen shal dystroye me, and that our lawe shal by thierre strengthe be hurt & dom-28 maged.' Thenne was there none so hardy a Sarayn but that he shoke for fere. And now cesseth thystorye of them, & retourneth to geffray.

Thystorye sheweth in this partye, that so long rode 32 geffray with hys felawship, that he ouertouke the vanwarde that the maister of Rodes conduyted, whiche was glade of his retourne, & asked how he had employed. And geffray recounted to hym how he & his 36
peple, with thayde of god, he had wonne the toune, castel, & hauen of baruth, and that by force they had chased a grete part of them that were within, and the resydu they had putte to deth / & how he had lefte certayn nombre of his people to kepe it. ‘By god,’ sayd the maister of Rodes, ‘ye haue wel don, & nobly & valyauntly expoyted’ / and soone these tydynges were knowen through thooost / & Vryan & Guyon were joyful thereof. ‘By my feyth,’ said Vryan to Guyon: ‘Oure brother Geffray is of grete enterpryse & ryght The brothers speak of the prowess of Geffray.

The news spreads, and Urian and Guion are joyful.

The host arrives close to Damascus.

Next day they march still nearer.

At midnight Geffray ambushes a thousand men near the Saracen host.

1 fol. 165.

and relates how he captured Beyrouth.

281
He takes two hundred more men, and tells those of the ambush not to fight until he and his company fall back; and that then they should rush upon their pursuers.

Geffray surprises the Saracen host.

Thystorye testyfyyeth that geffray at the day spryng, mounted on horsbake, with ij. C fyghtyng men, & commanded them of thembusshe pat for nothing that they sawe they shuld not meue them tyl that they sawe 4 hym & hys company recule, and thenne vpon them of the chaas they shuld renne. Thenne departed geffray, & went vpon a lytel montayne, and sawe the saraysns oost al styl, & herê nothing; as nobody haê been there. Thenne was he dolaunt, that sooner he had not knowne their contenunce, For yf hys brethren had be there with theire peple, they shulde haue had good chep of saraysns / but not withstandyng, he sware that 12 syth he was so nygh, that he shuld make them to knowe his commyng. Thenne said geffray to hys felawes : 'ryde we fast, & see that ye be not aslepe as they are / & make no bruyt tyl I shal command you.' 16 And they said¹ that nomore shuld they doo. Thenne they rode al the couert nygh togidre, & entred into thoost, & wel perceyued that they were aslepe on every syde / geffray behel & sawe the grete multi- 20 tude of peuple / and syn he said in this wyse : 'By my feyth, yf þey were crysten, they were to be ferd & dreed / but yet they be not so good as dogges.' and with his feialship went vnto the myddfes of thoost, or they 24 made eny strif. And there geffray perceyued a ryche tente, and supposyng that it had be other the Caliphes tente or one of the saundants / said vnto hys peuple / 'auaunt, lordes & good men, it is now tyme to chere & 28 awake these houndes, for to long they haue slept.' Thenne Geffray, & ten knightes with hym, entred in to the sayd tente, & vpon them that were in smote with theire swordes, makying heedes, armes, & legges to leue 32 the bodyes. There was the noyse, & the cry grete & hydous to here / & wete it that it was þe tente of the kyng Gallafryn of Danette ; which anoone rose vp fro hys bed, & wel he supposed to haue fled out at the 36
backsyde of hys tente, but geffray perceyued, & gaf hym suche a stroke with his swerd that was pesaunt, & cattyng sharp as a raser, that he eylet hys heed vnto 4 the brayne / & the sarasyn kyng fell doun deed / and none escaped of them that were in the tente; but they were all slayne. And thene cryeng 'Lusynen' they retourned throughoost, puttyng to deth al the sarasyns 8 that they recounted. Theyne was thooest wel awaked & made grete alarme / And anoone came these tyd- yges to the tente of the sawdan of Damaske, that said: 'What noyse is that I here yonder 'without?'

12 Theyne a sarasyn that came fro that part, which had a broken heed, in such manere pat hys one eere lay vpon hys sholder / sayd to hym: 'Sire, that are x dyuelles, and theire meyne that haue entred into your 16 oost, which slee & ouerthraw al them that they re- countre in theire way / and they haue slayn the kyng of Danette your cousyn, and theire cry is "Lusynen!"'

When the sawdan vnderstod it he made hys trompettes 20 to blow vp, that euery man shuld be armed. And theyne the sawdan & x. M1 sarasyns with hym went after. And geffray went with hys peple througheost makying grete oceyson of sarasyns, For they were 24 vnarmed, & might not endure nor withstand. And wete it that or ever they departed fro thooest, they slough & hurt more than iii M1 sarasyns / and whan they were out of the lodgys, they went al softe & 28 fayre / And the sawdan of Damaske hasted hym after. 

Moche dolaunt & angry was the sawdan of Damaske, whan he perceyued the grete oceyson that the crysten had don vpon hys peuple / & sware by hys 32 goddes Appolyn and mahon, that forthwith he shuld be anenged on them, & that not a crysten shulld be take to mercy, but shulld al be slayn. Thenne he folowed geffray with x thousand Sarasyns. And 36 thenne geffray that perceyued, & sent word therof to
He is driven back by the vanguard of the Christians.

Then his host is fallen upon by the ambush,

four thousand Saracens are slain.

Some of them escape to their host.

The Sultan of Damascus fights manfully.

hys bretheren by his peple feynyng to flee / and he entered within the bushe where his peple was, for to putte them in aray / And the sawdan folowed alway, & passed by the thembusshe. Wete it wel that the maister of Rodes that conduyted the vanward was theane in fayre batayH. And whan he sawe the sawdan that folowed the crysten / he ranne ayenst the sarasyns, the spere in the rest, and there they medled & fought strongly / and within a lytel space of tyme the Saracenys were dyscomfytte. For at the first recountre with the speerys, eche cristen ouerthrew a sarasyn to the erth. And whan the sawdan sawe that he might no lenger withstande he reculed, & assembled his peple in hys best wyse, abydyng the sarasyns that came after. But geffray & hys companye yssued out of thembusshe and ranne vpon them but went without ordonance after the sawdan. And within a whyle there were slayn of the sarasyns by the way more than foure thousand. And theane many of them fled toward their oost, and fonde the caliphe of 20 bandas, the sawdan of barbarye, the king Anthenor, & thadmyral of Cordes, whiche asked them fro whens they came / And they ansuere: 'we come fro the batayH where the sawdan of Damaske hath be dyscomfyted.' And whan they vnderstode it they were dyscomforted & sorowful, & wyst not what they shuld say or do. Now I wyl retourne to speke of the batayH.

The batayH was horrible & cruel, & the sawdan of Damaske fought manfully but day, after that he had assembled hys peple. Theane came geffray, that ranne vpon them at backsyde / and the maister of rodes at the other syde, In so moche that there was made grete occysyon of sarasyns. What shuld I make long compte / the feled them assaylled on bothe sydes, wherby they were dyscomfyted, & might no lenger defende. And whan the sawdan perceyued the dys-
CH. XXXVI.] THE FLIGHT OF THE SULTAN OF DAMASCUS.

When discomfited he flies to the Saracen host.

When discomfited he flies to the Saracen host.

Geffray recognizes him, and cries to him.

'Return, or thou shalt die!'

He hastens away the faster;

but Geffray again calls on him.

At last the sultan turns round and asks his name.

Geffray replies that he is brother to Urian and Guion, and demands his adversary's name.

The sultan tells him, and defies Geffray.

comforture, he went out of the batayle & tourned the
targe behyned, and sporyd hys hors, & fled fast toward
thoost of the sarasyns / and geffray was at that syde,
that wel perceyued hym, & demed wel by hys ryche
armures that it was he, or some grete lord of the
sarasyns. Thenne he broochd hys hors with the sporys
after the saudan, and cryed to hym, 'retourne, or thou
shalt dey! For I shulde hane grete vergoyne yf I smote
the behyned / but always, yf thou not retourne, nedes
I most do soo.' And whan the saudan vnderstode
hym, he sporyd hys hors, & hasted hym more than he
dide tofore / and geffray, that ryght dolaunt was that
he might not overtake hym, cryed to hym ayen, 
sayeng : 'FY on the! recreaunt coward; that art so
wel horsed, & so nobly & surely armed, and yet darest
not abyde a man alone / retourne, or I shal see the
fleeyng / how be it, that shal be ayenst my wyH.'
And thenne the saudan, vergoynous of geffray's wordes,
that for fere of a man alone he fled / retournd at
the corner of þe wode, nygh by thoost of the sarasyns,
in that same place where as geffray had that day
embussshed hys peuple / and putte hys shild tofore hys
brest, and the spere in the rest, & thus he cryed to
geffray: 'What art thou, þat so hastily folowest me /
by mahon! that shal be to thy grete dommage.' /
'and for thy prouffyt I am not come thus ferre,' said
geffray / 'but syth that myn name thou axest, thou
shalt þit knowe. I am Geffray with the grete toeth,
broþer to the kings Vryan & guyon / and what art
thou?' 'By mahon,' said the saudan, 'that shal thy
knowe / I am the saudan of Damaske. And knowe
thou, that I were not so joyous who that had gyuen me
a C thousand & besans of golde, as I am to haue fond the
so at myn ease, For thou mayst me not escape / I deffy
the, by machomet my god.' 'By my feyth,' said
Geffray, 'nother thou nor thy god I preyse not a
rotyn dogge; For soone thou shalt fynd me nerer the, to thyn eyl heithe / and yf it playset to god, my creatour, thou shalt not escape.  

Here sayth thystorye, that Geffray & the saudan, 4 that bothe were of grete courage & strength, reculed eche fro other, and syn ranne vpon eche other / and the Saundan valyauntly smote geffray, & tronched his spere vpon his shild / but it is wel to byleue that 8 the noble & valyaunt geffray, at this first cours, faylled not; For he smote the Saundan by suche radeur, that he lefte hym out of hys arsouz, & bare hym vnto therthe.

and so passed foorth, and immediatyly toke in hys hand 12 hys good swerd / and pretendyng that men shuld speke of his fayttes & valyaunces, he smote the saudan by suche vertu that he perceed hys helmet, and effounndred hys heed almost to the brayne, so that the sawdan was 16 sore astonyed and eyl bestad, in suche wyse that he nother sawe nor herd / but as geffray wold haue alyghted to haue take the saudans helmet, to haue brought it to hys bretheren, & to see yf he 2 was deed, 20 he perceyued wel thre score saranys, that cryed after hym, & said: 'By my lawe, false crysten, your ende is come.' And when geffray vnderstode it, he sporyd hys hors, & brandysshed the swerd; and the fyrst that 24 he recounted, he smote down to therthe al deed. And who that had be there, he had seen hym execute noble fayttes & armes, as of one man deffendyng hys lyf; For geffray cutte and smote of heedes & armes, and dyed 28 the place with grete effusyon of saranys blood / and they casted at hym sperys & darte, and made grete peyne for to haue had ouerthrown hym to therth. And theyn the saudan was come at hymself ayen, 32 and stode vp al astonyed, as he had come fro slepe / he loke at ryght syde of hym, and mounted on hys hors, & sawe the batayH, where he perceyued wel geffray, that made grete occysyon of saranys / and was 36
geffray wounded & hurt in many places of his body. 
Thenne cryed the saudan, admonnestynge his peple, 
sayeng / ‘aunaut! worthy sarayns / by mahomid, yf 
4 he vs escape, I shal neuer haue joye; For who might 
byng hym to an euyl ende, the resydu were not to be 
doubted.’ Thenne was geffray assaylled on all partes / 
& he defended hym hardly & so valyautntly, that no 
8 sarayn durste hym abyde / but casted at hym fro ferre 
sperys, daits, stones & arowes / vyretons & quarelles, 
with their e Crosbowes / but it seemed not that he 1 made 
ony force therof / but as a hongre wolf renneth upon 
12 sheep / so dide he renne vpon the enemyes of god. 
‘By my goddes, Appolyne & mahon,’ sayd thenne the 
saudan / ‘this is not a man / but it is a grete dyueH, 
come out of heH / or the Cristen god, which is come 
16 hither to distroye our lawe’ / And, For certayn, geffray 
was in this auenture wel by the space of too heures. 
In this parle was geffray vnto tyme that the new 
knights, which had be with hym in garendre, which 
20 had sene hym departe after the saudan / cam at hym 
with wel a C men of armes, For he loued hym entierly. 
And thenne, whan he approched the wode, he perceyued 
the batayH, and sawe the saudan, that dyde his best 
24 for to hurt & dommage Geffray, that faught alone 
ayenst mahondys peple; wherfore he said / ‘cursed 
be he of god, that shal not helpe hym now’ / and the 
knights peple ansuered, ‘to their euyl helthe they 
28 haue recountred geffray.’ And forthwith they broched 
their horses with their sperys, & came to the 
batayH, but assone as the saudan perceyued the 
socours, he sporied his hors, & hastily fled toward 
32 thost / & left his peple in that plyght, of the which 
neuer one escaped, but were al slayne. Thenne whan 
geffray perceyued the new knight, that so wel had 
socoured hym, he thanked hym moche, & sayd: ‘My 
36 frend, suche rooses ben good, & of swete odour / & the 
and incites his 
people against 
Geffray, 
who defends him- 
self valiantly; 
1 fol. 168 b. 
and 
as a hungry wolf 
runs upon she ep, 
so runs Geffray 
upon the enemies 
of God. 
The sultan cries 
that Geffray is 
either a great 
devil or the 
Christian God. 
Geffray's new 
knight sees his 
lord's danger, 
and rushes at 
the head of his 
people to the 
rescue. 
The sultan takes 
flight. 
Geffray thanks 
the knight,
lorde that hat about hym suche cheualrye, may take his rest surely.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'I hau ne not doo that thing: wherof I owe to be rewarded, For every trew seruanunt oweth to take heede to thonour & prouffyt of hys maister and lorde. And thenne, syth it is soo / no reward ought not to be had therfore / but departe we hens, For it is tyme that ye take your rest: ye haue do this day that wel may suffysye. & also we S be lytel nombre of people, & nygh our enimyese, that haue grete puyssaunce / and your woundes and soores must be vysyted and ouersene / and also, it me semeth best, that we retourne toward our oost by our owne wyH / than yf by force we were constrainyed to retourne; For no doubte / who that retorneth fleeyng, & is chassed by hys enimyese / that may be to hym but blame / how be it, that othyne it is said / that bettre it is to flee, pan to abyde a folyssh enterpysse.' Thenne said geffray: 'Fayre sire, at this tyme we shal blyene your counseylH.' And they thenne departed, and went toward their oost, & fond in their way the fieldes 20 sowen with sarasyns deed. And wete it wel, that the same day, byfore none, the sarasyns lost wel xxvi\textsuperscript{1} thousand\textsuperscript{2} men, that by fayt of armes were al slayne / and there escaped, fleeyng, XL. M\textsuperscript{1}. And wete it 24 also, that the Caliphe and the two saudans, the king\textsuperscript{3} Anthenor and thadmyral of Cordes fond\textsuperscript{4} of seuen score thousand\textsuperscript{5} panemes that the euen tofore were in their oost, but foure score thousand, wherof they were gretly 28 abassshed. Now I shal speke of Geffray, that was retorned to thooost, where he was wel festyed\textsuperscript{6} of hys bretheren, and of their baronye / and his woundes were vysyted by the Cyrurgyens, that \textsuperscript{2} said that he shuld not leue the harneys therfor: and they all thanked god. And now I shal shew of the saudan. / Thystorye sayth, that when the saudan was departed fro the batayH, he walaped\textsuperscript{7} tyl he came to the 36

---

1 fol. 169.

who advises him to return to the Christian host;

because it is often better to flee than to abide a foolish enterprise.

Geffray follows the knight's counsel.

On the way back they find the field covered with the slain Saracen, who have lost xxvi. M men.

2 fol. 169 b.

Geffray's wounds are tended, but they do not oblige him to leave off his armour.
Here sheweth thystorye, that on the morow by tymes, the Crysten armed them, & reengid & 12 ordeyned them in batayH, and lefte good watche for to kepe theire lodgys / and them that were wounded & hurt, that myght bere no harneys / and marched foorth in fayre ordynaunce toward the enemys. In the vanwardes were geffray, & the maister of rodes, & theire peple; & good arblasters were vpon the wynges, wel reengid. And in the grete batayH was the king Vryan / and the king Guyon conduyted the ryergard / and so long they marched, that they sawe thoost of the sarasyns / And anoone was made thenne, on bothe sydes, a meruaylloüs cry / with whiche they marched that one ayenst that other. And bygan the batayH by 24 the archers and arblasters so aspre that thayer was obscurid with the quarelles & arowes, that flewh so thyk. 'The valyaunt geffray was in the Formest front of his peuple, and when the shotte seaced, he 28 toke his sheld & hys spere in esceryeng 'Lusynen' by thre tymes, and smote his hors with his sporys, & thrested in to myddes of his enemys so swyftly that the maister of Rodes coude not folowe hym. Ther was 32 thenne horryble bruyt with theire cryes / that one eryed 'Damaske' / that other / 'barbarye' / some eryed 'bandas,' & some 'authioche,' and other were that eryed 'cordes' / and geffray & his peple eryed 36 'Lusynen & Rodes.' There made the thre bretheren
The brethren do such deeds of arms that all are abashed, but the Christians pluck up heart and slay many of the enemy.

Geffray gives the admiral a stroke so great that he dies.

Urian sees the Sultan of Barbary, and strikes off his left arm.

The sultan retreats to Damascus, but the Saracens continue the fight.

so merueyllous faytes of armes / that not only the sarasyns were abasshed / but also the cristens merueyld therof. The saudans of Damaske, & of barbarye, perceyued the thre brethren, that so ouerthrew & slew 4 their peple; wherfore they, with xx. M! sarasyns, couched their sperys & rane vpon them. There reforced the batayH / and with that 1 cours the cristen the lengthe of a spere ferre. And when the thre S brethren saw the sarasyns, that thus ouerane their peple / bygan to erye 'Lusynen,' & said, admouneyng their peple / 'anuunt, lordes barous! these dogges may not long withstand our armes.' And thenne the 12 Cristen toke herte corageous, & vygourously made an horryble cours vpon their enemies; wherby the stour was strong, & the batayH mortal, 2 For they ouerthrew & slough many sarasyns. Thenne was per Geffray, 16 that effoundred heedes vnto the brayne, & smote down to therthe al that he recounted with his swerd; Whiche perceyued thadmyral of 2 Cordes, that smote on the Cristen. Thenne thrested geffray throug the prees, 20 & cam and smote thadmyral by suche vertu, that he brake bothe the helmet & heed vnto the brayne. There was the prees grete, For ther came the two saudants and their peysauence, that supposed wel to haue 24 redressed thadmyral vpon his hors / but it was for nought, For he was deed. Thenne came there Vryan, and sawe the saudan of barbarye, pat moche hated hym, for cause that he hadde slayn the saudan his vnele 28 in Cypre. Thenne came Vryan, & smote hym by suche strengthe, that he made hys lyft arm to flee fro the body. And when the saudan sawe hym thus arayed, he went out of the batayH, & made ten knightes 32 to conduyte hym to damaske / and neuertheles saught euzer the sarasyns, For the saudan of damaske, & the caliphe of bandas, & the king anthenor held them in

1 Fr. se recouèrent le long d'une lance.  
2 Fr. greigneur.
vertu. There was grete dolour, & grete pestylence. And wete it wel, that the Cristens were sore dommaged / but as the veray chronykle sayth, the sarasyns receyued 4 there ouergrete dommage & losse, For of them were slayn XL. M1 & more / and dured the batayH vnto euyn tyme, that they withdrew them eyther other part to theire lodgyses. And on the morn the Caliphe, & 8 the king anthenor, & the residu of theire peple, withdrew them in to the Cite of Damaske. And whan the thre bretheren vnderstooed it, they went & lodged, with theire puysaunce, tofore Damaske. And wete it wel, 12 they were gretyly febled, & the more part of them hurt. And there they rested them by the space of VIII 1dayes, without sawtyng ne scarmysshing.

Thystorye sheweth vnto vs that the kyng Vryan 16 and hys bretheren and the maister of Rodes were ryght dolaunt & wroth for the grete losse of theire peple. For wel they sawe that yf the sarasyns assembled new men, it myght come thereof some euyl to them. For 20 wel they had lost viiiM1 of theire men. But at that other part were the saudans al abashed. For they knew not the dommage that the Crysten had receyued. And they had CounseyH that they shuld requeyre kyng 24 Vryan journey of traytys vpon foyrme of peas / and so they dide / And the kyng hadd counseyH that he shuld be greable to it. And the journey was assynged by thaccorde of bothe partes on the iii1de day atwix the 28 lodgys & the town / and were the trews graunted & were delynuered good pledges & hostages of both partyes. And theme came they of the town to selle theire marchannyse in to the Crystens oost. Thene came 32 to the journey of traytys that was assigned the saudants and theire CounseyH. And of the other part came Vryan & hys bretheren, the maister of Rodes & theire baronye with thm, and spake, & communyked togidre 36 of one thinge & of other, / and dede so moch of eyther

Both sides are hurt, but the Saracens the more.
The battle stops at eventide.
Next morning the Saracens, greatly ensembled, retire to Damascus.
They rest viii. days.
1 fol. 171.
Uryan and his brethren see that if the Saracens assemble new men they may lose, for they had lost viii. M1 men. But the sultans are abashed, and ask for a treaty.

It is granted.
The Saracens are to pay the Christians all the costs of their voyage, and a yearly tribute to Urian and his heirs of xxx v. tedious of gold;

also they promise not to wage war against Urian, Guion, or the Master of Rhodes.

The brethren return to Jaffa, accompanied by the Saracen kings.

The sultan makes much of Geffray, but he will receive no gifts.

Urian and Guion take leave of Geffray and go to Jerusalem.

Geffray sails to Rochelle, where he is honourably received.

On the morn he rides to his father at Merment.

partye that they were accorded, and pacifyed by condycion that the Sarazins shuld restore to the lorde Cristen all their expenses & costes made in their vyage, & to pay ye rly vnto kyng Vryan & his heyres for 4 enermore xxxM vaults of gold & and trews were made betwene them for £ & one yere, and therof were lettres patentes sealed. And this couenauant and trayte the sawdwn of Barbarye that great doleur felt in s hys sholder for hys arme that was of / and the kyng of Anthioche / ratyfied, / promyttyng that neuer they shuld bere armes ayenst kynge Vryan, / ayenst Guyon of Armanye nor ayenst the maister of Rodes, nor there 12 peple / and that ye other kynges or prynces sarazyns wold attempte ony weree anenst them, they shuld let then haue knowleche therof assonne as they might know it / and ye thrugh that cause they had weree 16 ayenst ony king or prynce, Vryan promysed them to socoure and gyue them comfort with aH hys power, / & in lyke wyse kyng & the maister of Rodes promysed to them / And soone after the thre brepem 20 and there peple retournd to the port of Japhe. And the saudan of Damaske, the Calyphe of bandas, & the kyng Anthenor coneyed hym thither. And the sawdun made moche of Geffray, and proffred hym grete 24 yeftes, but he wold nought receyue / but that he moche thanked hym of his curtoysye. Thystorye sayth that Vryan & Guyon entred in to the see, & vowed themself to Jherusalem. Wherfore they toke lene of geffray their breper, and hym moche thanked of hys noble aye & socours / and syn they departed fro the port of Japhe, and rowed toward Jherusalem. And Geffray toke hys way by the see toward Rochelle, & saylled so long that he came there where as he was honourably receyued & grethy festyed. / And on the morn he departed, and rode with hys companye tyl he came to Merment, where he fond bothe 36
his fader & and his moder, that knew tofore how he & his brethren had wrought beyond the grete se & festyed hym grotesly / raymondyn hys fader kept a grete 4 feste & grete Court for joy that he had of his comanyng. But soone afur 1 came there tydynges that in the Countre of the Garend.e was a grete geaunt that by hys grete pryde & orgueyH, & by his grete strength held aH 8 the Countre in subjection. For no man durst gaynsay his commandement. Of these tydynges was Raymondin ryght doaunt; how be it he made of it no semblauz, feryng that geffray shuld knowe & here of it. For he 12 knew hym of so grete courage that he wold goo fyght with the geaunt yf he vnderstoed where he was. But it might not be kept so secret but that geffray vnderstoode he talkyng of hym / and that come to hys 16 knowlege / he sayd in this wyse / 'how dyuel my bretheren and I haue subdued & made trybutary the saudan of damask & hys complyces, and that hound alone shal be suffred to hold my faders ryght enhery-
20 tauce in subjection / by my sowle, in his euyl helthe he thought to vsurpe it, For it shal cost hym hys lyf yf I may.' Thenne came Geffray to hys fader, & thus said to hym. 'My lord, I merueyH of you that are a 24 knight of so noble enterpryse how ye haue suffred so long of that hound Guedon the geaunt, that hath putte your countre of garande in subjection / by god, my lord, shame is therof to you.' When raymondin vnder-
28 stod hym, he said / 'Geffray, fayre sone, weye it is not long syn we knowe therof / & that we haue suffred vnto your joyful companyng. For we wold not trouble the fest / but doube you not, guedon shal haue hys 32 payment after his deserte. He slew my gransfader in the Counte of ponthieu, as it was told me in bretyyn, when I went thither for to fyght with Olyuer, sone to Josselyn, that betrayed my fader.'
T

hanne ansuerd Geffray: 'I ne wot nor wyl not enquyre of thinges past, syth that my predecessours haue therof had thonour & are come to theire aboue / but at this tyme present that Injurye shal be soo ne mended yf it plese god & I may / and as touching your persone ye ought not to meue your self for suche a theef & palyard; For I, with ten knightes of myn household only for to hold me companye / not for ayde 8 that I wyl haue of them ayenst hym, I shal goo fyght with hym' / And when Raymondyn hys fader vnder-stood hys wordes he was dolaunt & sorowful, and thus said to hym / 'sethen it may none other wyse be / goo 12 thou by the grace of god.' And thence geffray toke his lene of his fader & of hys moder, and putte hym self on the way toward garande accompanied with x knightes, and there where he passed by he enqyred 16 after gueidon where he might fynd hym / And wel it is trouth that it was told hym where the gaunt was / But men were meruaylled, & asked of geffray why he speryd after hym. 'By my feyth,' ansuerde geffray, 20 'I bryng hym the trybut & payment that he by his foly & outrage thaketh vpon my faders lordship / but it is neyther gold ne syluer / but it is only the poynte of my spercheed, For none other payment he shal re-24 ceyue of me but strokes of my swerde withal.' And when the good peple herde hym thus speke, they said to hym in this wyse: 'By my feyth, geffray, ye vnder-take grete foly, 1 For an honred suche as ye be shuld 28 not be able to withstand hys cruelte.' 'doubte you not,' said geffray / 'but lete me haue the feer alone' / and they held theire peas, For they durst not make hym wroth. For moche they fered hys fyersen & yre, of 32 whiche he was replenysshed / but they conduyted hym vnto a leghe nygh to the sayde geauntis retrette or pryue dwellyng / and pene they sayd to geffray: 'Sire, ye may lightly fynde hym at yonder place within the 36
forest’/ and geffray answer’d, ‘I wolde feyn see hym,
For to fynde hym I am come hither’/ And here
cesseth thystryre to speke of geffray/ and sheweth of
4 Raymondyn & of Melusyne. /

The veray and trew thystryre witnesseth that Ray-
mondyn & Melusyne were at merment making
grete joye for the prosperous estate & good Fortune of
8 theire children; but this joye was soone tourned to
grete sorowe, For as ye have herë how thystryre saith
tofore that Raymondyn promysed to Melusyne that
never on the saturday he shuld not enquire of her nor
12 desyre to see her that day. It is trouth that on a
Saturday a lytel byfore dyner tyme, Raymondyn under-
stode that hys brother the Erle of Forests was come
to Merment for to see hym & hys Noble Court.
16 whereof Raymondyn was ryght Joyous, but sith grete
myschief came to hym therfore as herafter shall be
shewed. Thenne made Raymondyn grete apparyH &
ryght noble for to receyue his brother/ And shortly to
20 shewe, he came & recounted hys brother 1 with noble
company & welcommes hym honourably, & dide moche
that one of that other, & went to chircheward togidre /
And after the deuyne service was don they came
24 agayn to the palleys where al thinges were redy to
dyner/ they wesshe theire handes and syn sett them
at dyner and pey were worshipfully serued/ ha / las !
thenne bygan a part of the doleur & heuynes. For hys
28 brother coude not kepe hym, but he asked after Melu-
syne, sayeng in this manere: ‘My brother, where is
my sustir Melusyne? lete her come, for moche I desyre
to see her.’ And Raymondyn, whiche thought none
32 euyl, answer’d, ‘she is not here at this tyme / but to
morne ye shal see her & shal make you good chere.’
But for that ansuer the Erle of Forests held not hys
peas / but thus said ayen to his brother: ‘Ye are my
36 brother / I owe not to hyde to you your dyshonour.

Raymondyn and Melusyne are at
Merment making joy over the
good fortune of
their children, but great sorrow
comes.
The history has
told how Ray-
mondyn promised
that he would
never inquire
after Melusyne
on Saturdays.
The Earl of
Forest comes
one Saturday.

After attending
curch they
return to the
palace,
and sit down to
dinner.

The earl asks
after Melusyne,
and says he de-
series much to
see her.
Raymondyn an-
swers that he
can see her next
day.
The earl says to
Raymondyn,
‘You are my
brother, I cannot
hide your dis-
honour.
Now, fayre brother, wete it that the commyn talking of the peple is, that Melusyne your wyf euery satirday in the yere is with another man in auoultyre / & so blynd ye are by her sayeng that ye dare not enquer nor 4 knoweth wher she becommeth or gooth / and also other sayen, & make them strong that she is a spyrtyte of the fayry, that on euery satirday maketh bir penaunce. I wot not to whiche of bothe I shal byleue / and for 8 none other cause I am come hither but to aduertyse you therof.' Whan Raymondin thenne vsnderstod these wordes that his brother hym saide he roos fro the table and entred in to his chambr Ye knoweth that ye enquer nor I shal byleue. /

Raymondin rises from the table full of jealousy; he girds on his sword and goes to the place where Melusyne retires on Saturdays. He finds a strong door, and pierces a hole in it with his sword.

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion.

Thystorye sayth in this partye that Raymondin stode so long at the yron doore that he perced it with the poynte of his swerd, wherby he might wel see
aH that was within the Chambre: and sawe melusyne within the bathe vnto her nauel, in fourme of a woman kymbyng her heere, and fro the nauel downward in 4 lyknes of a grete serpent, the tayH as grete & thykk as a bareH, and so long it was that she made it to touche oftymes, while that raymondyn beheld her, the rouf of the chambre that was ryght lye. And whan Ray-
8 mondyn perceyued it, wete it wel that he was ryght dolaunt and sorrowful & not without cause, and coude neuer hold hys tonge, but he said, 'My swete lone, now hane I betrayed you, & hane falsed my couenaut by 12 the ryght fals admonestynge of my brother, and hane forsorne myself toward you.' Raymondin theyme was smyten to the herte with suche sourow & dystresse that vnethe he coude speke / and pensefull with a heuy 16 contenauce retorned hastily toward hys chambre, and toke some wwer with he went & stopped the hoH that he had made at the doore of yron, and syn came agayn to the haH where he found hys brother. And 20 theyme whan therle of Forest perceyued hym and sawe hys heuy contenauce / wel supposed he that he had fond Melusyne in some shamfull fayt, and said to him in this wyse: 'My brother, I wyst it wel / haue ye not 24 fond as I said?' Theyme cryed Raymondin to hys brother of Forest in this manyero: 2:1 Voyde this place, fals traytour, For throug your fals reporte I haue falsed my feyth aynest the moost feythfullest & truest lady 28 that euer was borne. ye are cause of the losse of al my worldly joye & of my total destruction / by god, yf I byleued my courage, I shuld make you to dey now of an euyl deth / but rayson naturel kepeth & desfendeth 32 me therfro, bycause that ye are my brother / goo your way & voyde my syght, that al the grete maisters of

2 Fr.: Fuiez d'icy, faules triste, car vous m'avez fait, par votre tresmaenacis rapport, ma foy parjurer contre la plus layalle et la meilleure des dames qui oncques naquit, apres celle qui porta notre seigneur Ihesucriust.
The earl and his people ride home as fast as they can.

He repents of his foolish enterprise.

Raymondin cries, 'Alas, Melusine, I have lost you for ever.'

He upbraids Fortune, that made him slay his uncle.

and now will make him lose his lady.

HeH may condyte you thither' / And when the Erle of Forest apperecuyd Raymondyn his brother that was in so grete yre, he went out of the halle & all his peple, & mounted on horsbak and rode as fast as 1 they might toward Forests ryght pensefulH & heuy, repentynge hym of hys folysshi enterpyrse; for he knew wel that Raymondin his brother wold neuer loue hym nor see hym. Here I leue to speke of hym, & shal 8 shewe you of Raymondin that entred in to his chambre wooful & angre. /

'Alas, Melusyne,' sayd Raymondin, 'of whom all the world spake wele, now haue I lost you for ever. Now haue I fonde the ende of my Joye & the begynnyng is to me now present of myn euerlast-yng heuyynes / Farwel beaute, boute, swetenes, amy-ablete / Farwel wyt, curtoysye, & humilite / Farwel al 16 my joye, al my comfort & myn hoop / Farwel myn herte, my prowes, my valyaunce, For that lytel of honour whiche god had lent me, it came throught your noblesse, my swete & entierly belouyd lady. Ha / a, 20 falsed & bynyde Fortune, aigre, sharp, & byttir / wel hast thou ouerthrawen me fro the hyest place of thy whele vnto the lowest part of thy mansyon or dwellyng place, there as Jupyter festyceth with sorow & heuyynes, the 24 caytyf & vnhappy creatures / be pou now cursed of god. by the I slough ayenst my wyH my lord, myn vncele, the whiche deth thou seluest me to dere. helas! thou had putte and sette me in high auctoryte throught 28 the wyt and valeur of the wysest, the fayrest, & moost noble lady of al other / and now by the / fals bynyde traytour and enuyous, I must lese the sight of her of whom myn eyen toke theire fedyling! thou now hatest / 32 thou now louest, thou now makest / thou now vndost / in the, nys no more surety ne rest than is in a fane that tourneth at al windes. Halas / helas! my ryght swete & tendre loue / by my venymous treson I haue 36
macle ye have now rewarded you theifore. Certaynly ye have not other choys is to me but to take
myn vtermost exil there as neuer after no man lyuyng shall see me.'

Here sayeth this storye, that in suche doleur & be-
wayinges abode raymondin al that nyght tyl it
was day light. And as sone as aurora might be per-
ceyued, Melusyne came & entred in to the chambre / and whan Raymondyn here he made sem-
12 blaut of slepe. She toke of her clothes, and than al
naked layed herself by hym. And thenne bygan Ray-
mondyn to sighe as he that felt grete doleur at herte / and Melusyne embraced hym, & asked what hym eyled,
16 sayeng in this wyse: 'My lord, what eyleth you, be ye
syke?' And whan Raymondyn sawe that she of none
other biug speake, he supposed that she nothing had
knowen of this faytte / but for nought he byleued soo,
20 For she wyst wel that he had not entamed nor shewed
the materie to no man / Wherfor she suffred at that
tyme & made no semblaut therof / wherfore he was
right Joyous, and answerd to her: 'Madame, I haue be
24 somewhat euyl at ease & haue had an axe in maner
of a contynue.' 'My lord,' said Melusyne, 'abasshe you
not, For ye it plese god ye shal soone be hole.' And
thenne he that was right joyous said to her, 'By my
28 feyth, swete lune, I fel me wel at ease for your
commynge' / and she said, 'I am perof glad' / and
when tyme requiryd they roos and went to here masse / and soone after was the dyner redy / and thus abode
32 Melusyne with Raymondyn al that day / and on the
morne she toke leue of hym & went to Nyort, where
she bylded a fortresse. And here seaceth this storye of
her / and retourneth to speke of geffray.

2 Fr. ung peu de fièvre en manière de continuc.
GEFFRAY FINDS GUEDON’S QUARTERS. [CH. XXXVII.

Here sayth thy story, that Geffray came in garande, where as he was receyued with grete joye / and he asked where the geant guedon held hym self / and, as before is said, they conduyted hym, and shewed to hym the strong tour of Mermount, where the geant was, & said: ‘Sire, wete it / that ye blyeue vs, it shall suffyre you to hawe sene the toure, & shal retourne with vs; For as touching our personnes, we shal goo 8 no neer but horeyble geant, alga fo to eyther of vs your pesaunt or weight of fyn gold.’ ‘By my feyth, sires,’ said geffray, ‘I thanke you moche, that thus ferre ye have brought me.’

Geffray thenne, as thy story saith, descendid from his hors, & armed hym, and syn girded his sword about hym, & remounted on horsback; and after toke hym sheld, & heng it tofore hym brest; & 16 toke a clubbe of stele, & faste it at tharsons of his sadé; and syn toke a trompe of yuory, and heng it at hym neck behynde; and syn asked hym spere / and thenne saith to his tene knyghtes, in this manere: 20 ‘Fayre lordes, abde me in this valey / and ye god graunte me the vyctory of the geant, I shal thenne blowe this horne / and whan ye shal here it, ye shal lyghtly come to me.’ And they were dolaunt that he 24 wold not suffre them to go with hym, and bade hym farweH, prayeng god for his good spede. Thenne departed the valyaunt & hardy geffray, and mounted the montayne; and anoone cam to the first gate of the 28 toure, & found it open / thenne entred he in to the bassecourt, & went toward the dongeon, that strong was to meruayH. And whan he was nygh, he beheld it, & moche 2played hym the facion and byldyng of 32 hit; but he sawe the brydge, that was drawen vp. For the geante slepte. Thenne he cryed with a hye voys, sayeng in this manere: ‘hourys sone & fals geaunt, 1 clys swerd twice in MS.
come speke with me! For I bryng to the / the syluer that the peuple of my lord, my fader, owen to the.' And, for certayn, geffray cryed so long that the geant awacked, & came at a wyndowe, and beheld geffray, armed of al pyeaces, mounted vpon a courser, that held hys spere couched / and thus bygan to crye, with a lowde voyee, 'knyght! what wold thou haue?' 'By 8 my sowle,' said geffray, 'I seke for the, & for none other / and I come hither to chalange the, and bring' with me the trybut that thou hast ouersetthe vpon the people of my lord, Raymondyn of Lusynen, my fader.' 12 Thenne whan the geant vnderstode geffray, he was nygh aragid & mad, that of one knight alone was so bold to make hym warre, & had sette hym so nygh hys place. but, notwithstanding, when he had wel aduyised 16 hym, he consydered in hym self that he was a man of grete valyaunce. Thenne the geant armed hymself, and laced the taches of hys helmet; & toke a grete barre of yron, and a grete sythe of stele, & came to 20 the brydje, and lete it fall; & came in the bassecourt, & demanded of geffray: 'What art thou, knight, that art so bold to come hither?' And geffray answerd, in this manere: 'I am geffray with the grete tooth, sone 24 to Raymondyn of Lusynen, that commeth hither to chalenge the patiz or trybut, that thou takest throug thy grete pryde, of my lord my faders peple.' Thenne whan Guedon vnderstod it, he bygan to lawhe, and to 28 hym thus said: 'By my feyth, poure foyle, for thy grete hardynes & the grete enterprise 1 of thyn herte, I haue pyte of the. Now wyl I shew to the curtouysye / that is, that thou retouerne lyghtly to make thy warre in 32 other place; For wete thou wel, yf now with the were V. C suche foles as thyself art, yet cooudest thou not endure and withstand my pyuannee. but for pyte that I haue to putte to deth so hardy a knight, as I 36 suppose thou art, I gyue the lyncence & congii to

who comes to his wyndow and asks what he wants.

Geffray answers he bears him his tribute for his misdoings.

The giant is enraged;

he arms

and descends to the bassecourt, and again asks who Geffray is.

He answers that he is the son of Raymondyn, and has come to chalenge the tribute he has heretofore exacted.

Guedon laughs at him,

1 fol. 177 b.

and tells him to go back, because V. C like Geffray could not overcome him.
He says he will remit the tribute for a year.

Geffray is sorrowful that the giant appraises him at so little.

He taunts Guedon that he is afraid;

but the giant still laughs at him.

Geffray there-upon spurs his horse and rides against Guedon.

Geffray knocks him down.

The giant rises, and smites Geffray's horse.

Geffray dismounts and approaches the giant with sword drawn.
The giant comes against him,

and raises his scythe to smite Geffray,

returne to Raymondyn thy fader / goo thou lyghtly hens / and for love of the I shall forguye to thy faders peple the payement of a hoH yere of the trybut that they owe me.' Thenne when geffray with the grete 4 toth herd that the geaunt made so lytel of hym, & that as nought he preyed hym, he was of it ryght dolaunt, and said to hym in this wyse: 'Meschaunt creature, thou alrely ferest me moch / I wyl wel thou wete that 8 of thy curtoysy I sett nought by, For thus spekest thou for the grete feer that thou hast of my teeth. but wete thou, for certayn, that I shal neuer departe fro this place vnto that tyme I haue separet the lyf fro thy body / 12 and therfor, haue pyte of thyself, & not of me, For I hold the for deed where as thou art / & ryght foorth I defiye ye.' And when the geaunt herd hym, he made semblauit of lawghing, sayeng al this: 'Geffray, fool, 16 thou commest in to batayH, & thou mayst not endure one stroke of me only, without I felle the to pe erthe.' And thesame geffray, without ony more sayeng, smote hys hors with hys sporys, and charged hys spere, & 20 dressed hym toward the geaunt, asmoche as the hors might ranne; and strak hym through the brest by suche strength that he bare hym to the ground, the bely vpward. 1but the geaunt stert vp lyghtly, in grete 24 yre, & as geffray passed by, he smote hys hors behym with hys sythe of fyn stele / and when geffray wyst it, he descended lyghtly from hys hors, & came toward the geaunt, the swerd drawn. and thesame came the 28 geaunt toward hym, holding his sythe in his hand: where as was grete batayH.

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande.

A thus, as ye haue herde, geffray was on foot tofore the geaunt, that held his syte in his fyst, & supposed to haue smyte geffray / but he bare
it vp / & with that, he smote with his sword upon the haste\(^1\) of the giant's sythe, that it fell in two pyces. And then the giant toke his flayel of yron, & gaf Geffray a grete buffe upon his bassinet, wherwith he was almost astonied. Then came Geffray toward his hors, that laye on the erthe, & toke his clubbe of yron, that lyng at tharsons of his sadeH, & lightly tourned toward the giant, that haunced his flayel, supposing to dyscharge it upon Geffray / but Geffray, that was pert in armes, smote with his clubbe suche a stroke upon the flayel, that he made it to flee out of the 12 giant's handes. And then he the giant, full of yre, put his hand in his bosom, where were thre hammers of yron; of the whiche he toke one, & casted it by suche radear, that ye Geffray had not receyued that strok vp 16 his clubbe, he might haue be myschieuyd therwith / by the force wherof his clubbe flough out of his handes: and the giant toke it vp / but Geffray drew lightly his sword, & came to the giant, that supposed to haue 20 smyte Geffray with the clubbe of steele on the heed / but Geffray, that was light & strong, fled the stroke, & the giant faylléd; & the stroke fell to therth, by the force wherof the heed of the clubbe entred in to the grounde 24 a large foote deep. And thenne Geffray smote the giant upon the ryght arm with his sword, in suche vyolence, & hors swerde was so sharp & trenchaunt, that he made it to flygh fro hors body to the erthe. Then was he 28 giant gretilly abasshed, when he sawe thus his arm lost / notwithstanding, he haunced his sword with his other hand, & trowed to haue smyte Geffray at herte / but Geffray kept hym wel therfro, & smote the giant vp 32 upon the legge, vnder the knee, by suche strength that he smote it in two. Thenne the giant fell, & gaf suche an horrible crye, that al the valey sowned perof, so that they that bode for Geffray, her? it / but they

\(^1\) Fr. manche, a haft or handle. Written 'haste' in MS.

who cuts it in halves.

The giant takes his flayel and smites Geffray.

**2** fol. 178 b.

Geffray takes his iron club and knocks the flayel out of the giant's hands.

The giant throws a hammer at Geffray and drives his club out of his hands.

The giant thinks to hit Geffray, but he flees the stroke.

Then Geffray smites off the giant's right arm.

The giant tries to strike at Geffray with the other hand, but he cuts the giant's leg in two.

The giant falls, and utters a horrible cry.
knew not the certayn what it was / but alwayes they had grete meruyH of that horruble sowne. Thenes Geffray cutte the taches of the geant helmet, and after cutte of his heed / and syn toke hys horne, & blew it; 4 Wherby his peple, that were in the valey, might here it / and so dide other that were of the countre / and by put they knew the geaunt was deed; wherof they gaaf lawdyng to our lord god deuoutely. and imme-8 diatly they mounted the mountayne, & came to the place, where they fonde Geffray, that said to them of the Countre / 'this fals traytoure geaunt shall neuer more patyse you, For he as now this tyme present, hath 12 neyther lust nor talent to aske ony tribut of you.' And whan they percyued the body & the heed of the geaunt, lyeng in two partes, they were al abasshed of hys gretnes, For he was XV foot of lengthe / sayeng to 16 Geffray, that he had enterprysed a grete faytte, to haue putte hym self in so grete parel tassayH suche a dyueH / 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'the parel is past. For, fayre lorde, I wyl that ye knowe / thing 20 neuer bygonne / hath neuer ende / In euery thing most be bygynnyng, tofore the ende commeth.'

2 Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Maylezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder.

Moche were themes the knightes abasshed, as thistorye reherceth, of this that Geffray had 28 slayn the geaunt, that was so grete & mighty. And the tydinges therof were spreD in the Countre, & in the marches about. And also Geffray sent, by two of hys knightes, to hys fader, the heed of the geaunt. And 32 in the meane season he went & dysported hym in the Countre, where as he was grety festeD, & receyued
with grete joye, & presented with grete ryches. Here I
shall leue to speke of hym / & shal shew you of Froymond, hys brother, who that prayed so moche hys fader
and his moder, that they were greable that he shuld be
professed monke at Maylleses / & so he was shorne, by
the consentement of hys fader, & of this moder;
Wherof thabbot & al consent was ryght joyous.
And wete it wel, there were within the place to the
nombre of an hondred monkes. And yf they had
thenne grete joye of Froymonds professyon / it was
afterward reuersed in to grete doleour / as ye shal here
hereafter / but wete it wel, that it was not thrughe the
faytte of Froymond, For he was right denoute, & ledd
a religous lyf / but by the rayson of hym came to
the place a merueylous aventure. It is trouth that the
two forsaid knightes that geffray sent vnto hys fader
with the heed of the geant, rode tyll they came to
merment, wher they fond Raymondin, & presented
hym with the heed of the geant, wherof he was joyful.
And the heed was moche loked on / & every man
meruyayled how geffray durst assay hym. And thenne
Raymondin sent a lettre to geffray, how Froymond, his
brother, was professed monke at thabbey of maylleses.
He sends back
word to Geffray
how Froimond
was professed
monk.

The knights bring Raymondin
the giant's head.

He gives the knights gifts,
and bids them
take the head to
Melusine.

32 of their way. Thenne so departed the two knightes,
& helde on their way tyll they came to nyort, where
they fonde their lady; the whiche they salued, &
presented her with the heed of the geant. Wherof
she was ryght joyous, 2 and sent it to Rochelle, and was
Melusine.
She has set upon a spear at the gate toward guynenne. And Melusyn gaf the two knyghtes ryche yeftes; and after that toke their eune, and went toward the tour of mountyonet, where geffray was for hys dysport & solas. And here cessest thyystery, & sheweth other matere. 

There was a giant in Northumber-land named Grymault, xviij. foot high.

He lived at Brombelyo, and destroyed the country for nine leagues round.

They beare in Northumberland of Geffray's deed, and resolve to ask him to deliver them from Grymault.

Eight noble persons are sent to Geffray;

They have sent upon a spear at a gate of Rochelle.

And

Fr.

sette vpon a spear at the gate toward guynenne. And Melusyne gaf the two knyghtes ryche yeftes; and after that toke their eune, and went toward the tour of mountyonet, where geffray was for hys dysport & solas. And here cessest thyystery, & sheweth other matere. 

There was a giant in Northumber-land named Grymault, xviij. foot high.

He lived at Brombelyo, and destroyed the country for nine leagues round.

They beare in Northumberland of Geffray's deed, and resolve to ask him to deliver them from Grymault.

Eight noble persons are sent to Geffray;

And

Fr. Monjouet.
of hym tofore your commyng; for the pyte that I haue of the destruction of the peple, & also for to seke honour. Wete it that now foorthwith I wyl departe with you without ony longer delay / and by the help of god I suppose texille the geaunt.' And þey themne gaaf hym grete thankinges.

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymond cam in garande toward geffray.

Theñne came the two knyghtes that he had sent toward hys fader, and salued hym honourably, and recounted hym the noble chere that they had hadd of hys fader & of his moder, whiche grete hym wel: 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'that playseth me wel.' and after they delyuered to hym the lettre from hys fader, which geffray toke & opendi it / the tenour of whiche made meneon how Froymond his brother was shorne monke at Mayllezes. And whan geffray vnderstod it he was wroth, & shewed thenne so fel & cruel semblauwt that there ne was so hardly that durst abyde the syght of hym; but they all voyded the place except the two knightes and the ambaxatours of northomberland. /

In this party sheweth this story, that whan geffray knew the tydynges of Froymonds professyon he was so dolaunt that almost he went fro his wytt. And wete it wel that themne he semed bettre to be araged & madd than man with rayson. And he said in this wyse: 'how deueH! had not my fader & my moder ynough for to entreteyn & kepe thestate of Froymond my brother, & hym to haue maryed som noble lady of the land? / and not to haue made hym a monke / by god omnipotent these flatterers monkes shal repente them perof, For they haue enchaunted my lord my fader, & haue drawen Froymond with them for to fare and declares that the monks shall repent of their guile and their greed.
Geffray goes to the Convent of Mailleses. [CH. XL.

je bettre by hym / but by the feyth that I owe to god I shal pay them so, therfore, that they shal neuer haue neyther lust ne talent to withdraw no noble man to be shorne monke with them.' And themne he said to the 4 bassade of Northomerland: 'Sires, ye muste soiiourne a while & abyde my returne hither / For I must goo to an affayre of myn that toucheth me moche.' And they that knewe hys wrathe & anger answerd: 'My S lord, so shal we doo with a good wyll.' Thenne made geffray his ten knightes to mounte on horsback / and also he armed hym and lept on hys hors / & syn departed 1 fro Mountyoned, espyres with grete yre ayenst 12 the abbot & Conuent of Maylleses / and at that tyme the said abbot & hys monkes were in Chapitre. And geffray thanze come to the place, entred, the swordgird about hym, in to the Chapitre. And when he 16 perceyued thabbot & hys monkes, he said al on yhe to them: 'Ye false monkes / how haue ye had the hardynes to haue enchanted my brother, in so moche that thrughe your false & substyl langage haue shorne hym 20 monke / by the toeth of god yl ye thought it, For ye shal drynk therfore of an euyl drynk.' 'Helas! my lord,' said thabbot, 'for the lone of god haue mercy on vs / and suffre you to be enfourmed of the trouth & 24 rayson, For on my Creatour, I nor none of vs aH counseylde hym neuer therto.' Thenne came Froymont foorth, that trowed wel to haue peased the yre of geffray hys brother / and pus said: 'My dere, dere 28 brother / by the body & sowle which I haue gyuen to god, here is no personne, nor within this place that euer spake ony word to me touching my professyon, For I haue it doon of myn owne free wylle & through deuotion.' 'By my sowle,' said geffray, 'so shalt thou be therfore payed with the other, For it shal not be wytted2 me to haue a brother of myn a monke' / and

2 By in MS. (Fr. Mon.) 3 Fr. reprocliche.
with these wordes he went out of the Chapter, &
shetted the doores fast after hym, & closed thabbot &
the monkes therynne / and incontynent he made al
the meyne of the place to bryng there wode & strawe
ynoughe al about the Chapter, and fyred it / & sware
he shuld brende them aH therynne, & that none shuld
escape. Thenne came the ten knyghtes foorth tofore
geffray, whiche blamed hym of that horrible saytte
His knights re-
sayeng: ‘that Froymond, his broper, was in good
monstrate wit
purpos, & that happily thrughe hys prayers & good
dedes the sowles of his frendes & other myght be
12 asswaged & holpen.’ ‘By the toetb of god,’ sayd
the onge geffray, ‘nother he nor none monke in this
place shall never syng masse nor say prayer, but they
shal aH be bruled & brennt.’ Thenne departed the x
16 knyghtes from hys presence / sayeng that they wold not
be couplable of that merueyllous werke.

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete
toetb fyred thabbee of Mayllezes, & brennt
20 bothe thabbot & al the monkes there.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Geffray anoon
after that the ten knyghtes were departed fro hym,
he toke fyre at a lampe within the chirche, & sette the
24 fyre in the strawe aH about the Chapter, where as were
in thabbot, & al the monkes of the place, & hys brother
Froymond with them. It was a pyteous syght, For
as soone as 2 the monkes sawe the fyre they bygan to
28 crye piteously, & to make bytter & doulurous bewayl-
lynges, but al that preuaylled them nought. What
shuld I make long compte? Wel it is trouth, that all
the monkes were brennt / and wel the half of the said
32 Abbey or euer geffray departed thens. That don he
came to hys hors & lepte vp / but whan he cam in to
the feldes he retourned hys hors, & beheld toward
thabbaye / & perceuyung that grete myschief & the
dommage that he had don there, & his vnkynd & ab-
homynable deelyng, remors of conscience smote the
herte of hym, and bygan to syghe and bewayH byttirly / 4
sayeng vnto him self in this wyse: 'helas! fals, wycked,
& vntrue prodytour¹ & enemy of god / woldest thou
that men dide to the that / whiche thou hast doo to
the true seruauntes of god? / nay certayn.' And thus 8
blamed & wytted hym self, so that no man myght
thinke the dyscomfort & grete dyspaire that he thenne
toke / & wel I byleue that he had slayn hym self with
hys owne swerde yf it thezne had not fortunated that 12
hys ten knightes cam to hym there / one of the whiche
bygan to hym saye / 'ha / a, my lord, ouer late is this
repened.' And whan geffray understode hym / he
thenne had greter despyte than tofore / but he dayned 16
not ansuere to the knyght, but rode so fast toward the
toure of Mountyouet, that with grete peyne myght his
men folow hym / & so long rode he tyl he came
thither / And thenne made his apparyH for to goo 20
with the ambaxatours there as they shold conduyte
hym / & toke with hym but his x knightes. And
here seaceth thystoyre of hym, & speketh of Ray-
mondin his fader /

Here sayth thistory, that a messager came toward
Raymondin at merment that came fro mail-
leses,² and after hys obeyssauence recounted to Raymon-
dyn ryght pyteous tydynges, sayeng to hym in this 28
manere: 'My lord, wel it is trouht, that geffray with
the great toth your son hath take so grete malencoyle
& suche duceyl of the professyon of your son Froymond
that he is com to maylleses, & there he hath fyred the 32
Abbay / & within the chapter brent & bruled aH the
monkes, pryour, & Abbot.' 'What sayst thou?' sayd
than Raymondyn / 'that may not be / I can not beleue

¹ Fr. proditeur.
it.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the messager, 'it is
trouth that I telle you; & morover, your son Froy-
mond is brent & deed with them / and yf ye byleue
me not make me to be putte in to pryson, & yf ye
fynde otherwyse than I saye, lete me be hanged ther-
fore.' Thenne Raymondyn sorowfull & heuy mounted
foorthwith on horsbak, & toke hys way toward mayl-
8 lesen as fast as hys hors myght bere hym / and hys
men, who pot myght folowed hym / and he neuer
seaced tyl he cam thither / where he fonde, as the mes-
sager said, & sawe the grete dolore & myschief that
12 geffray had don. Wherof he toke suche yre & anger
at herte, that almost he was out of hys wyt. 'ha / a,'
sayd he, 'Geffray, thou haddest the fayrest begynyng
of hye prowes & cheualrye to haue come to the degree
16 of high honoure more than ony prynee son lyuyng at
this day / and now throug thy grete cruelte thou shalt
be reputed & holden vnworthy of al noble fayttes, &
abomyned for cause of thys vnkyndnes & horryble
20 dede of al creatures. By the feyth that I owe to god,
I byleue it is but fantosme or spyryt werke of this
woman / and as I trowe she neuer bare no child that
shal at thende haue perfection, For yet hath she
24 brought none but that it hath some strange token / see
I not the 1horryblynes of her son called Horryble, that
passed not vii yere of age whan he slew two squyers of
myn / and or euuer he was thre yere old he made dye
28 two gentyl women his nourryces, throug hys byttyng of
their pappes? / sawe I not also theyre moder of that
saturday, whan my brother of Forestz to me brought
euyl tydyinges of her / in fourrne of a serpent fro the
32 naul downward? / by god, ye / and wel I wote certayn /
it is som spyryt, som fantosme or Illusyon that thus
hath abused me / For the first tyme that I sawe her /
she knew & coude reherce ahh my fortune & auenture.'

But the messen-
ger says it is the
truth, and that
Froymond was
burnt with them.

Raymondin rides
to Maileesa,
and when he sees
the mischief
he complains of
Geffray,
and how he will
be hated for his
cruelty.

He cries that he
believes it is
spirit work.

He complains
that Melusine
never bore a
perfect child,
and of the
horribleness of
her son Horrible,
1 fol. 184.

He speaks of
seeing Melusine
half woman, half
serpent, on a
Saturday,
and says he
believes her to
be a spirit.
In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn, pensedfulle and wroth ouer meruayllously, departed fro Mayllezes, & rode agayn toward Merment. And when he was come thither, he aligthyted, & went in to hys chambre, where as he layed hym vp on a bed / and there he made suche lamentacion, & so pyteous bewayllynges, that there nys in the world herte so harde / but that it had wepte to here hym. Theame were al the 8 barons ryght dolaunt / and when they sawe that they myght not gyue none allegiance to hys dolour, they toke Counseyft that they shuld lette it wete to theire lady Melusyne, whiche was at Nyort that tyme / and 12 thither they sent a messanger, to recounte to her al the mateure of the fayt. Halas! ful eyyl dide they, For they augmented thereby bothe Raymondyn & Melusyne in theyre douleur & myserye. Now bygynneth theire 16 hard & bytter departhyng, eche fro other, whiche dured to Raymondyn his lyf natural / & to Melusyne shal laste her penitence vnto domysday. The messager theame rode tyll he came to Nyort, & made his 20 obeyssaunce, & syn deluyered the lettres to his lady: the whiche she toke, & opened it. And when she vnderstode the tenour of the lettres, she was ryght heuy & dolaunt, & more for the yre & wrath of Raymondyn 24 than for ouy other thing; For she sawe wel that the meschief that geffray had doon might none otherwyse be as for that tyme present. She thenne made come aff her peuple & aray, and sent for many ladyes & 28 damoysselles, for to hold her companye / and so departed fro Nyort, & came to Lusynen / and there she soiuourned by the space of thre dayes / and euer she was of symple & heuy contenauce / and went al about 32 in the place, vp & doun, here & there / gyuyng ofte syghes so grete that it was meruayll & pyteous to here / And the hystory & crynykle, whiche I byleue be trew, sheweth to vs that wel she knew the doluer & 36
sorrow that was nygh her to come / and as to me, I
bylene it fermely / but her peple thoughte nothing of
that / but they trowed that it had be for cause of the
grete myschief that was befeH throug the fayttes of
gefray, to thabbay of maylleses / and also for the
wrathe & anger that Raymondyn toke therof. Melu-
syne themne, on the III\textsuperscript{de} day, departed fro Lusynen, &
came to merment wel acompanyed of ladies & damoy-
selles, as tofore I haue sayd. And themne the barons
of the land, that were there assembled for to haue
recomforted Raymondin, that they loued entierly / came
ayenst her, & honourably receyued her / & sayd how
they by no wyse coude make Raymondyn to leue hys
dolour. 'Wel,' sayd she / 'doubte you no; For, by
the grace of god, he shalbe some recomforted.'

Melusyne, the good lady, that themne was wel
accompanyed of many ladies & noble damoy-
selles, & of the barons of the land, entred in to the
chambre where as Raymondin was in / the which
chambre had regarde toward the gardyns, that were
commodous & delectables, and also to the fieldes
toward Lusynen. Themne whan she saw Raymondin,
humbly & ryght honourably salued hym / but themne
he was so dolaunt & replenysshed with yre, that he to
her ansered neuer a word / and themne she toke the
word, & sayd: 'My lord, grete symplenes & foly it is
to you that men repute & hold so sage & so wyse a
prynce / you thus to maynten & make suche sorrowes of
that thinge that may none other wyse be, & whiche
may not be amended nor remedied / ye argue ayenst
the playsiere & wyH of the Creatour, whiche aH things
created, & shal vndo at al tymes whan it playse hym,
by suche manere wyse aftir his playsiere. Wete it that
there nys so grete a synnar in the world / but that
is more piteable & mysericordious whan the synnar
repenteth hym, with herte contryte, of his mysdede &
and that God had allowed Geffray so to do because of the sins of the monks. She says they have enough to rebuild the abbey, and to endow it richer than it was before, and she hopes that Geffray will amend his life.

1 fol. 155 b.

Though Raymondin knows she speaks wisely, he is so full of anger that in a cruel voice he cries,

'Go hence, false serpent! Thou and thy children are but phantoms.

How can the dead have life again?

Froymond, your only perfect child, by devilish art has suffered death.

Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoone, for this that Raymondyn, her 24 lord, wyted her.

'Goo thou hens, fals serpente / by god! nother thou nor thy birthe shalbe at thende but fantasme / nor none child that thou hast brought shal 28 come at last to perfection / how shal they that are brente & bruled haue theire lyues agayn / goode fruyte yssued neuer of the, saaf only Froymonde, that was youen to god & shorne monke; the whiche, through 32 arte demonyacle, hath myserably suffred deth: For aH
they that are foursenyd\textsuperscript{1} with yre obeye \textsuperscript{2} the comendaments of the prynces of helle. And perfor, thorryble & cruel Geffray commanded of his masters, alle the 4 deuelles of helle, hath doon that abhomynable & hydouse forfaytte, as to brene hys owne propre brother & the monkes, that had not dessaued deth.\textsuperscript{3} Thenne whan melusyne vnderstode these wordes, she toke suche 8 douleir at herte, that foorthwith she se\textsuperscript{4} in a swoune doun to therthe, & was halfe an oure long that nother aspyracion nor breth was felt nor perceyued in her, but as she had be deed. And thenne was Raymondyn 12 sorowfuller & more wroth than eu\textsuperscript{er} he was tofore, For thenne he was cooled of his yre, & bygan to make grete duey\textsuperscript{He}, & moche repented hym of that he had sayd / but it was for nought, For pat was to late / And 16 thenne the baronnye of the land, & the ladyes & damoy-selles were ryght sory & dolaunt, and toke vp the lady, & layed her on a bed / and so moche they dide, that she came ayen to her self. And whan she myght 20 speke, she loked on Raymondyn pyteously, and said /

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn.

\textsuperscript{2} fol. 186.

\textsuperscript{1} Fr. enforcing.

\textsuperscript{2} Geffray burnt his brothers by command of his masters, the devils of helle.'

\textsuperscript{3} Melusine is overcome by his cruel words, and swoons.

\textsuperscript{4} He repents, but it avails nought.

\textsuperscript{5} When Melusine comes to herself she looks pitieously at Raymondyn and says,

\textsuperscript{6} It was an evil hour when I first saw your figure.

\textsuperscript{7} When you falsely betrayed me I forgave you because you kept my secret.

\textsuperscript{8} fol. 186 b.
and god shuld haue pardoned the. Halas, my frende / now is our love tourned in hate, doleur & hardnes / oure solace, playsire & joye ben reversed in byttir teerys & contynuel wepynges, and our good happ is 4 converted in ryght hard & vnfortunate pestilence / Halas, my frend! ye thou haddest not falsed thy feythe & thyne othe, I was putte & exempted from all peyne & tourment, & shuld haue had al my ryghtes, & 8 hadd lyued the cours natural as another woman; & shuld haue be buryed, aftir my lyf naturel expired, within the chirche of our lady of Lusynen, where myn obsequye & afterward my amnyersary shuld haue be 12 honourably & devoutely don / but now I am, thruge thyne owne dede, ouerthrown & ayn eneersed in the greuouse and obscure penytence, where long tyme I haue be in, by myn aventure: & thus I muste suffre & bere 16 it, vnto the day of domme / & al through thy falsed / but I beseeche god to pardonne the.' Melusyne began theyme to make suche doleur,' that none was there that sawe her but he wept for pyte. And whan Ray-20 mondyn sawe her doueur & heuynes, almost hys herte brake for sorowe, in so moche that he nother her, nor sawe, nor coude hold contenauence. / Thystorye sayth that Raymondyn was right dolaunt; 24 and, for trouth, the true cronkykle testyfyeth that neuer no man suffred so grete dolyer, wythout of his lyf expired. but whan he was a lytel come to hys mynde, & sawe Melusyne tofore hym, he kneeled doun 28 on hys knees, & joyntly1 handes, thus bygan he to, saye: 'My dere lady & my frende, my wele, my hoop, & myn honour, I beseeche & pray you that it playse you to pardonne me, & that ye wyil abyde with me.' 'My 32 swete frend,' sayd Melusyne, that saw the grete habundance of teerys fallynge fro hys eyen / 'he that is the very forguyer, creatour & omnipotent, forguye you your

1 Fr. foinguist.
Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne fell bothe in a swoone.

And with thoo wordes Melusyne toke vp Raymondyn, her lord / and theane, as they wold haue embraced & kyssed eche other, they fell bothe at ones in a swoone, so that almost theire hertes brake for grete swoon: Certayn there was a pyteous syght. There wept & bewaylled barons / ladyes & damoyselles, sayeng in þis manere: 'Ha, fals Fortune! We shal lese this day þe best lady that ever governed ony land / the moost sage / most humble / moost charyteable & curteys of aþ other lyuyng in erthe.' And they al lamented & bewaylled so pyteously, & rendred teerys in habundance, in so moche that it was a pyteous syght. Thenne retourned Melusyne to her self out of swoonyng, and herd the heuynes & dolour that the baronnye made for her departyng / and cam to Raymondyn, that yet laye on the grounde, & toke hym vp / and thenne to hym, in heryng of thassistaunce, she said in this manere /

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament. /

'My lord & swete frend Raymondyn, Impossible is my lenger taryeng with you; Wherfore lyst, & herke, & putte in mynde that I shal saye. Wete it, Raymondyn, that certayn after your lyf naturel expired, no man shal not empocesse nor hold your land; so free in peas as ye now hold it, & your heyres & successours shal haue moche to doo / and wete it shal as she does; but declares that God will not let her abide with him. 1 fol. 157.

My sweet friend, it is im-possible to stay with you, therefore listen and keep in mind what I say. After your life no man shall hold your land in peace.
Your heirs
through their
folly shall lose
their inheritance.

Keep Geffray
with you, he will
prove a valiant
man. I will
take care of
Raymond and
Theodoric,
though after I go
you will never
see me again in
woman's form.
I bequeath Par-
tenay to Theo-
deric;

Raymond shall
be Earl of Forest;
Geffray will pro-
vide for himself.

I charge you to
put Horrible to
death.'

Raymondin asks
Melusine to stay
with him,

but she says that
it cannot be done.

She then kisses
him tenderly and
bids him adieu.

be ouerthrawn & subdued, through their folly, from
their honour & from their ryght enherytaunce / but
doubte you not, For I shal help you duryng the cours
of your lyf naturel / and putte not geffray, oure sone, 4
dro your Court / he is your sone, 1 & he shal preue a
noble & valyaunt man. Also we haue two yong chil-
dren male, Raymond & theoderyk / of them I shal take
good heede / how be it, aftir my departyng / that ryght 8
soone shal be / ye shal neuer see me in no womans
fourme. And I wyl & bequethe to theodoryk, yongest of
athed our children, the lordships with al thapparten-
ances of Partenay / Vernon / Rochelle, & the port 12
there / And Raymond shal be Erle of Forestz / and as
touching geffray, he shal wel pursuaye for hym self.'
Thenne drew she Raymondyn & hys CounseyH apart,
& sayd to them in this wyse: 'As touching our sone, 16
that men calle Horryble, that hath thre eyen / wete it
for certayn, yf he be lefte alyue / neuer man dide, nor
neuer shal doo, so grete dommage as he shalH. Wher-
fore I pray & also charge you that, anoone aftir my 20
departyng, he be put to deth; For yf ye doo not soo /
his lyf shal fuH dere be bought, & neuer ye dide so
grete folye.' 'My swete loue,' sayd Raymondyn, 'there
shal be no fawte of it / but, for goddis loue, haue pyte 24
on yourself, & wyl abyde with me.' And she said to
hym: 'My swete frend, yf it were possyble / soo wold
I fayne doo / but it may not be. And wete it wel, that
my departyng fro you is more gyrenous & doubtous a 28
thousand tyymes to me than to you / but it is the wyH
& playsire of hym that can do & vndoo al thinges.'
and, with these wordes, she embraced & kyssed hym
fuH tenderly / sayeng: 'Farwel, my owne lord & 32
husbandl; Adieu, myn herte, & al my joye; Farwel, my
loue, & al myn wele / and yet as long as thou lyuest, I
shal feed myn eyen with the syght of the / but pyte I
haue on the of this, that thou mayst neuer see me but 36
in horryble figure / and therwith she lept vpon the windowe that was toward the feldes & gardyns ayenst Lusynen.

4 Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe.

In this partye, saith thistorye, that whan Melusyne was vpon the wyndowe as before is said, she toke leue sore wepyng, and her commanded to al the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles that were present / and after said to Raymondyn: 'here be two rynges of gold that be bothe of one vertue, and wete it for trouth that

as long as ye haue them, or one of them / you / nor your heyres that shal haue them after you, shal neuer be dyscomfyted in pley nor in batayH, yf they haue good cause / nor they that haue them shal not dey by no dede of armes,' and Immediatly he toke the rynges.

And after bygan the lady to make pyteous regrets and greuouse syghynges, beholding Raymondyn right pyteously / And they that were there wept alway so ten.

And 20 derly that eueryche of them had grete pyte, they syghyng full pyteously. Thenne Melusyne in her lamentable place, where she was vpon the wyndowe hauyng respection toward Lusynen, said in this wyse, 'Ha, thou swete Countre / in the haue I had so grete solas & recreacion, in the was al my felicite / yf god had not consented that I had be so betrayed I had be full happy / alas! I was wonnt to be called lady / & men were redy to fullfylle my commandements / & now not able to be alowed a symple servaunt / but asygned to horryble peynes & tourments vnto the day of fynal judgement. And al they that myght come
to my presence had grete Joye to behold me / and fro this tyme foorth they shal dysdayne me & be fereful of myn abhomynable figure / and the lustes & playsirs that I was wonnt to haue shal be reuertid in tribulacions

She looks to the window,
and again takes leave, weeping sorely.
She gives Raymondin two magic rings.
Those present weep, so full of pity are they.
She speaks of her sad future,
and how all will disdain her because of her abominable figure.
& grievous penitences.' And thenne she bygan to say with a hye voyce: 'Adieu, my lustis & playser / Far wel, my lord / barons / ladyes, & damoyselles, and I beseche you in the moost humble wyse that ye vouche sauf to pray to the good lord devoutely for me / that it playse hym to mynusshe my dolorous peyne / notwithstanding I wyl let ye knowe what I am & who was my fader, to thentent ye reproche not my 8 children, that they be not borne but of a mortal woman, and not of a serpent, nor as a creature of the faery / and that they are the children of the daughter of kynge Elynas of Albanye and of pe queene Pressyne, and that 12 we be thre sustirs bat by predestacion are predestynate to suffer & bere grievous penuences, and of this materie I may no more shew, nor wyl.' And therewith she said: 'farwel, my lord Raymondyn, and forgete not 16 to doo with your sone called Horryble this that I haue you said / but thynke of your two sones Raymond & Theodoryk.' Thenne she bygan to gyue a sore syghe, & therwith flawgh in to thayer out of the wyndowe, 20 transfigured lyke a serpent grete & long in xv foote of length. And wete it wel that on the basse stone of the wyndowe apereth at this day themprynate of her foote serpensous. Thenne encreased the lamentable 24 sorowes of Raymondyn, and of the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles / and moost in especial Raymondyns heuy-nes aboue al other / And forthwith they loked out of the wyndowe to behold what way she toke / And 28 the noble Melusyne so transfigured, as it is aforisaid, flyeng thre tymes about the place, passed forby the wyndow, gyuyng at eneche tyme an horrible cry & pyteous, that caused them that beheld her to wepe for 32 pyte. For they perceyued wel that loth she was to departe fro the place, & that it was by constraynte. And thenne she toke her way toward Lusynen, makyng in thayer by her furyousnes suche horrible crye & 36
noyse that it semed al thayer to be replete with thundre & tempeste. / 4 Thus, as I haue shewed, went Melusyne, lyke a serpent, flyeng in thayer toward Lusynen / & not so hygh / but that the men of the Countre might see her / and she was herf a myle in thayer, For she made suche noyse that al the peple was abasshed. And so she 8 flawgh to Lusynen thre times about the Fortres, cry-eng so pyteously & lamentably, lyke the voyage of a Mermayde. Wherof they of the Fortresse & of the town were gretly abasshed, & wyst not what they shuld 12 thinke, For they sawe the fygure of a serpent, and the voyage of a woman pat cam fro the serpent. And when she had floughge about the Fortresse thre tymes she lyghted so sodaynly & horribly vpon the toure called 16 poterne, bryngyng with her such thundre & tempeste, that it semed that bothe the Fortres & the town shuld haue sonk and fall / & therwith they lost the syght of her, and wyst not where she was become. But anoone 20 after that cam messagers fro Raymondyn, 1 that he sent thither to haue tydynge of her / to whom was shewed how she fyl vpon the fortresse / & of theire fere that they had had of her / and the messagers retourned 24 toward Raymondyn, & shewed hym al the caas. And thenne bygan Raymondyn to entre into hys sorowe. And the tydynge were knownen in the Countre, the pouere peuple made grete lamentacion & sorowe, & 28 wysshed her ayen with pyteous syghes, For she had doo them grete good. And thenne bygan thobsequyes of her to be obseruyd in al abbeyes & chirches that she had founded / and Raymondin, her lord, dede to be 32 doon for her almesses & prayers throug al his land.

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble.
The barons re-

mind Raymondyn of Melusine's command about Horrible.

He bids them fulfill her order.

Horrible is led to a cave

and suffocated.

He is buried at Neufmoustier.

Thenne came tofore the presence of Raymondyn the barons of the land, and said: 'My lord, it behouyth that we doo of your sone horryble this that his mother hath charged you & vs to doo.' And Ray-

mondyn to them answerd, 'doo you in this that ye are commanded to doo.' And then they went and toke by fayre words this Horryble & left hym in a caue. For yf he had had warnyng of theire purpoe 8 they shuld not haue had take hym without grete peyne. And thenne they closed hym in smoke of wet hey. And whan he was deed they buryed hym hounourably in the Abbey called the Neufmoustier.

Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children.

Thenne departed Raymondyn from thens & came to Lusynen, & brought with hym his two children, 16 Raymondyn & theodoryke / and said that he shuld never entre ayen in to the place wher he had lost his wyf. And were it wel that Melusyne came euery day to vysyte her children, & held them tofore the fyre and 20 eased them as she coude / and wel sawe the nourryces that, who durst no word speke. And more encreeced the two children in nature in a weke than dide other children in a moneth; wherof the people had grete 24 meruayH. but when Raymondyn knew it by the nourryces that melusyne came there euery nyght to vysyte her children / relessed his sorowe / trustyng to haue her ayen / but that thoughte was for nought, For neuer 28 after sawe he her in fourme of a woman / how be it dyuers haue sith sen her in femenyn figure. And were it that how wel Raymondyn hooped to haue her ayen / neuertheles he had alway suche hertly sorowe that 32 there is none that can tell it / And there was neuer man syth that sawe hym lawgh nor make joye / and
hated gretyly geffray with the grete toth / and ye myght haue had hym in his yre, he wold haue dystroyed hym. But here seaceth the hystorye of hym And speketh 4 of geffray. /

Thy storye sayth, that geffray rode so long that he came in Northumberland with the ambashatours and hys ten knyghtes with hym / And whan the barons 8 of the Countre vndersto'd his comyng they cam ayenst hym honourably, & receyued hym solemnly, sayeng: 'ha, sire, of your joyful comyng we owe wel to lawde & preyse our lord god, For without it be by you & 12 throug your prowes we may not be deleyuyed of the horryble geaunt and meruaylous maner, Grymauld, by whom aH this countre is dystroyed.' Theyn an-suerde geffray to them: 'And how may ye knowe that 16 by me ye may be quytte & deleyuyed of hym?' to whom they answered, 'My lord, the sage astronomyens haue said to vs that the geaunt grymauld 1 may not dey but by your deye of armes / and also we knowe for 20 certayn that he knoweth it wel. Wherfore yf ye go to hym, and that yf ye telle hym your name ye shall not kepe hym, but he shall you escape.' Theyn sayd geffray to the barons, 'Sire, lede me toward the place 24 where I may fin1d hym, For grete desyre I haue to see hym.' And Immed yatly they toke hym two knyghtes of the land that conduyted hym toward the place / but that one of them said to that other pat they shuld not 28 approche al to nygh grymauld / and that they myght not beleue that geffray shuld haue the vyctory of hym. And theyn geffray toke leue of the barons and departed, the two knyghtes with hym, and so long they 32 rode tyll they saw the montayne of Brombelyo. Theyn sayd the two knyghtes to geffray, 'My lord, yonder ye may see the montayne where he holdeth hym / & this way shal lede you thither without any fayH, For cer-36 taynly he is euer at yonder trees vpon that montayne

He hates Geffray.

Geffray comes to Northumberland.

The barons telle him they are joy-ful at his arrival, because they will be deluyyed of Grymauld.

Geffray asks how they know.

1 fol. 100 b.
They answere that wise astronomyens have said that he alone can slaye Grymauld, and the giant knows this too, so Geffray must not tell him his name.

Geffray is taken to the mountain of Brombelyo,

where the knights show
where Grymauld is to be found. Here they leave him for fear of hurt.

Geffray tells them that it is well he has not trusted to their aid.

for to espye them that passe by the way. Now may ye goo thither, ye it playse you, For as touching our personnes we wyl goo no further that way.' And geffray answere to them in this manere, 'Yf I had come upon thalilyance of your ayde I had faylled therof at this tyme.' 'By my feyth,' sayd one of them, 'ye say trouth.' Thenne came they to the foot of the hynde and there geffray descended & armed hym, and syn 8 remounted on his hors, and layed the sheld tofore hys brest, and toke his sper, and thenne he said to the two knyghtes that they shuld abyde hym vnder the mountayne, and that they shuld soone see what therof shuld befall.

Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete toeth rane ayenst the geaunt & over-throw hym with hys sper./

In this partye sayth thistorye that Geffray toke leue of the two knyghtes, & mounted the mountayne, so that he approched nygh the trees where as he apperceyued the geaunt pat satte vndernethe them. but assoone as he sawe geffray he meruayled greatly how one knyght alone had the hardynes to have dare come toward hym, and thenne he thought in hym self that he cam to treate with hym for som patyse or for som peas. but he sware hys lawe that lytel or nought he shuld entrete hym. Thenne rose vp the geaunt and toke an horruble grete Clubbe in hys handes, which ony man had ynough to doo to lyft it vp fro the ground. And so he came ayenst Geffray, and cryed with a hye voys, 'What art thou that darest come so boldly toward me in armes / by my lawe wel shal thou be payed therfor. For who that sendeth the hyther wold haue the deed.' And geffray cryed to hym, 'I deffye the / defend thou thy self yf thou canst.' And
with these words Geffray couched his spear & sporyd 
his horns and ranne & smote the geaunt in the brest so 
myghtily that he ouerthrew hym, the legges vpward to 
4 the ground & / and anon Geffray descendid fro his hors, 
feeryng that the geaunt shuld slee hym vndre hym, 
and fasted it by he brydel at a tree / & pusshed his 
sheld behynd, and toke his good trenchaunt sword;
8 For wel he sawe that it were grete foly to hym to 
abyde the stroke of the geauntis Clubbe. And theyme 
cam the geaunt toward Geffray, but almost he coude not 
perceyue hym for cause he was so lytel of personne to 
12 the regarde of hym. And whan he was nygh hym he 
said to hym, 'Say me thou lytel body, who art thou 
that so valyantly hast ouerthrawn me? / by mahomick? 
I shal neuer haue honour but I avenge me.' And 
16 theyme Geffray anserude to hym, 'I am Geffray with 
the grete tooth, sone to Raymondyn of Lusynen.' And 
whan the geaunt vnderstood hym, he was ryght dolaunt, 
For wel he wyst that he myght not be slayne but with 
20 Geffrayes hande, not that withstanding he ansered to 
hym, 'I knowe the vel ynough, thou slough that 
other day my Cousin Guedon in Garande, al the 
denelles of helle haue brought the now hither.' And 
24 Geffray hym anserede, 'no doubte / but I shal slee the 
yf I may.' And whan the geaunt vnderstood it, he 
hounced his Clubbe & wold haue dyscharged it vpon 
geffrayes heed, but he faylled, And thenne Geffray 
28 smote hym with his swerd vpon the sholde. 1 For he 
myght not reche to his heed, & cutte the hauyte piece 
of his harneys, and made his swerd to entre in his 
flesche wel a palme deep, and theyme the blood felt 
32 doon along his body vnto the heelys of hym. And 
whan he felt that stroke he cryed & said to Geffray / 
'cursed be that arme that by suche strenghthe can 
smyte, & hanged be the smyth that forged that swerd.
36 For neuer blood was drawen out of my body of no

and rushes 

forward and 

overthrows him.

Geffray dis-

mounts,

fastens his horse 
to a tree, 

and takes his 

sword and shield.

The giant ap-

proaches Geffray, 

but can hardly 

see him.

He asks Geffray 

who he is.

Geffray answers 

that he is the 

son of Raymon-

din of Lusignan.

The giant is sad 

at this news, be-

cause he knows 

that Geffray 

alone can slay 

him.

The giant says 

he knows him as 

the slayer of 

Guedon.

Geffray tells the 

giant that he will 

kill him too.

The giant raises 

his club, but 

misses Geffray.

1 fol. 192.

Geffray wounds 

the giant,

who curses 

Geffray's arm,
manere wepen al were it neuer so good.' And the nowe with his clubbe he wend to haue smyte geffray / but geffray fled the stroke. For wete it for trouth that yf he had atteyned hym he had slayn hym / but god, on 4 whom hys trust was, wold not suffre it. And ye owe to wete for certayn that with that same stroke the Clubbe entred into the ground wel a foot deep / but or euer the geaunt myght have haunced his Clubbe, 8 geffray smote on it with his swerke by suche strengthe that he made it fligh out of the geauntes handes. and therewith he cutte a grete piece of it.

Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray 12 folowed hym.

The nowe was the geaunt ryght dolaunt & abasshed when he sawe his Clubbe pus cutte lyeng on the grounde, For he durst not bowe hym self to take it vp. 16 Thenne he lept on geffray & strake hym with his fyst vpon the helmet with so grete myght & yre that almost geffray was astonyed therwith ah. but geffray, corageous & hardy, smote the geant vpon the lyfe, so that 20 he cutte a grete part of it. And thenne when the geaunt sawe hym thus hurt he withdrew hym a lytel backward, and syn bygan to flee / but geffray, holdyng his swerke, folowed hym / and the geaunt entred into 24 a hoH within the mountayne, Wherof geffray was abasshed /. Thenne came geffray to the hoH and loked in, but it was so obscure & derk & so deep that he sawe nor wyst where the geaunt was become. And he 28 retourned and toke & mounted ayen vp his hors, and descended into pe valey, & came to hys meyne that abode for hym there, whiche had grete meruyH when they sawe hym retourne hole & sauf / and in especial 32 the two knightes wondred moche & were abasshed of it / and they asked hym yf he had sene the geaunt / and he said to them, 'I haue faught with hym / and
12 Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoH for to fyght with the geant./

And thezne on the morowe by tyme Geffray armed hym & mounted vpon his hors & rode tyl he came to the said hoH vpon the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said geffray thezne / 'this geant is twyes as grete as I, & sith he is entred here in, wel I shal goo throug it / and so shal I do whatsomeuer it befin 20 therof.' And thezne he toke his sword in his hand, & fayre & softly leto hym self fah into the hoH / and as he was in to the botome of it, he perceyued some light, & sawe a lytel path. And thezne he made the signe of the cros & foorth 1 went that way./

Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn.

Geffray thezne went not ferre whan he fond a ryche Chambre, where as were grete ryches and grete Candstykes of fyn gold, and vpon them grete tapers white wax, brennyng so clere that it was 32 meruayH. And in the myddes of the Chambre he fonde a noble & ryche tombe of fyn gold, al sette with
and an alabaster statue of a queen,

with this inscription, 'Here lieth my husband, King Elynas of Albany,' and other writing regarding his burial, and his daughters Melysine, Meler and Palastine;

and how the giant was put on guard until the arrival of an heir of one of the daughters.

2 fol. 123 b.
Geffray looks a long while at the inscriptions, but knows not that he is of the lineage of Elynas.

Geffray leaves the chamber, and makes his way to a field, where he sees a great tower.

He finds the gate, and enters the hall, where there are over a hundred prisoners.

perlys & precyous stones, & vpon it was figured the fourme of a knyght, that had on hys heed a ryche crowne of golde with many precyous stones / and nygh by that tombe, a grete ymage of Albaster, kerno & 4 made aftir the fourme of a quene, crowned with a ryche crowne of gold / the whiche ymage held a table of golde / where-as were wryton the wordes that folowen. 'Here lyeth my lord myn husband the noble kyng 8 Elynas of Albanye' / and also shewed al the manyere how he was buryed there, and for what cause. And also speke of theire thre doughtirs, that is to wete, Melysine, Melyor, and Palastyne / and how they were 12 punysshed bycause that they had closed theire fader / as in thatyse tofore toisme is rehearsed. Also it shewed by wrytyng how the geaunt had be there ordeyned for the kepyng & saugared of the place, vnto tyme he were 16 putte therfro by the prowesse of one of the heyres of the said thre doughtirs / and how there myght neuer ende wythin yf he were not of that lynage / and in these tables of golde was wel dyuysed along as it is 20 wroten in the Chapytre of king Elynas / and thus geffray beholding & seeynge, [pondered] by grete space1 vpon 2 the tables as vpon the beaute of the place / but he knewe not yet that the tables shewed that he was of the 24 lynee of kyng Elynas & Presyne his wyf. And whan he had wel beholde a long tyme he departed, & went by a waye obscure tyl he fond4 a feld, thanne lokod he tofore hym, & sawe a grete toure, square, wel batel-28 mented, & went toward and went about the toure tyl he fonde the gate the whiche was open, & the bridge let fall doun, & entred in, & came to the haH, where he fonde a grete yron trayH,2 wherein were closed a 32 hundred men & more of the Countre that the geaunt

1 Fr. Et à ce voier et regarder advise Goffroy par grant temps.
2 Fr. traillis.
held for hys prysonners./ And whan they sawe
geffray they meruyellde moche, & hym sayd, 'Sire, for
the loue of god fle you, or ye shal be deed; For the
4 geaunt shal come ryght foorth that shal dystroye you
al, were ye an C suche as ye are?/ And geffray
ansuerd them al thus: 'Fayre lordes, I am not here
come but only the geaunt to fynde / & I shuld haue
8 don to grete folly to be come fro so ferre hither to
retourne so hastily.' And after these wordes cam the
geaunt fro slepe. But whan he sawe geffray he knew
hym, and sawe wel that his deth was nygh, and had
12 grete feer / and them he fledd unto a chambre, the
whiche he sawe open, & speryd the doore to hym.
And whan geffray that perceyued, he was ryght sorowful
that he had not mete with hym at the entryng of the
16 Chambre./

Thystorye sayth that geffray was right dolaunt whan
he sawe the geaunt was entred into the chambre,
and that he had speryd the doore to hym. Themne
20 cam geffray toward the doore, rennyng with a grete
radeur, & smote with his foot so mightily that he
made the doore to flye vnto the myddes of the chambre.
1 And themne the Geaunt swyftly went out at the doore
24 bycause he might none other way passe, and held in
his hand a grete maylet wherof he gaaf to geffray suche
a stroke vpon the bassynet that he made hym al
amased. And whan geffray felt the stroke, that was
28 harde & heuy, he foynd with his sword at his brest,
with suche yre that it entred in the geaunt throughe to
the cros of the sword. And themne the geant made vp
2 an horryble cry, sayeng, 'I am deed, I am deed.' And
32 whan they that were in the traylles of yron herd it / they cryd with an hye voys, 'Ha, noble man, blessid
be the oure that thou were borne of a woman. We
pray the for the loue of god, that thou haue vs hens,

They are aston-
ished to see
Geffray, and ad-
vice him to fly
from the giant.

Geffray replies
that he has come
to find him;

and just as he
finished speak-
ning the giant
appeared. 
When he saw
Geffray he knew
his death was at
hand. 
He fled to a
chamber, and
barred the door.

Geffray bursts it
open. 

1 fol. 194. 
The giant rushes
on Geffray, and
strikes him with
a mallet; 

then Geffray
thrusts his sword
into the giant
right up to the
hilt. 
The giant cries
out, 'I am dead, I
am dead!'
The prisoners on
hearing the cry
bless the hour of
Geffray's birth,
and beg their
deliverance.

2 MS. has ' &.'
For thou hast at this day delyuered this lande out of the gretest myserye that euer peuple was in.]

Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the geaunt kept in pryson.

And thenne geffray cerched the keyes so longe tyl he fonde them, & lete the prysoners out; and this doon, they aII kneeled tofore hym & asked hym by what way he was come. And he said to them the trouth. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'it is not in remembrance that this foure houndred yere was no man so hardly to passe by the Caue, but onely the geaunt and his antecessours, that fro heyre to heyre haue dystroyed aII this Countre / but wel we shal bryng you another way.' And theynne geffray gaf to them at the hauoir of the toure./

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott.

The prysonners thaan toke the Geaunt deed, & putte hys body in a Charyot, and sette hym ryght vp, & bound hym so that he shuld not falle, & putte fyre all about hym. And this doon, they led geffray to the place where he had left his hors, vpon the whiche he mounted, & descended toward the valey with al the goods that they had. Wherof every man had his part / and toke the heed hool of the geaunt with them / and came foorth tyl they sawe geffrayis knightes and the more part of the nobles & peple of the Countre, the which fested & dide to geffray grete honour / and to hym wold they haue youen grete yeftes, but he wold none take / but toke his lene, & departed fro them. And the prysonners bare the heed of the geaunt throug al good tounes for every man to see, of the whiche
sight every man had grete mercyt and that one man alone durst be so hardly to assaylle such a deuche. And here seaceth historye of that more to speke and retourneth 4 to speke of geffray.

In this partye sayth this thyraie that geffray rode so long that he came to mountyoned in garande, where they of the countrey receyued hym nobly. And 8 for thene was come his brother Raymond to enfourne hym of the yre that theire fader had, & of his wordes that he had said of hym, And hym recounted fro the bygynnyng unto the fyn. And how theire moder was 12 departed and al the manere / And how the first bygynnyng of her departyng was thirgh theire vncele of Forestz. And how she had said at her departyng that she was daughter of kyng Elynas of Albanye. 16 And whan geffray her was this word he bethought hym of the table that he fond upon the tombe of kyng Elynas. And by this he knew that he and his brethern were come of the same lynage; wherof he thought 20 hym self the bettre, but this not with standing he was ryght sorowfull of the departyng of hys moder, & of the heuynes of hys fader / and knew the same wel that this misaduenture was côme & grew by therle of 24 Forestz his vncele. Wherfor he sware by the holy trynyte that he shuld quyte hym. And thene he made to go to horsback hys brother and his x. knyghtes, and rode toward the Countee of Forestz / and had 28 tydynge that the Erle his vncele was in a Fortresse that was edfyed upon a roche ryght lyse / and was the self Fortres named at that tyme Jalensy, and now it is called the Castel Marcelly.

32 Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncele.

1 Fr. Monjouet.
So long rode Geffray that he came to the Castel and anoone he alighted & went into the hall where he found the Earle among his barons / and theane he cryed with an hye voyce / 'to deth traytour / 4 For thrughhe the we haue lost our moder' / and forthwith drew his sword & yede toward the Earle / And the Earle whiche knew wele hys fyersnes and anoone fled toward a doore open / and that part geffray so followed hym / and so long chassed hym fro chamble to chamble to the hyest part of the toure where he sawe he myght no ferder fle / he toke a wyndowe / and supposed to haue passed vnto a tour 3nygh but for 12 to saue hym from the yre of geffray / but footyng fayled hym, & felle down deede to the grounde. And theane geffray loked out of the wyndowe, & sawe hym al to rent & brusid lyeng deede on the erthe / but 16 therof he toke no pyte / but sayd 'False traytour by thyn euyl report I haue lost my lady my moder / now haue I quyted the therfore.' And theane he came down ayen to pe halle / but none so hardly was there 20 that durst say one word aynest hym. And he theane commanded that his vnclē shold be buryed / and so he was and his obsequye don. And after pat geffray recounted & shewed to the barons of the land why 24 he wold hane slayne his vnclē / and bycause of the Erles mysdide and false reporte they were somewhat peased. And thenne Geffray dice make them to doo hommage to Raymond his brother, that was afterward 28 Erle of Forestz. And now seaceth history of hym to spoke / and retourneth to shewe of Raymondyn his fader /

Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen 32 toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy.
hystorye sayth that soone aftir this delyt was shewed to Raymondyn, wherof he was ryght dolaunt & sorowful / but he forgate it lyghtly, bycause 4 that his brother had announced hym the tydynes whereby he lost his wyf / and said to hym self / 'this pat is doe may be none otherwyse / I most pease geffray or he doe ony more dommage.' And 4therefore 8 he sent word to hym by his brother Theodoryke that he shuld come toward hym at Lusynen. And geffray came to his fader at his mandement / and as ferre as he sawe hym he putte hym self on his knees / and 12 prayed hym of pardon & mercy, sayeng in this wyse, 'My ryght redoubted lord, my dere fader, I besoche you of forgyfines & pardon / and I sware you that I shal doe make ayen thabbay of Maylleses fayrer than 16 euer it was afore / and there I shal founde ten monkes ouer the nombre of them that were there byfore.' 'By god,' said Raymondyn, 'al that may be doo with the helpe of god / but to the deede ye may not restore 20 theire lyf. But geffray it is trouthe that I muste go to a pelgrymage that I haue promysed god to do. And therfor I shal leue you the gouernaunces of my land / and yf by auenture god dide hys wylle of me, al the 24 lande is yours / but I wyll & charge you this that your moder hath ordeyned by her last wylle to be doo be fulfilde. She hath bequthed to Theodoryke Partenay, Merment, Vouant & al theire appurtenaunces 28 vnto Rocheff, with the Castel Egdon with al that therof depenedeth / and fro this tyme fourthon I enpocesse hym therof for hym and for his heyres.' Thenne said Geffray to him, 'Dere fader, wel it is 32 raison that it be so don.' This doon Raymondyn made his apparay, & with hym mounted on horsback many lordes & knightes, and toke with hym grete fynaunce & hauoir and so departed and fourth rode 36 on his way. And Geffray & 2Theodoryke conueyed

Geffray's father is told the story.

He determines to appease Geffray.

1 fol. 196.

He sends Theodore to ask Geffray to come to Lesignan.

Geffray obeys, and on seeing his father falls on his knees and asks pardon, and promises to rebuild the abbey of Maillleses better than it was before.

Raymondin answers that with God's help he may fulfill his promise, but that will not bring the dead to life.

He tells Geffray that he is going on a pilgrimage, and that he leaves his land in his care, and makes him his heir.

Raymondin declares that Theodore has been left Parthenay and other lands and castles by his mother.

Raymondin then starts on his pilgrimage, accompanied by many knights, and well provided with money and goods.

2 fol. 196 b.
Raymondin confesses to the Pope. [CH. LVII.

Geoffray and Theodorie go part of the way with their father, and Geoffray tells how he found the tomb of his grandfather Elynas at Brombely, and what was written on the golden tablet about Elynas' three daughters, one of whom was Geoffray's mother.

Raymondin is glad to hear that his wife was the daughter of Elynas and Pressine.

He tells his sons to return, and continues on his way to Rome.

He gives Theodorie a ring, Melusine's parting gift.

Raymondin reaches Rome, and does reverence to Pope Benedict.

He confesses his sins.

The Pope gives him due penance. Raymondin dines with the Pope, and next day visits the holy places. When his affairs are attended to he takes leave of the Pope.

Hym tyl he bade them to retouerne. And as they rode Geoffray recounted hym how he fonde the tombe of Elynas his granfader within the mountayne of Brombelyo, vpon foure Coulonnes of fyn gold and of fyve the ryches of pe place / and of the fygure of the quene Pressine that stood vp ryght, and held a table of gold, & of this that was there writon / and how theire thre daughters were predestyned / of the whiche, S said Geoffray, 'our moder was one of them' / and shewed hym al the beginnyng of the matere vnto them of hit. And wete it wel that Raymondyn herkned hym gladly, & was wel pleased of that he said that hys wyf 12 Melusyne was daughter of king Elynas & of Pressyne hys wyf. And thenne he gaf lycens to his children to retouerne. And so pey departed & retouerne toward Lusynen / and Raymondyn held on his way toward 16 Rome. And to theodoryke he gaf the ryng whiche Melusyne gaf hym at her departyng fro hym.

Cap. LVII. How Raymondin came toward the pope of Rome and confessed hys 20 synnes to hym.

Here sayth thystorye that Raymondin rode so long that he came to Rome and his companye with hym, where he fonde the Pope named Benedictus / & drew hym toward hym to whom hym humbly he made reverence, & syn kneeld tofrome hym & confessed his mysdedes & synnes in his best wyse / and as touching this that he was forsworne ayenst god and Melusyne 28 hys wyf, the pope gaf hym therfor such penance as it playesd hym. and that same day Raymondyn dyned with the pope Benedict / and on the morn he yede & vysyted the holy places there. And whan he had 32 doon there al that he muste doo, he toke leue to the Pope & said to hym in this wyse, 'Ryght reverend holy fader, I may not goodly considere in me how euer
I may haue joye. Wherfore I purpose to yeld myself into some hermytage.' And thenne the Pope hym demanded thus, 'Raymondyn, where is your deuocyon & wylle to goo?' 'By my feyth, holy fader,' said Raymondyn, 'I haue herd say that there is to Mount-ferrat\(^1\) in Aragon a deuoute & holy place & there wold I fayn be.' 'My fayre sone,' said the pope, 'soo it is said.' And to hym said Raymondyn, 'holy fader, my intencion is thither to goo and to yeld my self there hermyte, for to pray god that it playse hym to gyue allegeaunce to my lady my wyf.' 'Now fayre sone,' said the Pope, 'with the holy gost may ye goo & al that ye shal doo with good wyll I remysse it to your penaunce.' And thenne Raymondyn kneeled & kyssed the popes feet. And the pope gaf hym hys benedic-tion. / And thenne departed Raymondyn & came to hys lodgys / & dide doo \(^2\) trusse & make a\(h\) redy for to departe / and as touchyng his meyne nor of hys way I wyl not make longe moneyen / but he rode so long that he came to Thoulouse / and there he gaf lyence & leue to a\(h\) hys meyne to departe & retoune / except only a Chappellayn & a Clerc that he toke with him / and wel & truly he prayed every one so that they were content / but sory they were a\(h\) of theire maister that so departed fro them / and he sent lettres to geffray & to the barons of hys land that they shuld doo their homage to his sone geffray, & recyue hym for theire lord. And his meyne toke the lettres / and soo they departed fro theire lord with grete sorow & heynnesse, For he neuer told them what way he shuld take / but wete it he had with hym goodes ynough / and dyde so moche that he came to Nerbonne where he rested hym a lytel space of tyme.

Th' historye sheweth in this partye that whan Raymondyn was come to Nerbonne he dide

\(^1\) Montserrat, the correct reading. \(^2\) Fr. trosser les sommiers.
and has hermits' habits made for himself, his chaplain and his clerk.

He continues his journey till he arrives at Mountserrat.

He attends divine service.

He is asked if he will stay the night, and answers 'yes.'

Raymondin visits the hermitages, and finds the third cell empty, the hermit having died lately.

do make many hermyte habyte, and also for his Chappellayn & Clerk suche as they owe to haue / and syn departed & went tyl he came to 1 Parpynen where he soiourned one day / and on the morn 2 he passed 4 the destraytte & mounted the mountaynes of Aragon / and so foorth he came to Barcelone the Cite where he toke hys lodgys and soiourned there thre dayes, and on the foureth toke hys waye toward Mountferrat where 8 he came & yede & vysyted wel the Chirche & the place there, whiche semed hym ryght deuoute / and there he herk the denye seruyse deuoutly / but yet had he on hys worldly gownes / And theame came to hym they 12 that were ordeyned for to lodge & herberowe the pelgrymes, and demanded of hym yf it played hym to abyde there for pat nyght / and he ansuered 3 ye.' Theame were his 4 horses stabled / and they gaf hym a 16 fayre Chambrre for hym & for his men. And in the meane while Raymondyn yede & vysyted the hermytages / but he went no ferther than to the vth celle, for that place was of so grete heght that he myght not 20 goodly goo thither / and fonde the IIIde celle exempt. For the hermyte there was deed but late tofore that. And there was stablysshed of old a Custome that yf within a terme prefix none came there to be hermyte, 24 he of the nerest Celle gooyng vpward muste entre into that other Celle so exempted / and so al the hermytes benethe hym to chaunge theire places vpward. And so by that maner wyse was the nedermost Celle of al 28 exempt & without hermyt. And the cause of this permutacion was that always the nedermost hermyte most serue hys brother hermyte next aboue hym of meet & drynk after theire pytauence & manere of etyn, 32 and so foorth diede that one to that other vpward / and

1 Fr. Perpignen.
2 Fr. passa le velon et le pertuys, et vint à disner à Funères, et au giste à Gnomie. Omitted above.
thus one served other. And so ferre enquered & knew Raymondyn of theire maner of lyuyng that he toke grete deuocion to it more than tofore / that is to 4 wete to be hermyte there. And them he toke leue of the vth hermyte & so dide as he descend of the other. And he demanded after the pryour of thabbey / and it was told hym that he was in the 8 vyllage nygh by thabbay that was hys, whiche vyllage was called Culbaston / and them he deseryd them that they wolde conduyte hym there as he was. And so Raymondyn left there his Chappellayn & his 12 Clerc, and with a servaunta of the place went there as pe pryour was, whiche receyued Raymondyn with joyful chere. And there shewed Raymondyn al hys wyH and deuocyon and how the place playse hym. And them 16 the pryour that sawe Raymondyn of fayre coutenaunce & man of grete worship graunted hym the exempted place, wherof Raymondyn had grete joye at herte. And Raymondyn was Raymondyn ryght joyous whan the pryour had graunted hym the place of the nethermost hermytage and moche panned god therof. and so he bode there with the pryour al that nyght / and on the morow they mounted and came ayen to 24 thabbay where as Raymondyn toke his habyses and was there made hermyte. And them was the deuyne servyce doon, where Raymondyn offred ryche jewels as gold & precous stones. And after the servyce 28 they went to dyner / and raymondyn dyde doo send to hys bretheren hermytes besyde theire pytaynue other meetes for recreacion, letyng them knowe hys profysyon & commyng. Wherof al they lawded god, 32 deouolutly prayeng hym that he wold hold & encres Raymondyn in good deuocyon. And so dwelled Raymondyn in thabbay, and on the morne he entred in to his Celle wher he bygan to lea a holy & strayt 36 lyf. And anoone after was the tydynge spredd
through aH Aragon & Langgedok how that a grete prynce was made hermyte at Mounferrat / but they knew not of what Countre he was. And 1 also he wold neuer vitre it / And many noble men went to 4 see hym / and in especial the king of aragon was there hym self, which asked hym of his estate & Countre / but of hym he coude neuer wete it. And here resteth thystorye of them / and retourneth to shewe of 8 Raymondyns men that departed fro Thoulouse. / 

Thystory recounteth that so long rode the men of Raymond after they were departed fro Thoulouse that they came in Poytou & so forth to 12 Lusynen, Where they fonde geffray and many of the barons of the land / and after theire obeyssounce doon they deluyered theire letres to geffray & to the barons as they were commanded by Raymondyn theire lord. 16 Whan the baronye vnderstoond the tenour of theire letres they said to geffray in this manere / 'My lord syth it playseth not your fader vs more to gouerne / and that he wyl that we dou our hommage to you, we 20 are al redy thereto.' 'By god,' said geffray, 'gramercy, Fayre lorde, and I am redy to receyue you to your lygeaus.' And penne they dyde to hym hommage. And anoone after was knowen throug al the Countre 24 how Raymondyn had exiled hymself for the grete sorow that he had for his wyf Melusyne that he had lost. Who thene had sene the doleur & lamentable heunyes that men dide through aH the Countre 28 wysshyng theire lord & theire lady, he shulde haue had hertely pyte. For many one fered geffray for cause of his yre & fyersnes. But for nought they doubted, For he gouerned hym rightously & wel. Here I sha[1] 32 leue of pen 2 to speke / and shal shewe of geffray that was ryght dolaunt & sorrowful of that he had lost both hys fader & his moder through his owne myslede & synne. For they that were retourned fro hym coude 36
not say where he was come. Then was remorse of conscience toke Geffray at herte & remembred how he fyred thabbaye of Maylleses, & brent hys brother Freymond & al the monkes per without hauyng any lawfuH cause so to doo / and that thrughe hys synne he angred bothe hys fader & moder, and by that cause he had lost his moder. Wherfore he toke suche sorowe that it was meruayH / and also he remembred the deth of the Erle of Forest hys vncl, which thrugh his faytte fell doun fro the hyest toure of the Castel Marcellly to the erthe. And thus remembred Geffray aH hys my[s]dedes and synnes, and sore wepyng bygan to say / that but yf god had pyte on hym he was lyke to be lost & dampned for euer. And themhe he hymselfe alone entred into a chambr/ and there he bygan to make grete sorowe & lamentable wepynges prayeng god with herte contrite that he wold haue mercy on hym / and as god wold he toke there devotion to goo to Romme for to confess hym synnes to our holy fader the pope. And themhe he sent for his broder theodoryke that he shuld come to speke with hym, For he loned hym aboue al oper. And assoone as Theodoryke vnderstoed the manement of hys brother geffray, he foorthwith mounted on horsback & rode tyll he came to Lusynen where geffray was, that receyued hym with joye, & said to hym that he wold leue al hys land in his gouernaunce, For he wold go to Romme to confesse his synnes tofore the pope / & that he wol? never come ayen tyll he had found hys fader. Themhe Theoderyk prayed hym that he wold suffre hym to goo with hym. And geffray shewed to hym that it were not good for them bothe so to doo / And themhe geffray with noble companye departed and toke with hym grete goodes, and toke with hym one of hys faders seruaunts that was retourned fro Thoulouse for to conduyte hym aH that way that hys fader yede /

Geffray is full of remorse when he thinks of the loss of his father and mother, and how it was caused by his misdeeds.

Geffray enters a chamber alone, and prays with a contrite heart for mercy.

He resolves to go to Rome to confess to the Pope.

Geffray sends for Theodoric

1 fol. 200 b. to tell him that he is going to Rome to confess to the Pope, and that he leaves his lands in Theodoric's charge. Theodoric wants to go with him, but Geffray says it would not do. Geffray takes plenty of goods, and sets out on his journey with one of his father's servants.
and he shuld euor take hys lodgys there as hys fader was lodged by the way. And the seruaunt hym ansuerd that gladly he shuld so doo.

Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme 
& confessed hys synnes toefore the Pope.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray was departed fro Lusynen he rode so long by hys journeyes that he came to romme, and drew hym toward our 8 holy fader the Pope, to whome he made humble reuerence and syn denouently confessed hym of hys synnes. And the Pope charged hym to make thabbay of Maylleses to be edfyed agayn & therto ordeyne six 12 score monkes, & many other penitences the pope charged hym doo, the whiche as now present I shal not shewe. And thenne geffray said to our holy fader the Pope how he wold goo to seke hys fader, and the pope 16 told hym that he shuld fyn hym at Mountferrat in Aragon. And thenne he toke leue of the pope & kyssed his feet / and the pope gaf hym hys benediction. And so geffray departed fro Romme & toke 20 hys way toward toulouse where he cam & hys meyne with hym and was lodged where as his fader dede lodge toefore. And there the seruaunt asked of theire hoste yf he coude not telle which way hys lord 24 Raymondyn toke / And thoste said to hym that hys lord had hold the way toward Nerbonne & that no ferther he knew of hys way. And the seruaunt told it to geffray. 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'that is 28 not the next way for to goo to Mountferrat / but syth my fader went that way so shal we doo.' And thus on the morne geffray & hys meyne departed & hasted them toward Nerbonne, where they cam & were lodged 32 there as Raymondsyn had toefore lodged. For so moche enquered the seruaunt that he knewe pat hys lord dide
lodge there, & how he dide do make there many habynes for an hermyte. And on the morne geffray
toke hys way toward Parpynen, where he cam, & fro
4 pens he rode with hys meyne to Barcelone, & peyne to
thabbey of mountferrat where he alyghted & sent hys
horses to Culbaston / and syn he yede & entred in to
the Chirch. And anoon the servaunt beforsaid sawe
8 the Chappellayn of Raymondyng his lord within a
Chapel. And immedlyatly he tolde of it to geffray.
Wherof he had grete joye and yede toward the
Chappellayne, the whiche when he sawe geffray he
12 kneeled tofore hym and said, 'My lord ye be ryght
welcome' / and syn he recounted to geffray the good
lyf that hys fader led / and how euer day he confessed
hym & receyued his creatour / and that he ete nothing
16 that receyuedeth deth. And thenne geffray asked hym
where he was. And the Chappellayn to hym said,
'he is in yonder hermytage / but my lord as for this
day ye may not speke with hym, but to morne ye shal
20 see hym.' 'By my fayth,' said geffray, 'fayn I wold
see hym today / but sith it is soo I must take it in
patience ty[l] tomorrow.' 'My lord,' said thenne the
Chappellayn, 'yt it playse you ye may here the hye
24 masse, and therwhiles I shal ordeyne and shew your
meyne where your Chambre shal be dressed, and also I
shal doo make your dyner redy at your retourne fro
the masse.'

28 Thenne departed the Chappellayn fro geffray, that
went to here masse acompanied with x knyghtes
and wel xx squyers. And thenne came the monkes
of the place to Raymondyngs Chappellayn and demanded
32 of hym in this wyse. 'What is that grete deueH with
that grete toth? he semeth wel to be a cruel man /
wherof knowe you hym / is he of your Countre?'
'By my fayth,' said the Chappellayn, 'ye / It is
36 geffray with the grete toeth of Lusynen, one of the best
& moost valyaut knyghtes of the world & wete it he holdeth grete possessions & grete landes.’ And the monkes answerd, ‘Wel we haue herde speke of hym / is it not he that sloughe the geaunt in garand & that 4 other geaunt also of Northumberland / he is also he that brent thabbay of Maylleses with all the monkes perinne bycause that hys brother was there shorne monke without hys leue.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the 8 Chappellayn, ‘certainly it is that same.’ And penne the monkes al abasshed and aferd sayd / he is come hither for to doo vs some myschief and dommage.

Thenne said one of them, ‘wete it wel that I shal hyd 12 myself in suche place that he shal not fynde me.’ ‘Noo,’ said the Chappellayn, ‘Forsooth I waraunt you he shal doo you no hurt nor dommage, but al ye shal soone be glad of hys commyng, For suche one is 16 within this place that he loueth above al creatures of the world.’ And whan they understood the Chappellayn they were somewhat assured and went & hanged the chirche, and made al the place payre & cleene to their 20 power as god hymself had descended there / and sent word to the Pryour that was at Culbaston that he shuld come there, and that geffray with the grete toth was come in pelgrymage in to their abbaye, and noble 24 companye with hym. Thenne came there fourthwith the Pryour that sond geffray in the Chirche, and honourably made hym reverence and said that he hymself / the monkes & al the place was at his 28 commandement. ‘Sire,’ said geffray, ‘gramercy and wete it wel I loue this place / and yf god gyf me helthe it shal 2 not be the wers for my commyng.’ ‘My lord,’ said the Pryour, ‘god yeld you.’ Thenne 32 cam the Chapellayn to geffray and hym said, ‘My lord, your dyner is reydy.’ And therwith geffray toke the Pryour by the hand and togidre went into the hall, where they wesshed there handes & syn sette them at 36
dyner; geffray and the pryour deuysed long space
togidre of one thing & of of er. And thus passed
foorth that day. /

In this partye sayth thystorye that on pe morne
geffray roos vp and fonde the priour and his faders
Chapellayn waytyng after hym whiche led hym to
here masse / and after the masse they led hym toward
8 the hermytages. And thenne the priour toke his leue
of geffray & retourned to Chirchilward supposyng none
other but that geffray went for to see thestate of the
hermytes and for none other cause. For he had neuer
12 trowed that his fader had be prer. And thenne mounted
geffray toward the first hermitage that was wel lxxx
stepes highe vpon the mountayne. And wyte it that
the Clerc was at Raymondyns Celle doore waytyng for
16 the Chappelayn that shuld say masse tofore Raymondin.
And as the Clerk loked downward, he perceyued geffray
that came upward & wel knew hym, and forthwith
entred in the celle & said to Raymondin, 'My
20 lord, here commeth your sone geffray.' And when
Raymondin understod it he was ryght joyous and said,
'blessed be god / he is welcomme.' Thenne entred
first the Chappellain in to the Celle & salued
Raymondyn / but he bade the Chappellayn to say
geffray that he myght not speke with hym tyl pat hys
masse were doon. And forthwith the chappellayn
dyre as Raymondyn hym commanded. And geffray
28 ansuerd, 'his playsire be doo.' This doon Raymondyn
was confessed and herd his masse & receyued the holy
sacrament. And in the meane sayson geffray behel vpward the great mountaynes whiche were high &
32 ryght vp and sawe hermytages that were aboue hym /
and sawe the CapeH of Saynt Mychel whiche was the
vth hermytage, and after loked downward / and in hym
self had grete meruayH how man durst there take
36 habytacyon / and to hym appered the Chirche and
Geffray enters his father's cell, and salutes him.

Raymondyn takes him in his arms and kisses him.

Geffray tells his father how he had been at Rome, and how he confessed, and was told by the Pope that his father was at Montserrat.

Geffray asks his father to return to his country, but he answers that he cannot, as he intends to stay at Montserrat, and pray for Geffray's mother, for himself, and for Geffray.

1 fol. 263 b.

Geffray takes his leave. His father sends a greeting to his children and his barons.

Geffray gives presents to the Church;

and at dinner tells the prior that Raymondyn is his father, and asks him to take care of him, and the Church will lose nothing by it.

housying of thabbye but as lytel Chapelles. Thenne cam the Chapellayn & called geffray and he entred within the Celle of his fader / and anoone kneeled on his knees & dyde to hys fader reuencnt salutation / 4 And Raymondyn toke hym vp in his armes and kyssed hym / and thende made hym to sette vpon a stoole with hym tofore the awter. And there bygan geffray to shewe to hys fader how he was at Romme, and how h8 he was confessed of the pope / and the pope hym said that he shuld fynde hym at Mountferrat. And in this communycacion had they many materes togidvre / geffray alwayes prayeng hys fader that he wold 12 retourne to his countre. 'Fayre sone,' said Raymondyn, 'that may I not doo. For here I wyl spend my lyf, always prayeng god for thy moder & me, & for the, that god wyl amende the, my sone geffray.' And soo 16 geffray was there al that day with his fader. And the next day in the morowe her& Raymondyn his masse, & receyued our lord, as hys custome was to doo / and after, said to geffray, 'Fayre sone, it behoueth the to 20 parte from hens, & to retourne in to thy Countre; and grete wel al 'my children & my barons.' And thende geffray toke leue of hys fader al wepyng; and loth he was to departe from his fader. And after 24 came dowm fro the mountayn vnto thabbaye, where he was honourably receyued / and the monkes had grete meruayH wherfore he was so long aboue.

Thystorey sheweth that geffray gaf grete ryches & 28 fayre jewelles to the Chirche, & after toke leue of the pryor & his monkes, but the pryor hym conveyed vnto Culbaston, wher geffray dynd with the pryor / and told hym in secret wyse that Raymondyn was 32 hys fader, whom geffray besonghte to take hede to hys fader, and that the Chirche shuld not lese nothing therby, For euery yere ones duryng hys lyf he wold come & vysyte hys fader. Thende answerd the pryor, 36
doute you not, my lord, there shall be no deflawte but I shall vysyte & remembre your fader.' And theme toke geffray leue & went to Barselone to hys bed.

4 And on the morne he departed toward Lusynen wher as Theodoryk hys brother & the barons receyued hym with ryght grete joye, and were glad of his commyng. And whan they were at leyser, geffray shewed to hys brother theodoryk the very effect of eueri thing touchyng theyre fader. Foorthwith Theodoryk that moche loued his fader bygan to wepe ful tenderly. And geffray seeyng his broper make suche sorowe to hym said thus, 'My ryght dere brother, yet must ye abyde here, For wete it wel that I wyl goo see our two bretheren in almayne, that is to vnderstand Regnauld king of behayne and the Duc Anthony of Lucembourgh / but I wyl not departe without aray of men of armes, For per be in theo marches ryght euyl peple the which gladly wold rokke them that passe by the way.' 'By my sowle, my brother, I hold wel that ye doo as ye say / but I beseche you ryght entierly brother that we leue our countre in the gouernauce of our barons & take with vs v.C. men of armes, and that it may playse you I to go with you ;

20 withal that ye doo as ye say / but I beseche you ryght entierly brother that we leue our countre in the gouernauce of our barons & take with vs v.C. men of armes, and that it may playse you I to go with you ;

24 For I haue hered say that there is grete erre betwix them of Anssay & them of Austeryche,' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'Ye say wel, For peraunture our brother Anthony is in hand with them.' And whan they had made theire ordonauance, Odon the Erle of Marche came and spake with geffray, and brought in hys company thre score men of armes, For at that tyme he had warre ayenst the Erle of Vandosme /

32 and also Raymond their brother Earle of Forestz cam there the same day. And the there bretheren made there moche one of other / and were joyful for the tydynges that they hered of theire fader / and said / 36 ones they hoped to see hym togidre.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, where he is joyfully received.

He tells Theodoric about their father.

Theodoric weeps at the story.

Geffray proposes to visit Reginald and Anthony.

Theodoric wishes to go with him,

because he has heard there is war between Anssay and Austria.

They are joined by Odo, Earl of March.

The brothers make much of each other, and are glad of the news of their father.
Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyed the monastery of Maylleses.

Geffray afore his departyng charged & ordeyned people for the reedyfyeng of the Abbaye of Maylleses, as hym was youen in Charge by the pope by way of penaunce / and to them assyugned where they shuld take bothe gold & syluer therwith to paye the werkmen. And so left he a good governour in 8 hys countrie / And in lyke wyse dyde his broper theodoryk in his Countrie. And whan Odon & Raymond sawe that they wold departe to go 1 to see there bretheren in Allemayne, they sayd in lyke wyse 12 wol? they doo. And commanded anoone there peple to mete with them at Boneuall. And at that tyme were the bretheren acompanyed with two thousand men of armes & a thousand Crosbowes. And whan 16 the Erle of Vandesme her? tydynges therof he supposed certaynly that they came to exille hym, and that Odon had complayned hym to hys bretheren of hym, and so moche he doubted geffray that he came to Boneuall 20 and yelded hym to the grace of Odon erle of Marche. And he pardoned hym of al the mysdedes that he had doo to hym. And the erle of Vandesme made hym homage of the land that was in debat atwix 24 them. /

Here sheweth thystorye that the foure bretheren departed fro Boneuall & were in theire companyle many grete lordes, and rode in fayre array tyl they cam 28 vpon an euyn and lodged them nygh a rywne called Meuze, by a Fortresse named the Castel Duras. But as now I shal cease of them to speke / and shal begynne to speke of the kyng of ansay, that had grete warre ayenst the Erle of Frebourgh & with the Duc of Austeryche, the which had besieged hym within a Castel of hys that was called Pourrenenu. Wherfor
he sent word to Regnault kyng of Behayne that was maryed with his Cousyn / and lyke wyse to the Duc Anthony of Lucembourgh prayeng them of ayde & socour ayenst his enemyes, at the whiche instance & prayer / the two bretheren Regnald & Anthony made their apparayH. And Regnaulde departed out of his Royalme of Behayne and came to Lucembourgh with 8 IIII. C men of armes for to have hys brother Anthony with hym toward the siege of Porrencru, wher the kyng of assay was besieged within. And pat meane sayson came two knightes to Lucembourgh from geffray and his thre bretheren bat Avere with hym, the which Geffray sends 'word that he two knightes brought word bothe to regnaukl & anthony of their bretheren commyng, and that they were nygh the toun and cam for to see them. And whan kyng regnaukl and the Duc Anthony knew that their bretheren were commyng toward them, they were full glad & immedyatly commanded that al the stretes shuld be rychely hanged, and syn mounted on 20 horsbak, and with noble companye they went to mete them; and rode tyl they mete with the vanwarde of their armee & asked where their bretheren were / and it was shewed to them where they were commyng 12 and his thre bretheren pat were with hym, the which two knightes brought word bothe to regnaukl & anthony of their bretheren commyng, and that they were nygh the toun and cam for to see them. And 16 whan kyng regnaukl and the Duc Anthony knew that their bretheren were commyng toward them, they were full glad & immedyatly commanded that al the stretes shuld be rychely hanged, and syn mounted on 20 horsbak, and with noble companye they went to mete them; and rode tyl they mete with the vanwarde of their armee & asked where their bretheren were / and it was shewed to them where they were commyng 24 vnder the standart. Geffray themne, that wel vnder-stood that anthony & regnaukl his bretheren came to mete hem, he made evry man to stand apart / and soone after the six bretheren mete togidre and embraced 28 & made moche one of other / and after rode foorth toward the toun / and aftir their age they rode two & two togidre. Odon and Anthony were the formest, and after them rode Regnaukl & Geffray / and them 32 folowed theodoryk & Raymonnet / and al their oost came after in fayre ordynance / and in this manere they entred in to the toun, where as the Cytczeyns were in their best rayments al in a rowe 36 on bothe 2 sydes of the stretes, that were rychely
Geffray relates his adventures. [CH. LIX.

hanged / and the ladys & damoyselles loked out of the wyndowes / and so grete & noble apparayH was there made for theire commyng that it was a fayre syght.

Trouth it is that whan the bretheren entred within 4 Lucembourgh, Anthony & Geffray rode theime the formost of al theire bretheren. And wete it that the notable Citeseynes, ladys, & damoiselles meruaylled moche of the fyersen and grete height of theire lordis 8 bretheren, sayeng* that they six todidre wer able & wel shapen to destroye a grete oost / And thus they rode throug the town into the Castel and there they alighted. There were the six bretheren recounted of 12 two noble ladys, that is to vnderstand the quene of Behayn and the Duches of Lucembourgh, that honourably recyued theire lordes and brethern. And after they went into the haH that was al hanged with 16 rych cloth of gold / and per were the tables rychely covered & redy to dyner. And theime after many playwast deuyses and joyfuH wordes, they wesshed theire handes and sette them at dyner and were nobly 20 serued. And after dyner geffray shewed & recounted aH thes auentures & fayttes / and how he fonde pe tombe of Elynas / & of the quene Pressyne of whiche lynee they were yssued, wherof they were al joyfuH & 24 glad to meruayH / and how theire fader was departed and where he was. For of aH other things they knew ynoth. And theime Anthony & regnauld told to theire bretheren how the kyng of Anssay was 28 besieged & that they wold help hym. Thenne

1 ansuered Geffray, 'My lordes, my bretheren, wete it wel we are not come hither to take our rest / but we al are redy to goo with you whersomeuer ye wyl / & 32 therfor lete vs not make long soiourne / but go we2 vpon our enemies to helpe & socoure our frendes.' And forthwith Geffray and hys bretheren that were

2 'we' repeated in MS.
come there with hym take theire leue of bothe the queene & duchesse theire sustirs & retourned to theire oost / and theane Regnauld & Anthony wold haue 4 conveyed them / but Geffray said, 'Fayre lordes & bretheren, ye shal come no fether / but make al your apparayle & take leue of your wyues, and to morne, god before, we wyl departe toward the said Castel wherein the king of Anssay our frend is besieged.' And soo Anthony and Regnauld retourned sayeng eche one to other, 'Certaynly this man may not long endure / but he be other take or slayn. For he fereth of nothing 12 in the world / & also to counseyle hym, it were but for nought, For he suffreth nothing, but as his wyt & mynde gyueth hym. For yf he had with hym but X. Mf men, & that he sawe his enemys tofore hym to 16 the nombre of IIIC. Mf yet wold he fyght & medle with them, wherfore we must take heede to hym that he vaunce not hym self so moche with the enemys, but that we be nygh hym to socoure hym with our 20 people / but for this haste that he maketh we owe not to wete hym euyl gree For cause that assoone as oon may, he muste aduyse the wayes to hurt & dommage his enemys.’ And theane they lefte of 24 Geffray theire brother more to speke / but bothe they said that he was ryght hardy & valyaunt. And on the morné they toke leue of theire wyues and left in the land a good gouvernor. And also Geffray on that 28 other part ordeyned & purveyed of al thinges that were necessary to theire oost.

In the next day Geffray made blowe vp hys trompettes, that euery man shuld be armed, and after her he 32 his masse and syn Marched forth with hys oost / And immedyatyly Anthony & Regnauld came out of the town with theire people in fayre aray. And so they departed and rode togidre tyl they came into the land of Anssay / and on an euen lodged them thre leghes nygh

Geffray refuses Anthony and Regnauld's company, and asks them to prepare to start to succour the King of Anssay in the morning.

They speak of Geffray's bravery.

In the morning they take leave of their wives and appoint a governor.

Geffray orders every man to arm, and after mass is said his host marches.

Anthony and Regnauld join him with their people.
They arrive three leagues from Freibourgh.

A letter of defiance is written to the Duke of Austria and the Earl of Freibourgh, and sent by a herald to the Duke of Austria at Pourreencru. It is read in hearing of all the nobles there. They say that the devil has sent the brethren against them, and that only the name of the Lusynen is now spoken of.

The herald returns to the brethren’s camp.

Geffray takes five hundred men, and ambushes them in a wood near Freibourgh.

They call geffray al his brethren and shewed to them that it behoved not them for therire honour to renne vpon no man but that they had defyed hym tofore / And they ansuered that he said trouth. Wherfor they lete make a lettre of defyance of whiche the tenour foloweth. 'Regnaunl by the grace of god kyng of Behayne, Anthony Duc of Lucembourgh, Odon Erle of Marche, Geffray lord of 8 Lusynen, Raymond Erle of Forestz, and Theodoryk lord of Partenay. To the duc of Austrych and to the Erle of Frebourgh, and to al their alynaunces gretyng'. And where we haue understanf that with out ony lawful quare or raysonnable cause ye haue gretly hurt & dommaged bothe the land & peuple of our ryght wellbeloued vnclle the king of Anssay, the whiche as now ye haue besieged within his Castel of 16 Pourreencru, And for as mochi that we be therfor meued, & entende & purpose to entre in your land to dystroye you & al your peuple / consyderyng the noble ordre of knyghthode that it shal not be by vs 20 mynnashed. We perfy for our messager send you oure letres of defyance, &c.' Themne was deluyuered the lettre to a herault, which rode tyl he came to the siege of Pourreencru when he presented the said lettre 24 to the Duc of Austrych, the whiche letres were redd in heryng of al pe lorde there. Themne said they of Allemayne the Deuell hath brought hem hyther, none other renowne is now throught al the world but of them 28 of Lusynen. Themne retornned the herault toward the six brethren, and to them shewed the manere how they of theire enemyes oost were meruailled. 'By my feyth they haue heret speke of vs from ferre / but now 32 they shal see vs nere to them.' / It is trouth that themne geffray departed with fyue hundred men of armes from his oost & went and embushed his peuple in a lytel wold nygh the toune of Frebourgh. This 36
doon he & ten knyghtes with hym, & a squyer of Lucembourgh that ryght wel coude speke Almayn tonge & knew al the Countrie, went vpon a lytel mountayne to behold & see how he myght entre in the towne; but or he departed he said to them of his embusshe in this manere: 'Sires, I entende & purpose with the help of god to haue the towne of Freibourgh or 8 to morn przme at our playysire. Wherfore this nyght I shal departe with this X knyghtes and this esquyer, & at the spryng of the day I shal bygynne myn enterpyse & but loke wel whan ye perceyue vs wilkin the gate that fourthe with ye marche towaryd vs.'

And theame about thre of the clock after mydnyght Geffray / his ten knyghtes and his guyde toke iche of them a sack ful of hey and bare it before them vpon tharsons of theire sadels. In this manere they went & came tofore the gate of Freibourgh, where as the said esquyer called the watche but they myght entre, sayeng that they were frendes and that they had be aH that nyght in fourraghe. Theame asked hym the porter what they had in theo sackes, the squyer answerd there ben in gownes & suche thinges and suche ware / that we haue take vpon our enemys and we bryng 4 them hyther to selle them. The porter thame supposyng they had be of Allemayn & theire frendes opend the gate & lete faH the bridge. Theame entred geffray first of alle, and fourthe with drew his swerke and slew the porter / and in conclusyon they slough al them of the watche. Theame was there the cry of them of the towne 'treson / treson' / And immedyatly marched thembusshe & came & entred in the towne. There was grete occisyon of them of the towne / but many of them escaped and fled. And whan this was doon geffray lefte there fourre hundred men of armes & retourneD with the residue toward hys oost that he mete by the way toward the siege. Of this noble

He then takes ten knights and a squyer, who speaks German, and knows the country, and goes to a hill to see how he could enter the town.

He tells his ambush that he hopes to have Freibourgh in the morning.

He then takes ten knights and a squyer, who speaks German, and knows the country, and goes to a hill to see how he could enter the town.
who marvel at his valiant and subtle feat of arms.

1 fol. 208.

The Earl of Freibourg is sorrowful when he learns the news.

After mass the brethren begin to march.

They are seen by the besiegers. The alarm is given, and they arm.

The hosts fight; the ground is soon red with blood.

2 fol. 208 b.

enterpryse & valyaunt fayt the brethern of geffray and al their peple were meruayled / sayeng that geffray was the moost valyaunt knyght & subtyl in the faytte of armes that lyued at that day. And joyous & glad they marched courageously toward theire enemyes. Anoon after came tydynges to the siege how Frebourgh was lost, wherof the Duc of Austeryche and in eserual the Erle of Frebourgh were sorrowful & wroth. ‘By 8 my feyth,’ said thenne the Duc of Austerych, ‘they be subtyl men of warre & mocli to be doubted. Yf we loke not wel about vs they myght wet gyue vs a grete chak.’ Wherfor they called theire Counseyll.

In this partye sayth thystorye that on the next day by the morowe the six brethern hent masse, and after ordeyned feire bataylles / geffray & his thre brethern that were come with hym conduyted the first batayll, Anthony had the second, And regnauld the IIIde. And so marched forth in fayr ordynance, and so wel renged that it was a fayre sight to behold. And whan the sonne bygan to shewe bryght & clere they came vpon a lytel mountayn into the valey. Thene were they percyued, and they of the siege bygan to cry alarme. Thene armed hym every man, And in their best wyse came & renged them before the bataylles of the brethern. Thene bygan the bataylles of bothe sydes to approche eche other / and with grete cryes of one part & of other medled & ranne with their sperys vpon eche other. The grounde was thare soone dyel rede with grete effusyon of blood. For Geffray with hys sword smote at the lyfte syde & at the ryght syde vpon his enemyes & onerthrew or sloughe al them that he recounted. And the six baners of the brethern rengid them togidre in fayre aray. There were the armes of Lusynen wel shewed and knowen in pycture, and also by pesaunt and horryble strokes. For the six brethern perced the 36
The brethren slay many of their enemies.

Geffray encountres the Duke of Austria, and strikes him with his sword.

Theodore, who was at hand, gives him another stroke, and overthrows him. The Duke is taken.

Anthony captures the Earl of Frebourg.

The Germans begin to flee.

The King of Assay comes out of his fortress, and thanks the brethren, and feasts them.

The Duke of Austria and the Earl of Frebourg are brought before him, and the brethren tell him to do what he pleases with them.

The brethren return home.

They afterwards meet at Mountserrat on a visit to their father, who is joyful at seeing them.

They give rich gifts to the church.

Geffray and Theodore go to Raymondin every year;

A A

Here testyfeth thistorye that as long as Raymondyn lyued, Geffray & theodoryk came there euery  

MELUSINE.
but one day when they were about to journey to Mountserrat, a great serpent is seen on the battlements of Lusignan castle. It has a woman’s voice. The people are abashed, and know it to be Melusine; the brothers weep. When the serpent sees them she inclines her head, and utters a dolorous cry.

Geffray and Theodoric go to Mountserrat and find their father dead. 1 fol. 209 b.
They mourn, and dress themselves and their men in black, and arrange their father’s obsequies. The King of Aragon, and many lords, attend and hear mass. After the burial Geffray thanks them.

A tomb is placed over Raymondin.

Thence as thystorye sheweth was thobsqueye of Raymondyn deuotly & nobly doon, and a ryche sepulture was made & sette vpon his graue, & trouth it is that Bernardon the neuw of Geffray was there that ryght wel coude behaue hym among the ladyes, in so moche that the quene of Aragon, that was there, desyred her lord to demande of Geffray what that yong gentylman was / and that / the kyng dye gladly. And theane geffray answereth, ‘Sire, he is my neuew, sone to the Erle of Marche my brother.’ ‘Certaynly, Geffray,’ said the kyng, ‘Wel I bylene that, For he is wel nouryttured and semeth wel to be of noble

...
extraction / and wele it wel that his contenannce playseth vs ryght wel and so dooth lyke wyse to the quene / and veryly yf it playset you to suffre hym abyde with vs in our Court we wold doo for hym that he & you bothe shuld be playset therwith.’ ‘Sire,’ said geffray, ‘his fader hath another sone and two doughtirs, & syth it is your playsir to haue hym he is 8 come hither with vs in a good heure & that playseth me wel.’ And thenne the kyng thanked hym moche, and so dyde the quene. And wele it that Bernardyn 1Wedded afterward, at thinstauence & prayer of the 12 kyng of Aragon, the doughtir of the lord Cabyeres that had none to hys heyre but her. And thenne the kyng & the quene, lordes & ladyes, toke theire leue of the two bretherne, the whiche after grete yeftes of 16 ryches by them yonen to the churche toke leue of the pryowr and hys monkés, and after departed and retourned to Lusynen, where as they called to them all the baronne and there was thobseque of Raymondyn 20 honourably doon. And aftir Geffray shewed2 to his brother Odon, Erle of Marche, how & wherfore hys sone Bernardyn was lefte withe the kyng of Aragon, wherof he was gladt. And thenne the bretheren and 24 the barons toke leue of Geffray and retourned to theire countrees. And Geffray abode at Lusynen and dyde aftirward moche good; For he reedyfied the noble Abay of Maylleses & dyde grete almesse to the pour 28 people.

Thystorye sayth that all the heyres of Raymondyn and Melusyne regned nobly, that is to wete Vryan in Cipre, Guyon in Armenye, Regnault in 32 Behayne, Anthony in Lucembourgh, Odon in Marche, Raymonet in Forestz, Geffray in Lusynen, and Theodoryk in Partenay. And of theyre lynee are yssued them of Castel Regnault, They of Penbrough

The Queen of Aragon takes Geffray’s nephew to her court.

He afterwards marries the only child of the Lord of Cabyeres.

Geffray and Theodorie give great gifts to the church,

and return to Lassignan, where the obsequies of Raymondin are honourably done.

Geffray tells Odo that Bernardon had been left with the King of Aragon.

Geffray rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses,

The nine heirs of Raymondin and Melusyne reign nobly,

and from them are issued the lords of Castle Regnault, of Pembroke,
of Cabyeres, and of Cardillac.

Geffray governs his land well, and administers good justice. For ten years he asks no money from his receivers, who are told when they wish him to examine the accounts, that when justice is done, and his towns and castles are well provided for, and he has plenty of money, he is content.

But his stewards ask, for their own safety, that he should give them quittance.

Geffray looks at his accounts, and sees an item of ten sous that was paid yearly for the pommel of the highest tower of Lusignan Castle.

He is told that it is an annual rent.

Geffray declares he holds the castle direct from God, his Creator. His stewards tell Geffray that they do not know to whom they pay the ten sous.

in England, they of Cabyeres in Aragon,¹ and they of Cardillak in Quercyn.

Hereafter saith this story that Geffray ten yere after the decez of Raymondin his fader governed 4 right well & kept good justice in his land, but duryng that long space of tym he asked of his receuours none acomptes, but when the receuours wold haue shewed their acomptes he to them answerd in this manere: 8 'What acomptes wold ye shew to me? For as touching myself I wyl none other acompte, but that justice be wel and truly kept throug al my land, and my tounes & Castels wel entreteyned, and gold & syluer to hold 12 & kepe myn estate / trow ye that I wyl make a paleys of gold / the stone that my lady my moder me gaf, suffyseth me ryght wel.' And thenne his stywardes & gouernours answerd, 'certaynly, my lord, it behoueth 16 wel to a prync to here and see what he spendeth, at lest ones in a yere / al were it but for the saluacon of hys receyourns in tym to come and for to gyue them quyteance.'

Here sayth this story that Geffray consentid to here that acomptes of his receyourns. And it came to an article where he understoaked that 4 X. 8 were payed euery yere only for the pommel of the hyest toure of 24 hys Fortresse of Lusynen / he anone rested there and asked why it was not made so strong that it myght laste many wynter. 'My lord,' answerd the receyourns / 'it is rente annuch.' 'What say ye?' said geffray / 'I 28 hold not the fortresse but only of god my Creatour / wel happy I were ye he held me quyte therfor of alh my symes / but telle me to whom ye paye.' 'Certaynly,' said they / 'we wot not.' 'How thenne,' said Geffray / 32 'ye desyre of me quytaire therof / so wyl I haue

¹ Fr. version gives in addition 'cente du Chasseneage du Dauphine; cente de la Roche.'
² Fr. Candillat.
³ Fr. dix soublz.
quytyance of hym that receuyeth it of you / as rayson is / but by god ye shal not begyth me soo, for ye I may knowe who that taketh that annuall rente of me, he
shall shew me good letres thereof made / or he or ye shall yeald me ayen the said annuall rente fro the tyme that ye first alowed it in your acomptes 'vnto now.'

Theem said the receyouners to Geffray in this manere:

8 'My lord, trouth it is / that six yere agoo after the doulorous departying of my lady your moder from your fader / every yere vpon the last day of August was sene a grete hand that toke the pommel of the said
toure & pulleth it fro the toure by so grete strength that the rouf of the tour brak therwittal, and so it costed every yere to make ayen xx
d or xxx	hanne came a man to my lord your fader which he nor no man
knew what he was, and counseyllct hym that every yere vpon the last day of August he shuld doo take a purse of hertis leeder and to be put in it xxx pieces of sylver, eche piece worth 
soule penys, that made in

20 summa ten shelings; And that this purse shuld be putte vpon the pommel of the said toure / and by that shuld the pommel abyde styld and not hurt nor dommaged / and ever syth tyl now it hath thus be doon.' And

24 whan geffray understod this merynhy he bygan to thinke, and long he was or he ansuered or said ony word. /

T'hystorye witnesseth that long thought Geffray

28 vpon this faytte, and after he said in this manere:

'Sires, how wel that I bylyene that it is as ye say, Neuertheless I charge you vpon payne of deth that ye no more paye the said annuell, but at the last day of

32 August breng to me the purse and the money, For I wyl make the payement myself.' Thenme sent geffray for hys brother theodoryk in Partenay, and also for hys brother Raymond in Forestz, that they shuld be

1 fol. 211.

Geffray says that

The receivers
tell how six years
after the depar-
ture of Melusine,
and the last day
of August every
year,
a great hand
pulled down the
pommel of the
tower, which
cost twenty to
thirty livres to
repair.

Then an un-
known man came
and advised Ray-
mondin to put
thirty pieces of
silver on the
pommel the last
of August each
year,
and the tower
would be un-
injured.

Geffray marvels
much at the
story:

2 Fr. lieres. 3 Fr. quatre deniers.
Geffray goes to pay his tribute. [CH. LIX.

with hym at Lusynen the xxvi\textsuperscript{th} day of August. And whan they were \textit{come} he shewed \textit{to} them al the mater of the said annuel rente, and said that he neuer shuld suffer it to be payed; but that he first knew to \textit{4} whom and why the fortres of Lusynen was bound thus for to doo. And whan the last day of August came, Geffray her\textit{1} hys masse and recceuyed ryght dewolutely the holy sacremente and immediately armed hym, and \textit{8} bad the preste putte the stoll to his nek / and aftir take the purse \textit{with} the money therin. And \textit{peyne} he bad his brethren farwel, sayeng in this manere: 'I wyl departe and serche for hym that thus 12 yerly taketh trybute of my fortresse / but I assure you yf he be no more of strength than I am I shal\textit{2} lastly byreue hym of hys trybute.' And so he yede vp to the vpermost stage of the donjon / and his brethren 16 and the barons taryed beneethe in grete doubte and fare that geffray shuld be peryssed / but geffray was therof not agast / but loked long yf he coude see eny thing. 

\textbf{A} H thus as thystory sheweth geffray rested there 20 fro none to thre of the clok, that he ne her\textit{2} nor sawe nothing: but anoone after he her\textit{1} a grete noysse wherwith a\textit{8} the donjon shook / and as he loked tofore hym he perceyued a grete knyght armed of al 24 poynets, that said to hym with a bye voyes, 'Thou geffray, wilt thou denye my trybute that of ryght I ought to have vpon the pommele of this toure of the which I was seasyd \& enpoccised\textit{1} by thy fader?' 28 'Theme,' said Geffray, 'where are the letres? yf thou hast them, shew it how my fader was bound, and yf I see thou hast good ryght / here is the money redy to paye the.' and them the knyght answere\textit{1} in this 32 manere: 'I had never letres therof / but wel \& truly hau I be payed \& never denyed\textit{7} yf now.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'al were it good debte and thy ryght to hau e it / yet shuldest thou hau grete peyne 36
to reconcile it of me. And on the other part thou holdest me for thy subget & I woldest hold me in servitude and thou hast therof nothing to show. But what art thou that thus by the space of XVI. yere hast thevely take this trybut? / I now deffye the by the myghty of my sanyour and the I chalenge for myn herytage.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'doubte not therof but that I am a creature of god, and myn name shal thou knowe tyme ynown.' And without any more questyon ech of them recounted other with myghty & gret strokes. And what with that and with the stampyng of theire feets, the noyse was so grete that al pey that were benethe were abasshed, and supposed that the donejon shulde haue faß. Wherfor they wyt wel that geffray had somewhat to doo. And his bretheren shuld haue assysted hym, but geffray had them deffended so to do. And wete it wel whan the knyght of the tour fond Geffray so fyers & so strong, he putte his sword vp in the shede and throug his paueys behind hym. And whan Geffray sawe hym that doo / he dyde lyke wyse with his shield / but he with bothe his handes smote the knyght vpon the helmet with his sword so myghtyly that he stakerd. Perwith. And thesme the knyght toke geffray in his armes / and with that geffray lete fæ thy sward and wrestled with hym / and wete it wel ther was lytel favour shewed on neyther part. And whan the knyght perceyued the purse about geffrayes neck he supposed to haue had it from hym / but geffray kept hym therfró / sayeng / 'or thou haue purse or money it shal cost the the best blood in thy body / but for trouth I meruaiß how thou mayst so long withstand me.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'I haue more meruaißle how thou mayst withstand my strenthe / but to morowe shalt thou haue a new day with me,

1 fol. 212.

but as he has nothing to show that it is due, he demands his name, and defies him.

The knight replies that he is a creature of God, and that Geffray will learn his name soon enough.

They fight, and make so great a noise that those below think the donejon will fall.

His bretheren would have come to his help, but Geffray had forbidden them to do so.

The knight sheathes his sword, and puts his shield behind him.

Geffray strikes him on the helmet so that he staggeres.

He wrestles with Geffray, and tries to take the purse from him.

2 Fr. quatorze ou de xv. ans.
GEFFRAY MEETS THE KNIGHT NEXT DAY. [CH. LIX.

For now the sonne is to his rest, and thou shalt fynd me yonder vpon that medowe beyond the ryuere al redy armed to chalenge the and my ryght. But thou shalt assure me pat no personne shal passe the ryuere but thou. 'By my fyeth,' said Geffray, 'I the assure no more ther shal not,' and with that he departed that geffray wyst not where he became. 'By my fyeth,' sayd theame geffray, 'here is apert messager, I have 8 grete mercaylle what this may be,' and so came he doun and brought with hym the knyghtes sheld that he had wonne.

Thystorye witnesseth whan Geffray was come doun, 12 hys sheld about his neck and the knyghtis paneys in his ryght hand that he had wonne / and in his other hand the purse with the money, hys bretheren and the baronye pere were abasshed therwith, and 16 asked hym whom he had fond. And theame he said he had fond the moost valyaunt knyght that ever he dyde dedes of armes withal. And to them shewed al the maner of batayH & of theire covenant / and how 20 he wold haue had the purse, and how he departed so sodaynly, and they bygan to lawhe, sayeng pat neuer tofore they herd of suche a thing. But whan they sawe geffrays helmet & al hys barneys so perysshed 24 with strokes, they had no courage to lawhe, For they knew wel there was sore batayH. And on the next day erly geffray roos, and he & hys bretheren herd masse & drank ones. And theame armed hym at al 28 pieces & mounted on horsbak / And his bretheren and pe barous yec to conneye hym to the ryuere, where he toke leue of them and passed ouer on the other syde of the ryuere. /

Thystorye telleth that anoone Geffray fond? pe knyght and to hym said with a hye voys, 'Sire knyght, be ye he that wyl take the trybute vpon my Fortresse?' And he answerd, 'ye by my feith.' And 36
ryght forth said geffray, 'I chalenge the, wherfor defiende the.' And when the knight understand this, he sette the spere in the rest and geffray lyke wyse / and so eche of them recounted other / by force wherof they brak thaire speris to the hard fyst in many pieces. And when they had thus manfully broken thaire speris they drew out thaire swenles and smote eche other 8 with grete & myghty strokes that the fyre sprang out of thaire harneys, wherof the peple upon the ryuere syde had grete mercayH & were al abashshed how that euer they might endure the grete strokes, For they left not one piece of harneys hool. And they fought fro the morow vnto thre of the Clok at aftirnone and neuer seased. And so grete was the batayH that none [wist] which of them had the bettre. And them 16 the knight bygan to say to geffray / 'here me now, I haue the wel assayd / and as touching the trybute I the quyte. And wete it wel that / that I haue doo, it hath be for the prouffyt of thy fader & of his sowle, 20 For it is trouth that the pope enjoyned hym by way of penanunce for the forsweryng that he had don to thy moder to founde a monastery, the whiche penanunce was not by hym observed. but it is so yf thou 24 wylt edyfye an hospital, and founde therin a preste to syng daylye for thy faders sowle / thy fortres fro this day fourtoun shalbe quyte of ony trybute / how be it there shall be sene about the towr more mernaylles 28 than in euy other place of euy world.' And geffray answerd, 'yf I knew for certayn that thou were of god I wold gladli 3 fullfuH thy wyH in this byhalf.' / And he said he was. And them geffray said / 'be thou sure this shal be doon yf it playse god. but I pray the say me what thou art.' And the knyght answerd, 'Geffray, enquire no fether. For as for this tyme thou mayst knowe no more / but only that I am 1 which in MS.

Geffray challenges him.  
They break their spears, and draw their swords, and give each other mighty strokes.  
The knight tells Geffray that he forgives him the tribute.  
What he had done was for the good of Geffray's father's soul, who was to have founded a monastery as penance, but had not done so.  
If Geffray will build an hospital and endow a priest, he will quit him of his tribute altogether.  
Geffray answers, that if he knew the knight were of God he would do his will.  
2 fol. 213 b.  
He declares he is, and Geffray promises that his will shall be done.
The knight disappears without telling his name.

Geffray crosses the river to his brethren. They ask where his enemy has gone. Geffray says that they came to an agreement, but he cannot tell where the knight has gone. Geffray hung the shield he wore in his hall. After Geffray had built the hospital the shield vanished. Here ends the history of the heirs of Lusignan.

Long after the death of Guion of Armenia there was a wilful young king, who heard tell of a castle in Great Armenia, where dwelt the fairest lady in the world. She had a sparrowhawk, and to any noble knight who could 3 fol. 214., watch it three days and nights without sleep, she gave whatever they asked, save herself.

The young king resolved to go, and said he would take nothing but the lady's person.

1a Creature of God.' And therewith he vanysthed that geffray wyst not where he became; wherof meruayled moche they that were by his ryuere. And thence came geffray ouer the ryuer to his brethren, whiche asked hym how he had doo and where his party aduerse was become. And geffray to them sayd that they were acorded togiestre, but where he was became he coude not tell. And thence they retournd to Lusynen where geffray dido doo hang the panyeys, that he had wonne vpon the kynght of the toure, in the myddes of his hall. Where as it heng tyl geffray had edfyfed the said hospital, For thyn it vanysthed away that no man wyst where it became. And here fynysthed the hystory of the heyres of Lusynen, but bycause that the kynges of Armanye ben yssued of that lynne, I wyl shewe herafter an aventure that before to a kyng 16 of Armanye.

Thystorye sayth that long after the deces of kyng guyon of Armanye, Ther was a kinge of that land yong and fayre, lecherous and folowyng his wyth. 20 The kyng vnderstood by the report of som knyghtes vyageours, that there was in the grete Armanye a Castel whereas was in the most fayre lady that men wyst at that tyme in al the world; the whiche lady 24 had a sperhauke and to al knyghtes of noble extraction that thither went & coude watche the said sperhauke duryng the space of thre 3 dayes and thre nyghtes without slepe the lady shuld appiere tofore them and 28 gyue them suche worldly yeftes as they wold wysshe and were desyring to haue, except only her self. This kyng thynne that was lusty and in his best age, and that vnderstood the renomme of the excellent beaute of 32 the said lady said he wold go thither and that of the lady he shuld nothing take but herself. But wete it that in the said Castel might none entre but ones in

1 Fr. de par Dieu. 2 Fr. espreier.
a yere / and that was the day tofore the vygille of saynt Johan / and the next day after saynt Johans day euery man must departe thens. Whan the said kyng was redy he departed & rode with noble company so long that he cam to the forsaid Castel at the day assygned, tofore the which he dide dresse vp a ryche panyllon and there he souped, and aftir went to rest. And on the morne he roos and herd masse / and after that the masse was do, he drank ones, and syn armed hym and toke leue of them that were come with hym, which were sorowfull for his departing, For they trowed that neuer he should haue come ayen. And this doon the kyng yed toward the sperhauk in the Castel. /

Here saith this story that whan the king was at thentree of the Castel, an old man al clothed in whyte cam ayenst hym, & asked hym who that had brought hym thither / and he answere in this manere:

'I am come hither to seke thatenture and to haue the Custome of this Castel.' And the good old man said to hym / 'ye be ryght welcome, folow ye me, and I shal shew you the anenture that ye seke for.' Thence yede the king aftir the old man / and greetly was he merynayled of the grete & inestimable riches that he sawe, within the place. And thene entred the old man into a noble halfe rychely hanged, And aftir hym entred the kyng that perceyued in the myddes of the haft a long horne of a vnycome that was fayre & whyte / and therupon was spred a grete cloth of gold wheron stod the sperhauk and a glowe of whyt sylk vnder his feet. Thence said the old man to the kyng in this wyse: 'Sire, here ye may see thaduenture of this Castel / and with it sethyn ye are so ferfoorth come ye must watche this sperhauk thre days and thre nyghtes without slepe. And ye fortune suffre ye so to doo, wete it wel pat the noble lady of this ryall

People could only enter the castle on the vigil of St. John's, and the day after St. John's day all had to leave. The King with his company arrived on the right day, and set up a pavilion before the castle, where he supped and rested the night. In the morning he heard mass, drank, amused himself, and went to the castle.

An old man clothed in white asked at the entry why he had come.

The King said, 'To have the custom of the castle.'

The old man welcome him, and asks him to follow him into the castle. The King marvels at the riches he sees.

1 fol. 214 b.

They come to a noble hall, and there the King sees the sparrow-hawk perched on a unicorn's horn.

The old man tells the King that he watches the sparrow-hawk three days and three nights without sleep.
the lady of the
castle will ap-
pear on the
fourth day, and
grant what he
desires most to
have, except
herself; if he
asks to have her
evil will befall
him.

Castel shattered appiere tofore you on the foureth day, to
whom ye shalt ask that thing of the world whiche ye
desyre moost to haue / except her body / and no
doubte of but ye shalt haue it / but wete it certaynly 4
yi ye desire and ask to haue herself, enyl aventure
shalt fall to you therof.'

Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye
watched the sperhauk.

The foresaid old man after that he had declared
and shewed to the kyng the manere of watching
of the sperhauk, he departed fro the halle / and the
kyng abode alone and had grete meruayl, what of the 12
grete ryches pat he sawe there, as of a ryche table that
was in the hall covered nobly with al maner deyntes of
meetes. And that part he drew hym self & ete a lytel
and drank of that lyked best & kept good dyete and 16
made none exces, For wel he knewe that to much
meet & drynk causeth the body to be pesaunt & sley.
And to dryue fourth the tyme walked vp & down the
hall, taking grete plaiesyr of the grete noblesse that 20
he sawe, 2 For there were ryche pictures where as were
figured many a noble hystory, and the wrytyng
vndernethe that shewed the understandyng of it.
And among other hystoryes was there figured the 24
noble hystory of kyng Elynas & queen Pressyne his
wyf, and of their thre doughtirs, and how they
closed their fader in the mountaye of Brombelyo in
Northomberland / and how Pressyne their moder 28
punysshed them therfor / and al the circunstances of
their faytes were there shewed in letres of gold fro pe
bygynnyng vnto the ende.

Grete plaiesyr toke the king to rede & see the said 32
hystoryes. And thus he watched lokyng here
and there vnto the thirde day. And thene he per-
ceyued a right noble chambre, and sawe the doore al wyck open / and that part he went and entred in the chambre, and beheld per many knyghtes armed fygured 4 and rychely paynted on the walles, and under their feet were their names writon in letres of gold and of what lynee & countre they were / and above their heedes was writon in this manere: 'Vpon suche a 8 tyme watched this knight in this Castel the noble sperhawk, but he slept / and therefore he most hold company with the lady of this place as long as he may lyue, and nothing worldly shal he wante of that his 12 herte can desire saf only the departyng fro the place.'

And there nygh were paynted thre sheldes in a rowe, and on them were fygured the armes of thre knyghtes and their names / their lynee & their Contre that they 16 were of were writon vnderneth / and above the sheldes was shewed by wrytyng this that foloweth: 'In suche a yere watched our sperhawk this noble knight wel and duely and departed with joye and had his yeft of 20 vs with hym.' And so long beheld the king that he almost slept / but he anoon came out of the Chambre and sawe the sonne almost doun and passed fourth that nyght without slepe.

21 This mane was he glad whan he perceyued pe day. And foorthwith at the rysyng of the sonne cam the lady of the Castel in so noble and so rychely arm that the kyng had grete mernayH therof / and what of 28 her ryches as of her excellent beaute, he was grete abasshed. And theame the lady dide her obeyssanuce, sayeng in this manere: 'Noble kyng of Armanye, ye be ryght welcome. For certaynly ye haue wel & 32 valyuantly endenwoired you. now aske of me what yefte that so euere playse you worldly and raysounable, and ye shal haue it without ony taryeng.' Then answerd the king that right sore was espyrzed of the 36 loun of her, 'By my feyth, gracyous & noble lady, I when he sees an open door. He enters the chambre and sees the wall figured with many knyghts, and reads their names and the writing:

'This knight watched the sparrowhawk, but slept, and so must remain in the castle all his life.'

He also sees three shields painted with the arms of three knights, and a writing:

'This knight watched our fol. 216. sparrow-hawk, and departed joyfully with his gift.'

The King nearly fell asleep looking at the figures, but left the chamber, and kept awake all the night.

At sunrise the lady of the castle comes to the King, and welcomes him, and asks him to name what gift he would have.

The King answers,
THE KING ASKS HER TO BE HIS WIFE. [CH. LXI.

"Neither silver nor gold, nor town nor castle, but you, my beloved lady, to be my wife."

The lady is wroth at his request, and replies that she cannot have her.

The King presses his suit, but she tells him to ask a reasonable gift.

1 fol. 216 b. The King declares he will have nothing but herself.

The Queen tells him that unless he changes his purpose evil hap will fall on him and his posterity;

but the King declares that his heart is ravished with her beauty, and that he will have nothing but her.

The King asks nether gold nor syluer, Cyte, town, nor Castel, For thanked be god I have of al worldly riches ynoough / but yf it playse you, my ryght dere & right entierly beloved lady, I wyl haue you to my wyf.' And whan 4 the lady understood this she was wroth, and by grete yre she said to hym in this wyse: 'Ha, thou grete foole, For nought hast thou asked my body, For thou mayst not by no wyse haue it.' Thenne said the king to 8 the lady, 'Wel I haue, to myn aduys, endeuedoired me. Wherfor, noble lady, be you favourable to me and haue regard to the custome of this castel.' 'By my feth,' answerd the lady, 'as touching thatadventure & custome 12 of this Castel, I wyl that it be observed & kept / but aske of me yeft raysounable / and no doubte 3 of but thou shalt haue it.' 'By my feth, noble lady, I desyre none other thing erthly nor none other I shal not aske 16 nor take of you, but only your gracious body.' 'Ha, fole, fole,' said theque the lady, 'euyl myscheaunce shal faH on the, yf thou soone chaungest not thy purpos, and so it shal to al thin heyres & successours 20 aftir pe / though they be not culpable therof.' And the kyng her answerd, 'It is for nought, For my herte is rauysshed of your beaute, and only fedde with your syght. And therfore your body wyl I haue and 24 none other thing erthly.' /

Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away.

When theynne the lady sawe that the kyng chaunged not his purpos, she was ryght wroth, and to hym said i this manyere: 'Thou folyssh kyng, now shalt thou les the syght of me, & shalt sayH of 32 thy yeffe, & hast putte thyself in anenture to abyde within for euer in grete Payne & tourment, bycause that
thou art yssued of the lynee of kyng guyon that was
sone to Melusyne my sustir, and I am his ante / and
thou art so nygh of my blood and kyndred that though
4 I wold be consentyng to thy wyH holy Chirch wold
neuer suffre it.’ And after she reherced & shewed to
hym al that is tosore said in the 1Chapter of Elynas
and Pressyne, and also fro hed to heed all the heyres
8 of Lusynen and their feattes. And after she said to
hym ‘grete myschief shal happe to the & vpon thy ly
heyres successours 2after the, and that shal endure vnto
the ix lynne, For they shal faH in decaye, & exilled fro
12 their contrees & fro their honour, wherfor deporte
lightly hens, For here mayst thou no lenger abyde.’
The kyng thempe vnderstode wel the lady, but neyper
for her wordes, nor for fere that ought shuld hym
16 mysfaH, he neuer chaunged his folysh wyH & vnhappy
purpos, but wold hawe take the lady by manere of
vyolens and by force. but soone Melyor vanysshed
away that he wyst neuer where she was become.

20 Cap. LXII. How the king was bete &
ouerthrowen and knew not of whom.

And immediatly after the departyng of Melyor
there feH vpon the kyng gret & pesaunt strokes,
24 as thykk as rayn falleth fro the skye. Wherof he was
al to brusid in every part of his body, and was drawn
by the feet fro the halle vnto the barrers without the
Castel. And wete it that he neuer saw none of them
28 that so cruelly sermoned hym. And as soone as he
myght he stode vpon his feet, cursyng a thousand
209 mayst to hym that first brought hym tydunges of this
auentre, and the heure also that euer he cam thither.
32 And theame he went toward his meyne that saw his
harneys al to broken and perysshed, and demanded of

1 Cap. I. page 6, et seq.
hym in this manere: 'My lord, vs semeth that ye be sore hurt, have ye had batayH there as ye haue be?' And he answerd, 'I am somewhat hurt / but no batayH I haue not had / but so ferre I knowe that shrewedly 4 I haue be festyed\(^2\) how wel I perceyued no body / but I assure you I felt wel the strokes, and wete it wel I reuenged me not / and thus haue I had no batayH / For he that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayH. 8 but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect.'

A noone aftir the king & his peuple departed and entred in the see and sailled toward his countre, enou thinking vpon this that Melyor had said to hym, 12 and doubted moche to haue lost his good fortune as he had. For wete it wel that neuer aftir this faytte he had no herty joye and regned long tyme, but fro day to day felH in decaye by dyverse maners. And wete it 16 wel that his heyres after his decesse were not fortunat, but vnhappe in al their actes. Here shall I leue to speke of the king of Armanye. For ynowth it is known that they came of the noble lynee of the 20 king Elynas of Albanye & of Lusynen. vnto this thursday vii day of August vpon the whiche was ended this present volume. The yere of our lord a thousand [ccc] \(^3\):xxx & foureteen./

Now have I shewed to you after the very Cronykles and true history how the noble Fortresse of Lusynen in Poytou was edyfyed & made / and of the noble yssue & lynee of the foundatours thereof, on whos 28 sowles god haue mercy / the whiche fortresse of Lusynen is a now come but of late, by manere of Conqueste, into the handes of the ryght noble & myghty

---

1 Fr. batu.

2 See the note to C. Brunet's Fr. Ed., page 240. Le texte porte: mil iiiij vingz et xiiij. C'est evidemment une erreur puisque Jean d'Arras dit, dis les premières pages, qu'il a commence cette histoire en 1387. In the Harl. MS. of Melusine the date is given as 'le VIIe jour d'auert l'an de grace Mil iiiij C iiiijXX et XIII.'
pryence my right redoubted lord Johan sone to the kyng of France, Duc of Berry, Auuergne, &c., by whos com-
mandement I haue endeuoured me after my rude and 4 symple entendement to collige & gadre emong many
gestes & true Cronykles the truth of thystory 
byfore speckyfied. And wete it for truth that oftentymes I
haue heretofore my said lord say that a knyght called
SersueH that held the said Fortres as lieutenaut &
Captayne there for the kyng of England / at that tyme
that my said lord had besieged / said to hym after the
reducyon of the Fortres / that thre dayes tofore, tofore
that he gaf it vp / he lyeng in hys bed with a woman
hys concubine named Alexaundryne / perceyued a
grete & horryble serpent in the myldes of the Chambre,
whereof he was gretly abasshed & sore agast / and wolde
haue take the swerde to haue descharged it vpon the
serpent / but Alexaundryne said thesame to hym in
this manyere: 'Ha, valyaunt Sersuel, how ofte haue
I sene your mortal enemyes tofore your presence that
neuer ye were afered, and now for a serpent of fementynge
nature ye shake for feare. Wete it for truth that this
serpent is the lady of this place & she that edlyfied it /
she shal by no manere wyse hurt nor damnage you /
but so ferre I understands by her apparysshing that
nedes ye shal hastily deluyere & gyne vp this Fortres
to the Duc of Berry' / And morouer said the said
SersueH to my said lord that hys Conculyne fered
nothing the serpent / but that he was neuer in his
dayes so afered. And that he sawe thenne the said
serpent tourned in to a fourme of a woman clothed in
gowne of Cours cloth & gyred with a grete corde
vndermethe the pappes of her / and soone after tourned
herself in the figure of a serpent and so vanysshed
away.
Also there was a man named godart dwellyng at
that tyme within the said Fortresse, whiche son of the
King of France, at whose com-
mand I have gathered this history.

Three days be-
fore he gave it up he was in bed
with his concu-
bine, and saw a
great serpent in
his chamber,
which frightened
him. He took his
sword to slay it;
but his lady said
that the serpent
was the lady of
the place, and
her appearance
proved that he
would soon have
to give up the
castle.

The serpent then
turned into a
woman, clothed
in a coarse gown,
with a great cor
round her. Then
she became a
serpent again
and vanished.

Also there was a man named godart dwellyng at

MELUSINE.
Golart swore to my lord on the gospel that he had often seen 
the serpent on the walls of the fortress, and that he had passed her without harm. 
Ivon of Wales swore that three days before the surrender of the castle by SersueH, he saw a great serpent on the donjon of the castle, and that many others saw her.

I have done my utmost to know the truth of the matter,

and if I have written what appears to some incredible, I beg for pardon.

Some authors hold this to be a true chronicle of fairy tales.

To those who object, I say the judgments and

affirmed for a trouth / and swere to my forsayd lord upon the holy euanegilles that many tyme he had sene upon the walles of the fortres the said serpent, and that he had passed of tymes nygh her without receuyng of any harme. Then another also called Yvon of Walles swere his feyth vnto my said lord that three dayes tofore the redcuyon of the said Fortresse made by the said SersueH into the handes of my said lord, S pat he sawe an horryble grete serpent vpon the batlements of the donjon of the said Castel of Lusynen. And many other also had the vision and syght of her.2

And where it is soo that at thinstannce requeste and prayer of my said lord haue been examyned many prynces and dyuerse of the making & compilation of this present hystorye vpon the said mater. And also I haue putte my self to myn vtermost power to rede & loke over the Cronyckles & many bokes of auncyent hystoryes, to thende that I might knewe the trouth of the forsaid mater. Therfore yf I haue wryton or showed any thing that to som semeth neyther possible to be nor credible, I beseech them to pardonne me. For as I fele & understanle by the Auctours of gramaire & phylosophye they repute and hold this present hystorye for a true Cronykle & things of the fayry. And who that saith the contrary / I say the secret jugements of god and his panysh-

2 Fr. adds: Et encore plus avant y a ung cheratier poitevin, nomme messire Percheral de Coolongue, qui fut chambellan du bon roy de Chipre, avec le roy, la serpente s'estoit apparee a ceuillay roy, comme ceuillay roy auyroit dit en ceste maniere parlant a luy: Percheral, je me doube trop! Pour quiest, monseigneur? dit le cheratier. Par mon roy, dit le roy, pour ce que jay vcu la serpente de Lusignan qui c'est apparee a moy; si me doube qui ne me adieunique aucune perte dedens brief temps, on a Perrin mon filz: car ainsi apparat elle quant aucune des hoirs de Lusignan doibent morir. Et jura messire Percheral que dedens le tiers jour apres, la dure adventure que chasqu neet bien adevait.

3 Harl. MS. reads proues = proofs,
ments are insuyble & impossible to be understand or knowe by the humanitye of man. For the understanding of humayne Creature is to rude to understande the 4 spyce espiyntuel, & may not wel comprehend what it is / but as ferre as the wylle of god wyl suffre hym. For there is found in many hystoryes Fayries that haue be maried & had many children / but how this 8 may be the humayn creature may not conceyue. For these poynts and suche other god hath reteyned in his secrets. And the more that the personze of rude entendement the ferther is he fro knowlegfe of it. 12 And he that is replot of seyence naturel, the rather shaH haue affection to byleue it. Notwithstanding no creature humayn may not obteyne the secrets of god./ how be it saint paule saith in hys epystles to the 16 Rommyayns, 'that al thinges ben knowne by humayn Creature' / but the close rescrueth & excepteth the secrets of god. For the kynde of man is to understand the ferther that he trauayleth in reaumes and Countrees/ 20 the greter knowleche hath he of every thinge / than he that resteth in his owne Countre and neuer remevyth. And semblable wyse this hystorye is more credibe for as moche as it is not auctorised by one man only / but 24 also by many noble Clerkes. Now of this proces I wyl make no ferther mencion / but humbly I beseeche you and alle them fat shaH here or rede this hystorye / that yf there be ony thinge that be nuyouse or desplay- 28 saue to you / wyl pardonne me & hold me escusid. For yf a man dooth as wel as he can / he ought to be accepted. For in som cas the good wylle of a man is accepted for the dede./ And here I, Johan of Aras, ende the hystorye of Lusynen / beseeching god of his hygh mercy to gyue to hem that be passed fro this mortaH world hys eternaH glorye / and to them that be lyuyng, prosperous and blessidfuH endyng./ 36 [Here fynyssheth the noble hystorye of Melusyne.] punishing of God are not to be understood by man.

1 fol. 219.

There are many histories of Fayries that have married, and had children. No man can understand how this can be. God has kept these things secret.

Ignorant people cannot believe such things.

These who are learned can more readily do so, but no man can fathom the secrets of God.

The more men travel the more they learn.

This story is made more credible by the number of clerks who vouch for it.

I ask forgiveness of my readers for anything tiresome or displeasing I may have written.

If a man does as well as he can he ought to be accepted.

I, John of Arras, end the history of Lusignan, 2 fol. 219 b.

asking God to give those who have left this world His eternal glory, and to the living a blessed ending.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

Page 1, line 19. In the Catalogue of the Duke of Berry's Library, published in Le Labourer's Histoire de Charles VI., there is a volume relating to the subject of this romance, 'Un liure de l'Histoire de Lezignem, escrit en Latin, de lettre de fourme, bien historié & au commence-ment du second facillet apres la premiere Histoire, a escrit, sola sed tantum, couert de drap de damas rouge, formant à deux fermoirs de laiton, & tixus de soye.' Jean d'Arras declares in several places that the romance is founded on old Chronicles; see end of Cap. I.

p. 2, l. 11. Text should read: 'the Wednesday before St. Clement's Day.' The 'before' has been accidentally omitted by the translator or the transcriber. The French version reads: 'le mercredi devant la Saint Clement en yver.'

p. 2, l. 18. This heading seems out of place.

p. 3, l. 9. Is the reference to Romans, Cap. I, verse 20?:—'For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also and divinity: so that they are inexcusable.'

p. 3, l. 33. He appears to refer to local traditions, of which he makes some use; see, for example, the description of Melusine's appearances in his own time, on pages 369 and 370.

p. 4, l. 17. Probably Gervaise of Tilbury (fl. 13th century), a nephew of King Henry II. of England; he was appointed Marshal of Arles by the Emperor Otto IV. He was a voluminous writer. Warton says, in the History of English Poetry, § XXIV, that his Otia Imperialia was translated into French by Jean de Guerre between 1412 and 1427. His treatise is full of the most extraordinary marvels. In the British Museum MS., leaf 86, he tells of men being born without heads, having their eyes and mouths in their breasts. He is very full on lamia and dragons, and all kinds of monstrosities. He says that there have been cases in Italy of men being turned into beasts by eating cheese given them in taverns by enchantresses. Gervaise dedicated his Description of the World to Otto IV.

p. 4, l. 32. French text reads: 'les ungz qu'ilz ne verroient jamais l'ung l'autre; que le samedi ilz ne les enqueroient que elles seroient devenues en anculnes manieres; les autres que se elles avoient enfans, que leurs maris ne les verroient jamais en leurs gessines.'

p. 5, l. 21. He may be referring to the tales of Marco Polo, a copy of whose travels Jean d'Arras had access to in the Duke of Berry's collection.

p. 5, l. 24. The following appears to be the passage in Gervaise of Tilbury referred to: 'Scio equidem jampridem relatum veridica narrati- tione, quod in Aquensi provincia paucis ab Aquis milliaribus est castrum
Russetum, quod vallem Trezensem sub se missam respiciet. Hujus castri Dominus, Raimundus nomine, cum uno aliquo die solus in equo vectaretur juxta decursum interventis Laris fluvii, ex improviso occurrat domina nulli decore secunda, in palafredo phalerato, vestibus et apparatu pretiosissimis, cunque salutata a militae ipsum ex nomine resalutasset, ille ab ignoto se nominatum audient, miratur et nihilominus illam, ut moris est, coepit verbis lascivis interpellare, ut ei consentiat. Cui illa opponit, hoc praeter coniugalem copulam nulli licere verum si in ejus nuptias consentiat, ipsum possit optamus frui complexibus. Quid ultra? acquisescat conditionibus miles in nuptiis: at illa replicat, illum summa temporalium felicitatem ex ejus comminatione fruiturin, dum ipsum nudam non viderit; verum ut ipsum nudam conspexerit, omni felicitate spoliandam asserit et vix ei vitam mi-crarn servandam esse praeposuit. Pendet dubiusne timearet optaretne mori? tandem in nuptias consentiet et conditionem admittit. Inflammatus et aestuans omnem conditionem facilem arbitratur, qua cupidum thorunm possit obtinere. Consentient in matrimonium et contrahant, et crecentem militis felicitatem, in breve favore et hominum gratia, temporalium copia et corporis strenuitate in tantum excravit, quod pares excesset et paucis proceribus et illustribus sequentibus inventur. Hominibus amabilis, apud omnes gratiosus, liberalitatem dissereta largitate atque urbanitate condiebat. filius et filiabus summis pulchritudinis praecreatis. Cum post longa tempora uno die domina, ut assolent, in thalamo balnearet, Raimundus miles, a venatu rediens et ancupatu, peredicibus allisque carnibus ferinis dominam exeniat, et dum parantur cibaria, necio quo motu vel spiritu militi venit in mentem, quod nudam videat dominam balneantem, constituenius in animo siquidem, quod ex inhibita nuditati conspectione potuit ex fatis esse periculum, temporis diuturnitate tanque diuturnae communioinis longinquitate evanississe. Affectum maritus exposuit uxoribus, quae diuturnam felicitatem ex conditione servata object et infelicitatem minatur securitam, si contemnatur. Tandem paecep in praeceptibus miles, non temperatur interminatio poenae neque precibus fedicitur, ut a stulto proposito desistens suae consulat utilitate:

“tangunt animum motusque metusque
et timet eventus indignaturque timere.”

Quid moror? erepto linteo, quo balneum operitur, miles ut uxorem nudam videat, accedit, statimque domina in serpentem conversa, missio sub aqua balnei capite, disparuit, nunquam visa impostament nec audita, nisi quandoque de nocte, cum ad infantulos suos visitandos veniebat, nutricibus audientibis, sed ab ejus aspectu semper aretatis. Sane miles pro maxima parte felicitate ac gratia minoratus, filiam illius dominamuidam nostro affini ex nobilibus Provinciae oriundo postea dedit in uxorem, quae intercoaetaneas et confines suas plurimum exitit gratiosa et cujus jam successio ad nos usque pervenit. Primae Decisio XV Ottia Imperialis.

Theories of Paracelsus people rivers, &c., with Melusinae. They have no spiritual principle, but can obtain one by entering into a union with man: *Melusinae & meliorae filiae regiae quandam propter peccata desperabiliae, fuerunt a Sathana raptae, & in spectra transmutatione, spiritus malignos, lemures horribiles, & in immania monstra. Vivere putantur absque anima rationali & in brutali solum corpora phantastico, nutririi elementis, atque una cum ipsis in extremo die judicii transiturse, nisi cum aliquo homine forte fortuna matrimonium contrahant, tum demum, ut ipse, naturali morte interire posse, ut matrimonio naturaliter vivere virtute hujus unionis. Ejsusdem status atque generis plura spectra haberi creditur
in desertis, in sylvis, minis, monumentis, arcibus vacuis, & in extremis littoribus mariis. Vulgo maledicti vacantur homines, sed proprio nomine spectra vocantur, atque diabolorum sancti, cum quibus versantur cacodemones, suas illusiones & portenta percipient."—W. Johnson's *Lexicon Chymicum* [to the writings of Paracelsus], London 1652.

p. 5, l. 24. The name of Regnald does not occur in the list of the kings of Bohemia.

p. 5, l. 25. The Lusignans do not appear to have had any connection with Luxembourg.

p. 5, l. 28. The name Theodoric does not occur on the roll of the lords of Partenay-Parchevêque. The house was founded, according to French genealogists, by William, the son of Gilles Lusignan (fl. 1100—1130). Valence, daughter of Geoffray with the Great Tooth, married Hugh III. of Partenay-l'archevêque.

p. 7, l. 15. covered, Fr. couvertement.

p. 11, l. 3. Fr. 'je ne pense en nul cas deshoneste.'

p. 12, l. 26. There is a romance entitled 'L'Histoire du noble & vaillant Roy, Florimont fils du noble Mataquas de l'Albanie.' Florimont is the son of Mataquas, sire of Duras and Duke of Albany. His mother was Edozie or Flory, daughter of Fragnus, King of Persia. It is bound up with a Róune edition of Melusine. Warton notices a romance of 'Florimont et Passeroze,' *History of English Poetry*, § XII, note.

p. 12, l. 32. In Coudrette's version of Melusine, Avalon is called fairy land.

p. 13, l. 7. In some editions of the French version Ybernie is substituted for Albany, others have Albany as here.

p. 14, l. 8. Fr. ver. adds 'filles' after 'lawfull.'

p. 15, l. 11. They should be allowed to leave Avalon.

p. 15, l. 32. One of Melior's adventures is described at page 362.

p. 16, l. 4. The eve of St. John's Day comes on June 23. Many curious customs used to be observed on the vigil of St. John. In London the Watch was paraded through the city. In Paris a number of cats and a fox were burnt in the Place de Grève. In Ireland the people used to light fires on the hill tops, and according to Rev. Donald McQueen, they danced round them, and then made their children and cattle walk through the fires. McQueen thinks the custom a relic of sun-worship.—Brand's *Antiquités*.

p. 16, l. 13. There is a mountain named Guygo in Lesser Armenia. No account of Palatine is given in this romance. In Coudrette's versification of the romance there is briefly narrated her story, l. 5704, *et seq.* Palatine's place of abode is there given as Arragon.

p. 17, l. 3. Geoffray with the Great Tooth discovers the tomb, see page 327.

p. 17, l. 24. The Castle of Lusignan was founded in the tenth century by Hugues II., known as the *Bien Aimé*. It had many masters, and was a formidable stronghold. It was razed in 1569, after its capture from the Hugenôts. Little trace of it now remains.

p. 17, l. 27. 'fell at debate'; translates *cut riot*.

p. 17, l. 32. Fountains are usually made the scenes of the fairy love-making. Elinas meets Pressine at 'a moche fayre fontayne'; Henry of
Leon, father of Raymondin, meets the 'fayr lady to whom he told all his Fortune,' 'nighe by a fontain,' &c.

p. 18, l. 7. Jean d'Arras was fond of etymology; this appears a reasonable guess.

p. 19, l. 14. The 1478 edition makes the third chapter begin here. The edition published at Rouen by Pierre Mulot begins Cap. III at the same place as our text.

p. 21, l. 7. 'h... s.], in Fr. sur le col.

p. 31, l. 35. Melusine protests throughout that 'she is of god.' See pages 316 and 320.

p. 32, l. 32. Compare the promise exacted by Pressine, Melusine's mother, page 11.

p. 33, l. 12. 'hys doughtir,' i. e. Earl Emery's daughter.

p. 33, l. 25. Melusine has a store of magic rings:
1. Makes the holder proof against death from wounds.
2. Gives victory in war, in law, &c., to the holder.
3. Gives victory, and protects against enchantments and poison,
   p. 110, l. 20.
4. Gives victory so long as the wearer fights in a good cause,
   p. 191, l. 11; p. 319, l. 10.

Magic rings appear to have come from the East. They figure in many Arabian tales. In classical literature we have several Magic ring stories, which probably have been taken from Semitic sources. Plato's story of the ring of Gyges, that made the bearer invisible, is well known. Solomon had a ring that gave him command over the genii. It was made of copper and iron, and had the sacred name of the deity engraved on it. Solomon sealed his orders to the refractory genii with the iron part, those to the good genii were sealed with the copper portion. Once when Solomon was bathing, and had taken the ring from his finger, it was stolen by a wicked genie. Solomon was so concerned about the loss that he was unable to attend to affairs of state. It was afterwards recovered from the stomach of a fish that was caught for the king's table.

Petrarch relates that Charlemagne became infatuated with a woman of low degree to such an extent that he neglected the affairs of state, and even the care of his person. She fell ill and died, but her death did not break the charm; Charlemagne would not allow her corpse to be buried. One day Archbishop Turpin examined the body, and found a ring in her mouth, which he took possession of; Charlemagne then came under the influence of the Archbishop. The prelate, tired of the king's special attentions, and afraid that the ring might fall into the hands of some unworthy person, so he threw it into a lake near the town. From that time Charlemagne refused to quit Aix-la-Chapelle. He built a palace and a monastery there, and in his will directed his successors to be crowned at Aix.—Epistole familiares, Lib. I, Cap. 3.

p. 35, l. 33. Jean d'Arras was evidently of the opinion of Rabelais, that 'Mienix est de ris que de larmes escrire,
   Pour ce que rire est le propre de l'homme.'

p. 42, l. 4. Note that the Earl is unable to give land without the consent of his barons.

p. 42, l. 19. Brunet reads 'Montiers'; the Ronen edition has 'l'abbaye demonstiers.'

p. 45, l. 13. There is an 'onde limpide' near the Forest of Coulom-
byers, known as the ‘Fontaine-des-Fées.—Annales de la Société Royal Académique de Nantes, 1831, p. 405.

p. 48, l. 26. The power of love is a favourite theme of John of Arras. See 1:2, 135, 164, &c. The book was written for the amusement of the Duchess of Bar. This may account for the elaborate treatment of love affairs, dress, &c., in the book.


‘With wine of Angoy, and als of Rochel tho,
Which would eschewe the brainses appetite,
Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,
Which iawne [yellow] colour applied noght vnto;
Clarre Romain, with doucet Ypocras
Thorught al the hal rymnyge bye and bas.
Wine of Tourisnz, and also of Digon,
Wine of Aucerre, of seint Jongon also;
Wyne of Seint Johan of Augely good won,
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;
Wine of Estables, of Uiart also;
After thain cam the wyne,
Wine of Seint Pursain, and of Ris hys brood.
Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise,
The noul osey of Dingenon.’

p. 55, l. 3. The magic ring that Melusine gave Raymondin has made him invincible. See p. 33.

p. 59, l. 9. The custom of the newly-wedded couple making presents to the wedding guests, instead of receiving them, resembles what takes place in India in our time, where the parents of the bride make gifts to those who attend the marriage ceremony.

p. 63, l. 3. Fr. reads: ‘Et avec tout ce il y a forte braies enfaillées de mesmes la roche,’

p. 64, l. 13. There are a number of suggested etymologies of the name Melusine, none of them satisfactory.

Jean Bouchet says it is a combination of Melle and Lusignan. She was lady of Melle, and her husband was lord of Lusignan. Bouchet says that this was the accepted etymology in his time (16th century). Baron Dupin adopts this etymology. It appears, however, that women did not add to their name the name of their husband’s seignory, nor was it usual for women to bear the name of their own manors.

Bouchet thought the tail signified that Melusine was an adulteress. N. Chorier imagined that it symbolized her prudence!

Salverte says that the name is a combination of Mere and Lusignan. He makes its significance to be ‘Mother of the Lusignans.’ The name is spelt Merlusine by Brantôme, and the popular pronunciation is Merlusine. Grimm derives it from Meri meni, a syren, or sceylla.

Littre derives it from Melus, a Celtic word meaning agreeable.

Bullet says it is made up of Me = half, llyswonen (pronounced lusen) = serpent: the name thus signifies half serpent.

A writer in the Nouvelle Biographie Générale, thinks that Melusine is an Anagram of Leusignem. I have not observed any case in which the family name is spelt in this manner, and I am not aware that the fashion of Anagram-making was much practiced in the 14th century.
M. de Freminville, in *Antiq. de la Bretagne, Côtes du-Nord*, p. 23, derives Melusine from morulœsin = vapour or sea fog.

In Quaritch's catalogue, 1887 (vol. I, p. 90) it is stated that the name comes from a Breton word signifying 'the woman with a tail,' mer' hlistek, which the writer believes was at one time pronounced something like Merlusse.

Massurat surmises that Melusine was a lady who used a seal engraved with a syren, and from that was at last imagined to be a mermaid herself.

p. 65, l. 3. The following list of Melusine's children shows the blemishes that each of them bore:

1. Urian : A broad face, ears like the handles of a vannus, and one eye red and the other blue.
2. Odon : One ear greater, without comparison, than the other.
3. Guion : One eye higher than the other.
4. Anthony: Had on the cheek a lion's foot (grif de lyon).
5. Regnald: Had only one eye.
6. Geoffray: Had a great tooth, which protruded more than an inch out of his mouth.
7. Froimond: Had a mole (tache vulne) or tuft of hair on his nose.
8. Horrible: Had three eyes—one in his forehead.
9. Raymond: Blemish not recorded.
10. Theodoryk: Blemish not recorded.

p. 65, l. 3. 'handlyng of a fan' translates 'manilles d'ung van.'

p. 65, l. 11. Fr. reads: 'Guerende et Penicense.'

p. 66, l. 17. Fr.: 'mal enfermé.'

p. 65, l. 12. Hugues IV. of Lusignan had a dispute with Joscelin, lord of Parthenay, about some lands that the latter had usurped. The dispute descended to the heirs of Joscelin. Hugues appealed to his suzerain William, Count of Poitiers. The count sided with the lord of Parthenay, and Hugues' stronghold, the Castle of Lusignan, was burnt down. *B. Le- doin in La Gatine.*

The Lusignans possessed the domain of Porhoët, in Brittany, from the 15th century. Phillipe le Bel took it from Guy, Count of Marche and Angoulême, in the 14th century.

Perhaps these historical events may have suggested the story in the romance.

p. 79, l. 24. 'the cranes flighing' translates 'les grues en vollant.'

The cranes are said to be the earliest birds to migrate.

'E come i gru van cantando lor lai,
Facendo in aere di se lunga riga.'

*Dante, Inferno, Canto V.*

p. 84, l. 15. The Rouen Fr. ed.: 'Raimondin le frappa de la lance au coste.'

p. 91, l. 30. There is an omission here in the translation. The French text reads: 'Il avoit entendu par aulcuns des servlles d'icelluy chastelain que ilz accendoient gens à qui ilz ne vouloient point de bien.'—Brunet's ed., p. 104.

p. 92, l. 15. Fr. reads: 'que ilz ne nous trouvent à descovert.'

p. 94, l. 24. 'high' seems to be a mistake for 'his.' 'traist l'espee' is the French reading.

p. 97, l. 28. There is a legend current that the convent of the Trini-
ta'ires of Sarzeau was founded by Melusine. John III., Duke of Brittany, founded it in 1341, forty-six years before John of Arras wrote this account of its origin. Jehan de la Kaye, in Memoires et recherches (1581), says that Melusine and Raymondin were buried in this convent.

p. 104, l. 10. Such excrescences apparently do appear, as can be seen from the following statement, made by a man of recognized accuracy of observation:—

‘On the 29th [of Feb. 1830], being requested by some friends of the town, I visited a wonderful man there. It appears that nature, deviating from the usual course, gave this man a small trunk, like an elephant, on the right side of his face, beginning from the forehead to his chin. With his left eye only could he see, the other being covered with this superfluous part of the body. He was a young man of about twenty, sound in mind, as he gave rational answers to the several questions I put to him in the Sindhi language.’—Autobiography of Lutfullah, p. 311, edited by E. B. Eastwick, 1858.

p. 112, l. 35. This advice to kings reads as if it had been specially written for the Duke of Berry’s edification.

p. 116, l. 23. The Knights Hospitallers of St. John captured Rhodes after a siege of three years, in 1309, and made the island their headquarters.

p. 117, l. 32. In the Apocryphal Book, known as the Gospel of Nicodemus, the names of the two thieves are given as Dimas and Gestas. In the ‘Narration of Joseph of Arimathea’ it is related that Demas was born in Galilee. He was an innkeeper, and was kind to the poor. He followed the example of Tobias in secretly burying those who died in poverty. He robbed Jews, even in Jerusalem. He plundered the daughter of Caiaphas. It was for this crime that he suffered death.

p. 120, l. 2. Fr. reads: ‘Urian n’avait mie encore, à compter les gens du maistre de Rodes, plus de quatre mille combatans.’

p. 128, l. 25. Alexander is said to have had 30,000 foot soldiers and 4,500 horsemen when he crossed the Hellespont. (Plutarch.)

p. 136, l. 26. ‘he cast at hym the dart [with great] yre.’ The Fr. ‘par grant’ is omitted by mistake.

p. 141, l. 21. Fr. text reads: ‘Adonques le maistre de Rhodes et les capitaines de Lymasson se mirent tous ensamble.’

p. 142, l. 9. The ‘paneys,’ according to Viollet-le-Duc, were large oval or square shields, chiefly carried by the crossbowmen. They did not come into use until the fourteenth century.

p. 155, l. 20. For the true version of the story of how Cyprus passed into the hands of Guy of Lusignan (not Urian, as the Romance says), see the Introduction. The Itinerary of Richard Cœur de Lion, by Vinsauf, is the authority relied on.

p. 159, l. 24. The ‘for to wete & know, for to here & know,’ is a double translation of the French phrase, ‘pour aller sçavoir.’

p. 159, l. 22. ‘fortres’ is plural here and on p. 160, l. 6.

p. 169, l. 13. ‘they . . . . ancre’ translates ‘ilz desancrèrent.’

p. 169, l. 32. ‘them,’ i. e. their ships.

p. 171, l. 1. See page 129, et seq.

p. 176, foot of page. In John Stow’s Survey of London (W. J. Thom’s ed., 1842, p. 119), the cost of writing out the works of D. Nicholas de
Lira in two volumes is given at 100 marks = £66 13s. 4d. W. Stevenson, in his *Life of William Caxton* (p. 12), says that this sum most likely included the cost of the illuminations. The volumes may have been sumptuously bound, in which case comparatively little would be left for the copyist's work.

It is quite probable that the 17/8, written on the margin of the Melusine MS., may be a memorandum having no relation to the copyist's pay.

p. 178, l. 10. Modern economists would not approve of this summary way of treating forestallers. Adam Smith believed that the dread of witches and of forestallers were on a par.

p. 179, l. 28. The Fr. ver. has the following sentences after 'armenye':—'Et se il vous samble qu'elle n'en soit diigne, si luy aidez à assener à quelque noble homme qui bien sache le pays gouverner et deffendre des enemis de Jhesucrist. Or y vueillez pourvoir de remède convenable car à tout dire, se il vous plait, en la fin je vous fai mon heritier du royaume d'Armanie; mais pour l'amour de Dieu prenez en garde et ayez pitié de mon pove enfant, qui est orpheline desolée de tout conseil et de tout confort, se vous lui faillez.' The nine succeeding lines of the English version, 28 to 36, are not represented in the French version published by Brunet.

p. 180, l. 8. After Guyon's address the Armenian lords reply in the French version: 'nostre seigneur le vous vueille meriter, qui vous doinct bonne vie et longue.'

p. 180, l. 31. The following paragraph is omitted in the English version:

'En ceste partie nous dist l'histoire que ceux de Caliz furent molt joyeux quant ilz virent approcher la navire, car ja seavoient les nouvelles que leur seigneur venoit, pour ce que les barons qui estoient aliez en Chipre pour porter les lettres dont je vous ay fait mention par avant, leur avoient mandé toute la verité, afin de ordonner et pourvoir de le recepvoir honoramment; et y estoient tous les haultz barons du pays et les dames et damoisaelles venues pour le festoier et honnourer. A celle heure la pucelle Florie estoit à la maistresse tour, qui regretoy molt la mort de son père, et si avoir molt grant paour que le roy Urian ne le voulist pas accorder à son frère, et estoit une cause qui molt luy angoissoit sa douleur. Mais adoncques une damoiselle luy vint dire en ceste maniere: Madamoiselle, on dist que ceux qui estoient aliez en Chipre arriveront bien brief au port. De ces nouvelles fut Florie molt joyeuse, et vint à la fenestre, et regarde en la mer, et vit navires, galées, et autres grans vaisseaux qui arrivoient au port, et oyt trompettes sonner, et plusieurs aultres instruments de divers sons. Adone fut la pucelle monlit lie, et vinrent les barons du pays au port, et recepoient molt honoramment Guion et sa compaignie, et le menèrent à mont vers la pucelle, laquelle luy vint à l'encontre de luy. Et Guion la salua molt honoramment en ceste maniere: Ma damoisselle, comment a-il esté à vostre personne depuis que me partis d'icy? Et elle luy respondist molt annoncusement et dist: Sire, il ne peut estre gaires bien, car monseigneur mon pere est nouvellement trespassé de ce mortel monde, dont je prie à nostre Seigneur Jhesucrist, par sa saincte grace et misericorde, qui luy face vray pardon à l'ame, et à tous aultres; mais, sire, comme pove orpheline je vous remercie et gracie tant humblement comme je puys des vaisseaux que vous m'envoistastes, et aussi de la grant richesse et avoir qui estoit dedans.'
p. 183, l. 25. Afterwards (p. 217) called Metydece.

p. 190, l. 11. This passage should be compared with that beginning on page 110, where Melusine gives parting advice to her two elder children, Urian and Guion.

p. 190, l. 34. Passages like this (see also p. 112) show that John of Arras pleaded for a more humane treatment of conquered provinces. He shows that even from selfish considerations a ruler should treat his people well (p. 112). It is true he does not directly condemn the marauding expeditions, which were the curse of the Middle Ages; but it should be noted that the sons of his heroine were always called to assist the oppressed. They never started out as mere plunderers. John of Arras was a forerunner of Rabelais in his condemnation of the barbarities of feudal warfare. He resembled Rabelais in character. It required considerable boldness for an officer of the Duke of Berry—one of the most rapacious plunderers of France—to make a stand against injustice.

p. 192, l. 20. Did the author of Melusine intend Anthony and Reginald’s system of warfare to be an example to be followed by the Duke of Berry?

p. 202, l. 33. Fr. reads: ‘le jeta si roidement encontre la terre que peu faillist que il ne lui crevast son cœur ou son ventre.’

p. 211, l. 2. It is interesting to note that all the kings in the Romance are constitutional kings. They are obliged to consult their barons before they enter into treaties or alienate land. (See pages 42, 211, 263.)

p. 214, l. 18. ‘pruuy meyne,—a private or select company or following.

p. 222, l. 29. Fr. reads: ‘paez pour huyt moys.’

p. 228, l. 13. ‘Catell & goodes’ translates ‘biens.’

p. 229, l. 14, there is an omission after ‘city.’ The Fr. text reads: ‘mais le roy Zelodus avoit fait armer ses gens et faisoit fort assaullir la cite, car grand desir avoit de la prendre, et ceulx de dedens se defendoroient lachement, et bien le appercevoient les Sarrazins; et pour ce ilz assailloient tant plus vigoureusement. Et fut la besoigne mal allée quant l’ancien chevalier vint qui bien apperceut la besoigne et la faible deffense de ceulx de dedens’ (Brunet’s ed., p. 254). The Fr. text then continues: ‘A doncques acheon l’assault,’ &c., as in the English version.

p. 233, l. 31. ‘the moost vytpure’ translates ‘pour plus vituperer.’

p. 246, l. 6. Fr. ‘Thierry.’

p. 246, l. 12. Fr. ‘ung chevalier faye au mauvais esperit.’

p. 246, l. 13. The belief in Incubi and Succubi (demons who consort with men and women and engender children) was current in the time of John of Arras, and for long after. The fathers of the Church taught the doctrine, as can be seen from Augustine: ‘It is so general a report, & so many auere it either from their owne tryall or from others, that are of indubitable honesty & credit, that the Sylvans and Fawnes, commonly called Incubi, hane often injure women, desiring & acting carnally with them: and that certaine diells whom the Frenchmen [Gauls] call Dusies, do continually practise this vnicleannesse, & tempt others to it; which is affirmed by such persons & with such confidence that it were impudence to deny it.—City of God, Bk. XV, Cap. XXIII, ed. 1620, translated by J. H.

Lodovico Vives, in commenting upon this passage, says: ‘There are a people at this day that glory that their descent is from the devils, who
visited women in the guise of men, and men in the guise of women. This in my conceit is viler than to draw a man's pedigree from pirates, thieves, or famous bullies, as many do. The Egyptians say that the devils can only accompany carnally with women and not with men.'

The following quotation from Michael Psellus, a Byzantine savant of the eleventh century, explains the mediaeval ideas on this subject. The text is from a translation by Pierre Morean Touranio, published in 1576:

'Or me suis-ie trouvé quelque-fois avec vn moine, en la Cherronese de Mesopotamie, lequel apres auroir esté spectateur & coûtrurier des phâtônes diaboliques, autant ou plus expert en cela, que ne l'autre, depuis il les a mesprizez & abioyez, comme vains & frivoles, & en ayant fait amende honorable, s'est retiré au gyron de l'Eglise, & a fait professió de nostre foys seule vraie, & Catholique: laquelle il a soignesemt appris de moy. Ce moine done me dit alors & declara plusieurs choses absurdes & diaboliques. Et de fait, m'estant quelque-fois enquis de luy, s'il y a quelques diables patibles: ouy vraeyment, dit-il, comme on dit aussi, qu'aucuns d'iceux iettent semence, & engendrent d'icelle des verms. Si est-ce chose incroyable, luy dis-ye lors, que les diables ayent aucun excremés, ny membres spermatiques, ny vitaux. Vray est, respondit-il, qu'ils n'ont tels, membres, si est-ce toutefois qu'ils iettent hors ie ne seay quel excrement & superfluité, croyez hardiment ce que ie vous en dis. Dea, luy dis-ye lors, il y auront danger qu'ils fussent alimentez & nourir de mesme nous. Ils sont nouriz, respondit frere Marc, les vns d'inspiration, comme l'esprit qui est aux arteres & nerfs, les autres d'humidité: mais non par la bonche, comme nous, ains comme esponges & huistres attiennent à soy l'humidité adiacente exterieurement. Puis iettent hors ceste latente & secrete semence. A quoy ils ne sont tous subjets, ains seulement les diables qui sont enclins à quelque matière, seauoir est, ou celuy qui haït la lumiere, le tenebreux, l'aquatique, & tous sonbsterrains.'—Psellus, De l'energie ou operation des diables (leaf 19 b, et seq.), ed. 1576.

In Ambroise Paré's collection (died 1590), livre xix, ch. 30, we read:

'Or quant à moy ie croy que ceste pretendue colhabitation est imaginaire procedante d'une impression illusoire de Satan . . . car à l'execution de cet acte, la chair et le sang sont requis, ce que les esprits n'ont pas.'

Fuller accounts of the ancient opinions on Incubi and Succubi will be found in John Wierus, De Prestigiis demonum, 1569 and 1579, and in Jean Bodin's Refutation of Wierus, 1593.

Modern thought ascribes the belief in Incubi & Succubi to Dreams, see E. B. Tylor: 'From dreams are avowedly formed the notions of incubi and succubi, those nocturnal demons who consort with women and men in their sleep. From the apparent distinctness of their evidence these beings are of course well known in savage demonology, and in connection with them there already arises among uncultured races the idea that children may be engendered between spirits and human mothers. (See Martin, Mariner's Tonga Islands.) For an ancient example of the general belief in this class of demons, no better could be chosen than that of the early Assyrians, whose name for a succubus, "lili," evidently gave rise to the Rabbinical tale of Adam's demon wife Lilith. (See Lenormant, La magie chez les Chaldéens.) The literature of mediaeval sorcery abounds in mentions of this belief, of which the absurd pseudo-philosophical side comes well into view in the chapter of Delrio (Lib. II, questo 15): "An sint unquam daemones incubi et succubae, et an ex tali congressu proles nasci quest?" But its serious side is shown by the accusation of consort-
of Innocent VIII., which brought judicial torture and death upon so many thousands of wretched so-called witches. (See Roskoff, Geschichte des Teufels.) It further throws light on demonology, that the frightful spectres seen in such affections as delirium tremens have of course been interpreted as real demons.'


p. 254, l. 16. "concernnyng" here means "compared with." Fr. phrase is "envers la puissance."

p. 273, l. 31. Jaffa changed hands several times in the 4th Crusade, 1196.

p. 279, l. 34. "ye shal not haue them for so good chep," i.e. "You will not overcome them as easily as you think." Fr. reads: "Vous n’aurez pas si bon marché."

p. 281, l. 33. Fr. "tout le conert."

p. 282, l. 18. Fr. "tout conertement."

p. 287, l. 11: "Si cum li cerfs s’en vait devant les chiens, Devant Rollant si s’en furent Païen."

La Chanson de Roland, ll. 1874-5.

p. 290, l. 7. "cours" translates "se recûrent." "There reforde the batayll [et souffirrent cristiens mout grant affaire], and with that cours [retires] the cristen," &c.

p. 291, l. 3. "saraysns" in Fr. text is "Turcs."

p. 295, l. 9, page 32.

p. 296, l. 6. "esperit fae."

p. 297, l. 5. "quaque à harenc" = a herring barrel.

p. 308, l. 3. "ung flayal de plomp à trois chainnes." The flail was rarely used in France. The MSS. of the 12th and 14th centuries show it very seldom (Viollet-le-Duc).

p. 300, l. 19. The date of the ravaging of the Abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232.


p. 314, l. 26. "Si quelqu’un aussi se fondit sur la non vérissimilitude de tant d’aventures, enchantements, de la flûte d’un roi Oberon, tant de somptueux palais soudainement se perdant et évanouissant, et du cheval de Pacolat, qui est encore plus en ça. d’une Mélusine, de Merlin : je lui répondrai que le christianisme étant pour lors bien peu avancé aux contrées de par deça, le diable avait beau jen à faire ses besognes, essayant, en tant qu’est en lui, nous empêcher et divertir du vrai service de Dieu, par ses moqueries et illusions : et, gagnant toujours pays, allant de pied en pied, a si bien fait cet esprit calomniateur, que d’etendre, en ce qu’il a pu, le nom de notre Seigneur Jésus-Christ, et icelui obscurcir et cacher aux hommes."—Contes d’Entrapel, by Noël du Fail, 1548.

p. 315, l. 2. The theory that anger is the work of demons is hinted at by the Byzantine Psellus. This writer declares that there are six varieties of demons: Leliiurn. or fiery, haunting the upper atmosphere, Aërial the lower atmosphere, Earthly, Aqueous, Subterranean, and Lucifugus, the lowest class of all. The aërial and earthy enter into the soul of man, and urge him to all kinds of lawless thoughts and deeds. If a Lucifugus obtain an entrance into man it makes him ungovernable. The
Lucifugus is devoid of intellect, is ruled by whim, and is regardless of reproof. The possessed person can only be saved by divine assistance.

There is an old saying: 'via furor brevis est.'

p. 318, l. 12. 'Vernon'; Fr. 'Warnont.'

p. 318, l. 23. French text adds: 'car certainemment il destruiroit tout ce que j'ai edifie, ne jamais guerres ne fauldroient au pays de Poctou ne Guienne.'

p. 310, l. 27:

'nessum maggior dolore,
Che ricordarsi del tempo felice
Nella miseria.'—Dante, Inferno, Canto V.

p. 321, l. 10. There is a legend that Melusine flew to the caves of Sassenage in Dauphiny, natural hollows in the mountain which lie at the back of Grenoble, and made her abode there. N. Chorier, in his Histoire Générale de Dauphiné, describes these caverns: 'Les grotte de Sassenage ne font pas moins digne d'estre contemplée. L'îne est d'în grande incroyable, & elle gette de l'hîreur dans les ames les plus fermes. En l'antre ces cüves si célèbres, & dans la troisième est vne table de pierre, que l'on appelle communément la table de Melusine. C'est l'opinîon d'vn grand personnage que les nymphes y estoient reverèdes autrefois d'vn culte particulier.' 'Estienne Barlet fait passer pour vne verité ce qu'il raconte d'în autre. Il dit qu'apres que l'on y est entré par vn long & difficile chemin, on y voit distinctement des choses estranges. Vn roy y paroit assis dans vn trône, la couronne à la teste & des thresors inûmis à ses pieds. Il adjûte que l'on croit que les ûes, ou ces nymphes que les Grecs nomment les Oreades, y ont habité, & qu'ayant eu longtemps de la peine à le croire, il en a esté à fin persuadé. Cette caverne n'est pas fort éloignée de Montclus, mais ce que l'on en dit l'est beaucoup de la vérité.'—Lib. 1, Cap X.

p. 336, l. 8. Montserrat (mons serratus) rises abruptly from the plain of Catalonia. The ridge of peaks makes it look from a distance like an enormous saw. There are a number of natural caverns in the rock. A monastery was founded at Montserrat in the tenth century. The legend tells that one evening the shepherds of Oíæa heard celestial music as they tended their sheep. While they listened they saw a bright light among the rocks. The Bishop of Manresa hearing of their vision, resolved to ascend the mountain. He found there an image of the Virgin, made of black wood. It was recognized as the statue that had been sculptured by St. Luke, and brought to Spain by St. Peter. He erected a chapel near where he found the image. A few years afterwards the Count of Barcelona built a convent on the spot, and appointed his daughter Abbess. Later the building passed into the hands of the Benedictines. The Virgin's image worked miracles, and an immense number of pilgrims were drawn to the shrine. The ascent to the chapel was very difficult, and it was regarded as a very meritorious task. The kings of Aragon, Castile, and Navarre enriched the foundation. New buildings were added from time to time. At the wars at the end of last century the Spaniards turned the monastery into a fortress. The French captured it, and when they blew up the fortifications much damage was done to ancient portions of the buildings.

The hermitages are now in ruins, and the ascent to them is very difficult. They were all built on the same plan. Each had an ante-chamber, a cell with a recess, a study, a kitchen, and a plot of garden with a chapel. The hermits took a vow to die on the mountain. They followed an austere rule, and lived on vegetables and a little salt fish.
Their only amusement was carving little wooden crosses for the pilgrims who visited their cells.

It was at Montserrat, in the Church of the Virgin, that Ignatius Loyola vowed constant obedience to God and the Church, on the Vigil of the Annunciation, 1522.—*Visite au Montserrat*, by G. de Lavigne.

p. 337, l. 9. Fr. 'Culbaton.' The village of Collbató is the starting-point now-a-days for Montserrat.

p. 340, l. 8. Geoffray visited Pope Gregory IX. in 1233. Before he left France he made restitution to some of those he had wronged, as the letter dated 1232, still extant, proves: 'To all who shall see these letters, Geoffroi de Leziniem, Vicomte of Châtellerault, lord of Volvent and Mayrevent, salut éternel.

'You know that I am about to journey to the court of Rome, to put an end to my differences with the church of Maillezais. I wished to satisfy to the best of my ability, before my departure, all who have claims against me, especially such as are in holy orders.

'Geoffroi, Abbot of Absie, having heard of my will, has demanded restitution for damages done, and losses and injuries that I and my father have caused to the Abbey of Absie.

'I have learnt, from the testimony of men worthy of belief, that these claims are just; and for the salvation of my soul, and of my father's soul, I have satisfied the said abbot, 1232.'—From Thibaudeau's *Histoire de Poitou*.

p. 368, l. 18. Coudrette's versification of the Romance carries the fortunes of the Armenian kings to Leo VI., the last of the line, who died at Paris in 1393. This king was driven from his throne by the successful arms of the Egyptians. He was taken prisoner, and obtained his release through the good offices of John of Castile. Leo VI. visited Spain, where he was received as a champion of the Christian faith, and the King of Castile allowed him a pension of 150,000 maravedis. He afterwards travelled to France, where he was kindly received by Charles VI. A pension of 6,000 francs was granted to him there. Leo came over to England, where his reception was as warm as in Spain and Portugal. He obtained an English pension in addition to those from Spain and France. Leo VI. was a far-sighted man. He wanted to bring about a permanent peace between France and England, and he told the rulers of both countries that the only way that the Mahomedan arms could be checked in the East was by the aid of a united West. Unfortunately, his wise policy was rejected, and the rivalries of the kings of Christendom lost some of the fairest lands of Europe to the followers of Mahomet. Leo VI. told the King of France that Amurath aimed at being crowned at Rome, and that he had sent an expedition out with that purpose, which was annihilated by a stratagem of the King of Hungary.

'Thay lost ther lande and all ther honour,
Inclynyng and conyng vnto mischaunce,
On of thys kynge cam to Fraunce pat houre,
So fro hermeny chaced into France.
Full long the kynge ther gaf hym sustinance,
At Parys die as happned the cas,
At the Celestines entered he was.'—l. 5685.

After the death (29th Nov. 1393) of Leo VI. the title of King of Armenia was assumed by James I. of Cyprus. Neither James I. nor any of his successors ever reconquered the country.

MELUSINE.
p. 370, l. 5. Yuon, Yvain, Owen, or Evan of Wales claimed to be the rightful heir of the kingdom of Wales, and the French king treated him as such. Yuon was a favourite of John the Good, King of France, and took a part along with the French in the battle of Poitiers. When peace was made between England and France, Yuon went to Lombardy, where he remained until the war was renewed. In the reign of Charles V, he held a number of commands. He led an expedition of Welsh knights against Guernsey. His hope was that he would be able to reconquer Wales. Charles V. assisted him with money and supplies, but he was unable to land in Wales. He took part in the expedition of Bertand du Guesclin in Spain. On his return to France he won some victories over the English. Froissart says that he was greatly hated in England on account of his claims to the Welsh crown, and for his treatment of his English prisoners, some of whom he would not allow to be ransomed. Yuon fell a victim to treason. He took into his service a James Lambe, a knight who represented himself to be a Welsh exile. He appointed this man his chamberlain. When Yuon was before Mortagne (1378), directing the siege against the English garrison, he was assassinated by James Lambe, who fled to the English camp, where he received protection. Yuon was buried at the church of St. Leger with great pomp.
The love of ladies causeth peyne & traueyll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses, 56.
Old synne reneweth shame, 79.
Such weneth to avenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wel fol is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd wenyng to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
A flyes of a yere is more prouffytable than a flyes that is shorne twyes or thryes a yere, 112.
In long treatee lyeth sometyme grete falshed, 113.
Wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the fether, 113.
One grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge, than doth a sacke fult of whete, 128.
Victorye also lyeth not in grette multitude of peulpe, but in good rule & ordynaunce, 128.
Goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulnte, 138.
All is not yet lost that lyeth in parell, 147.
Who lerneth not his crafte in his yongthe, with grete peyne & hard it shal be for him to be a good werkeman in his old age, 193.
That God doth, he done anone, 203.
Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought & forged, 211.
Of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, when nedes muste one be had, 237.
Bettre is to haue more of prouffyt & lasse honour, 238.
A lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynd, 247.
That the fol leynketh ofyymes cometh to foly, 255.
The fol lepreth & god dysposeth, 265.
He that menaceth is sometyme in grete fer & drede hymself, & afteward ouerthrawen, 279.
Bettre it is to flee, than to abyde a folyssh enterpyse, 288.
Thing neuer bygonne hath neuer ende, 304.
In euery thing most be bygynnynge tofore the ende cometh, 304.
He that gyneth the first strokes dooth not the batayff, but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect, 368.
GLOSSARY.


Abhomyned, page 311, abominated.
aborde, 71, waited.
absteyn, 16, abstain.
abused, 7, beguiled.
abysses, 5, abysses.
acounte, 356, account.
acountaunce, 71, acquaintance.
acoynte, 190, become familiar; acoynted, 205.
adiouste, 16, adjust.
admounested, 228, warned; admounestyng, 287.
adrecyd, 226, harm; adommaged, 182.
aduys, 71 (aria), opinion.
aduyronned, 123, surrounded.
affectedly, 148 (lumbelement), earnestly.
affettuously, 159, affectionately.
affyance, 324 (fiancee), assurance, trust.
affyns, 89 (proesmes), near relatives.
afrayenge, 10, fearing.
afrayed, 28, frightened.
agree, 259, accept.
aigre, 298, harsh.
albaster, 328, alabaster.
alz, 218, allies; alayed, 92.
algaf, 300, although (lit. al if).
allegeaunce, 335, relief.
alnese, 105; alnesses, 321, charity.
alowed, 200, lowered.
allegoodre, 41, altogether.
ambaxade, 183, embassy.
amerous, 56, amorous.
amongis, 27, amongst.
amyable, 275, friendly.
an, 90, one.
ancre, 114, anchors.
anenst, 21, against.
ansuerde, 10, answered.
ante, 367, aunt.
antecessours, 330 (antecesseurs), predecessors.
aourned, 51, 53 (aourne); attired.
aparteyned, 20, belonged.
apas, 27, space.
apayed, 111, 192, pleased.
appareyllled, 118, made ready.
appayrshing, 369, appearing.
appercyeynd, 250, 324, observed.
appert, 125, expert.
appertly, 131, promptly (Cot.).
appertyste, 83, deeds.
appiere, 15; appyeren, 4, appear.
arblaster, 289, men who worked
the arblastes, machines for throwing
missiles.
arhegaye, 226 (archegaice), dart.
arauant, 142, burning.
aruged, 150 (argue), perplexed.
arrgarde, 132, rearguard.
arsouns, 286, saddle-bows.
aspere, 145, fierce.
asperey, 132, fiercely.
asppe, 117, spy.
aspyracion, 315, respiration.
asseyed, 171, attested.
asseyed, 12, infatuated.
assures, 171, boldest.
astonode, 202, astonished.
stomy, 20, astronomy.
GLOSSARY.

astronomyens, 323, astronomers.
asuryd, 156 (fiancé), betrothed.
auantgarde, 174, vanguard.
auantyngce, 11, boasting.
auctoures, 3, authors.
auncyent, 4, ancient.
aunlytyre, 296, adultery.
awondred, 50, wondered.
awter, 344, alter.
axe, 41, ask.
axe, 299, attack of fever.
ayen, 180, again.
Bake, 9, back.
bare, 351, bore.
barrers, 124; barreres, 63 (braies), defences.
bassade, 308, embassy.
bassecourt, 300, inner court of a castle.
basyn, 8, mug.
basynets, 123, l'armets, men, defended.
batayll, 289, battalion.
batayllons, 246, (bataillereux), given to fighting.
beaulte, 7, beauty.
beed, 148, bed.
begonne, 12, begun.
beliauf, 17, use.
beheld, 111, beheld.
beryng, 8, bearing.
bigynne, 17, biggin.
billé, 18, bylled, 6, built.
bode, 18, bid.
bourgeys, 206; burgeys, 151, burghers.
branche, 23, branch.
braunche, 23, branch.
braunysshed, 145, brandished.
brede, 41, breadth.
breue, 26, cleave.
brenne, 17; brene, 4; breynyng, 184, to burn.
brigh, 266, bright.
bricke, 21, pierce.
brocht, 130, spurred.
broded, 53; browded, 81, embroidered.
bruled, 234, burnt.
bruyt, 251, noise.

brygandyners, 128, men wearing brigandines, canvas coats covered with iron plates or iron rings.
buffet, 303, blow.
busshe, 284, ambush.
butyn, 146, booty.
bycomme, 4, gone to.
bye, 39, buy.
bygoten, 6, begotten.
bynethe, 22, beneath.

Caas, 128, cause.
candelstykke, 17, candlesticks.
carrykes, 109, cargo ships.
caruell, 117, a light ship.
cas, 11, case.
castel, 15, castle.
castellayne, 92, castellan.
catholic, 215, catholic.
cause, 89, originator.
cepter, 179, coper.
cerched, 330, searched.
certyfyen, 3, to certify.
cesse, 155, cease.
chauffed, 22, excited, vexed.
champaynes, 100, open fields.
chanoyne, 40, canon.
chappen, 193, shapen.
charyte, 12, charity.
chasse, 20, chace.
chaunfreyn, 84, (gauffrain d'acier), the headpiece of a barbed horse (Halliwell).
chayere, 82, chair.
cheried, 98, treated.
chenaunce, 155, (chevance), achievement.
chenysanche, 264, promise.
cheyned, 177, chained.
childed, 104, gave birth to.
chirch, chirche, 36, church.
clene, 142, climb.
clemme, 25, climb.
clepen, 187, called; clepid, 245, named.
clene, 26, cleave.
clos, 118 (clos), enclosure, 267.
camble, 303, club.
cohortacion, 97, company.
cohorte, 97, company.
coler, 53, collar.
collige, 369, collect.
commevyd, 123; commouyd, 154, excited.
Thoughtless, “damp” being equivalent to the O.E. Dan, as: “Dan” Chaucer. *daw folke* may mean “melancholy” fool; see Bradley’s Stratmann’s M. E. Dictionary, under “dan.”

debonnaire, 150, gentle.
decenieryd, 169, ? unfurled their sails.
deez, 356, decease.
dede, 321, caused; dede, 323, deed; dede, 12, did.
deke, 190, divide.
deeling, 111, bearing.
def, 29, deaf.
deffawte, 345, default.
delyt, 333, misdemeanor.
demanded, 20, related.
demeneth, 147, conducted.
demusurably, 132, greatly, immeasurably.
demysed, 87 (*s’en est deffit*), got rid of.
denounced, 188, declared.
departed, 116, divided.
departement, 98, departure.
despyt, 234, contempt.
desray, 123, disorder.
destraytte, 336 (*levellon et le pertuys*), ? district, or territory.
destrier, 81; destrier, 82, horse.
detrenched, 146, hacked.
deuil, 234 (*doeul*); ducyft, 237, mourning.
denuyre, 82, duty.
denysed, 67, told.
denyses, 348, talks.
dey, 15, die.
diches, 88, ditches.
distourned, 55, turned aside.
do, 321; doo, 239; doon, 13, 26, cause to.
dogge, 21, dog.
dolannt, 312, doleful.
doleur, 305, dolor.
dombe, 29, dumb.
dome, 13, doom.
donmaghe, 145 (*dommaige*), harm.
don, 118 (*done*), given.
dongeon, 300, main tower of a castle, donjon.
doubtid, 1, feared.
doubtous, 193, fearful.
doughtir, 11, daughter.

down, 13, down.
dowbed, 18, dubbed.
dresse, 30; dressed, 21, direct, turned.
dressyng, 155 (adressant), addressing.
duc, 6, duke.
duchery, 214, duchy.
dueii, 138; dueyl, 216, mourning.
dysenipare, 215, dethrone.
dysployed, 119, unfurled, displayed.
dysporte, 77, 98, sport; dysported, 304, enjoyed.
dyspylle, 136, pillage.
dyspreyse, 113, contemn.
dyspytous, 29 (desijtuc), angry, spiteful.
dyssymyle, 113, dissimulate.
dystourne, 26 (destourueray), turn away; distourned, 83.

eclie, 17, each.
etfoundred, 286, cut into.
etgaly, 146, equally.
etmonge, 118, among.
etempechement, 279, hindrance.
enipossesse, 99; enpocesse, put in possession.
enprysed, 81, undertaken.
ench, 83, inch.
encheson, 65, motive.
encre, 337; encresse, 32, increase.
enaysiaed, 62, cut.
enlenouyre, 152, endeavour; endenoyred, 157.
endoctryne, 55, instruct.
enfourned, 308, informed.
enharnished, 9, accoutred.
enjurous, 66, injurious.
enlyberte, 99, liberate.
enview, 184, follow.
ensured, 68 (asseuroi), assured.
cutamed, 211, 299, broached.
entayiled, 50, carved.
entende, 1, to give heed.
entendement, 569, understanding.
cent, 91, intent, purpose.
centently, 70, attentively.
enterprenaunt, 122, enterprising.
enterpryse, 12, undertaken.

entremete, 63 (se meslera), intermeddle.
entreteyne, 239, keep up.
enubishing, 138 (enuyre); enun-
ysshed, 147; enunahye, 201, assault.
envertued, 200 (se envertuoit), strengthened.
eny, 16, any.
erable, 99, arable.
erle, 6, earl.
eschiwed, 145, avoided; 170, rescued.
escryed, 77, 115, p.p. of escrien, to call to.
escuse, 258, excuse; 10, excused.
 eslonyd, 133 (se eslonjerent), separated.
espirytuel, 371, spiritual.
espresed, 11, 34 (surpris), overtaken.
esprouued, 224 (esprouveient), tried.
espryed, 77 (espris), smitten.
esyes, 193, spies.
esquyer, 248, squire.
esseye, 192, try.
estimed, 117, estimated.
estraungers, 178, strangers.
estymacion, 260, estimate.
enereche, 320; eneryche, 154, every.
eurychon, 38, every one.
ewrons, 244 (enreux), lucky, happy.
exsacion, 107, excuse.
exeryt, 224, exercised.
exployed, 123 (exploita), worked; 81, fought; 289, acted.
eyled, 299, ailed.

Facion, 225, build, make.
fader, 7, father.
faicte, 13: faitt, 71; faytte, 119; fayt, 312, deed.
falshed, 13; falsed, 315, falsehood; fals, 12.
fan, 65 (Latin vanus), a corn win-
nowing fan or sieve.
fantosme, 311, phantom.
fasted, 44, fastened.
famtesye, 4, 31, fantasy.
fawe, 57 (verb), fail; 196, wrong; 58 (noun), failure.
feith, 24, faith.
fer, 154, 200, fierce, cruel.
feawship, 8, fellowship.
fer, 60, far; ferre, 327.
ferder, 332, further.
ferfourth, 106, widely.
feste, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.
festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
feste, 98, feasted;
fekte, 66, faint.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.

feste, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.
festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
feste, 98, feasted;
fekte, 66, faint.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.

feste, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.
festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
feste, 98, feasted;
fekte, 66, faint.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.

feste, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.
festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
feste, 98, feasted;
fekte, 66, faint.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.

feste, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.
festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
feste, 98, feasted;
fekte, 66, faint.
feynted, 66, faint.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.
festyed, 368 (batu), thralled.

feste, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.

festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.

festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.

festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.

festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.

festyed, 368 (bath), thrashed.

GADRE. 266, gather.
gaf, 19, gave.
galyotte, 167, little galley; galyotte, 118.
gan, 22, began.
garnysons, 133, garrisons.
herberowed, 70, harbour'd.
here, 7, heard.
here, 2, hear.
herke, 317, harken.
herte, 9, hart; her, 39.
heued vp, 24, raised.
here, 146, hour.
heuyer, 35, heavier.
heuyer, 66, heir.
bif, 7, it.
hold, 190, keep.
hooft, 302, whole.
hool, 361, whole.
hoop, 36, hope.
hores, 177, ours.
hors, 10, horse.
hourys son, 300, whore's son.
hourted, 25, p.p. of hurted, to rush against.
hurtelj-d, 95 (hvHa), pushed.
hydouse, 315, hideous.
hyerid, 134, hired.
Iu同业, 76 (hault), aloud; 94, high.
Iu год, 17, carved.
Iu год, 50.
knowleche, 2, knowledge; knowleched, 96.
konne, 108, show.
kychons, 50, kitches.
kymbyng, 297, combing.
kyng, 6, king.
kyne, 90, kin.
kynrede, 24, kindred.
kyst, 78 (jetta), cast.
Langling, 136, longing.
large, 111, liber.
largent, 111, liberal.
lanche, 123, hurl; launchid, 94, rushed.
lawghe, 272; lawhe, 101, laugh.
lawnmentyng, 147, lamenting.
lectuary, 247 (electuaire), electuary.
leder, 39; leeder, 357, leather.
lefte, 286, lifted.
legghe, 99; leghe, 129; leghis (pl.), 194, league.
leghe, 294 (lieue), place.
leghes, 333, legs.
lepe, 10, leap.
les, 22, lest.
leser, 144 (loisir), leisure.
lette, 10, delay; late (imp.) let, 20; letted, 196.
leued, 23, left; leve, 33, leave.
leyued, 135, levied.
leyd, 34, laid.
leyser, 277, leisure.
lcoction, 20, circumlocution.
lodgis, 119, lodgings.
lustis, 320, pleasures.
lyf, 7, life.
lyflod, 108; lynelod, 31 (terrier), landholding.
locution, 20, circumlocution.
lygeauns, 338, allegiance.
lyghtly, 300, quickly.
lykwyse, 15, likewise.
lynee, 6, line.
lyuere, 275, give.
Machecolyd, 63, 103, parapetted,
holes are left in the parapets to pour out molten lead, &c.
machined, 96; machyned, 68, machine'd.
maculate, 299, blemish'd.
mageste, 1, majesty.
magre, 142, maugre.
maister, 1, master.
manded, 73 (manda), sent for.
mandement, 153, 183, mandate, commandment.
manoyr, 100, mansion.
marches, 183, districts.
maronner, 268, mariner.
marriage, 16, marriage.
mate, 147, dull (mat), dejected.
mated, 216.
mayllet, 329, mallet.
maynten, 126, bearing.
medled, 132, mingled.
medowe, 5, meadow.
meney, 9, retinue.
meryte, 15, merit.
meschaunt, 1, wicked.
mesprysed, 79, calumniated.
messe, 54, dish.
mets, 38, meats.
mened, 122; mevyd, 8; menyd, 21 (mu), stirred up.
meure, 160, mature.
meyne, 23, men; meney, 9, 280, company.
moch, 6, much.
mader, 14, mother.
mone shyn, 22, moonshine.
mone, 208, mouth.
morow, 301, morning.
most, 29, must.
mouestre, 185, mister.
mowe, 23, be able.
musarde, 29 (musart from muser, to loiter), dawdler.
mynes, 54, midst.
mynsheshed, 350, lessened; mynshase, 820.
myscheaunce, 366, ill luck, mischance.
mysdon, 261, done amiss.
mysdlyned, 263, mistook.
mysericordous, 313, forgiving.
myserye, 13, misery.
mysknewe, 102, mistook.
myster, 219, need; mystier, 222.

NAT, 2, not.

naturell, 15, natural.

muyye, 109, navy.
muyll, 15, navel.
myle, 81, hoof.
ne, 1, nor.
nedermost, 336, nethermost.
ner, 212, nor.
nevew, 17, nephew.
one, 358, noon.
nones, 63, nonce.
nothe, 39, neither.
nourtryted, 354, nurtured.
nouryces, 103, nurses.
nyouse, 371, tiresome.
nyglite, 179, niece; nyghtes (pl.), 162.

ny, 8, is not.

Obscurte, 22, obscurity.

obshecye, 235, funeral ceremony.
obtempering, 9, submitting.
occysyon, 132, slaughter.
on, 131, 233, in.
ones, 360, once.
oo, 79; oon, 4, one.
oost, 133, host.
ootys, 91, oats.
ordonne, 14, order; ordonned, 79.
orgueylf, 293, haughtiness.
orgueyllous, 249, haughty.
orphane, 147, state of orphanage.
orphelym, 241; orpheneyme, 213; orphanes (pl.), 187, orphan.
ouch, 126; owche, 59, jewel.
ouergrown, 65, full grown.
ouerredde, 1, read over.
ouertredde, 112, overstep.
ought, 134, owes.
oultrage, 196, outrage.
oultrageous, 89, outrageously.
outhre, 95, either.

Paas, 21, pace.
pais, 257, peace.
palfrenier, 52 (carlet), page.
palfroy, 9, palfrey.
palleys, 147, palace.
palyard, 294 (ribault), rascal.
pannes, 4, pans.
panser, 84, a steel plate covering that part of the body between the breast and the waist. Violet-le-Duc, the front part of the cuirass.
pappes, 311, breasts.
parels, 31, perils.
parement, 37, ornament.
parfounde, 167, deepest.
parfytt, 3, perfect.
partrych, 175, partridge.
pas, 136, pass, passage.
patron, 115, master.
patsye, 304, 324, tribute; patiz, 301; patise (verb), 304, tax, exact tribute.
payneys, 142, 359, shield.
payneysed, 107, shielded.
paynemys, 106, pagans.
peas, 12, peace; peased, 100, pacified.
pensefull, 28 (pensif), thoughtful.
perfightly, 22; perfyttly, 5, perfectly.
peris, 39; peers.
perpetred, 76, perpetrated.
perpetred, 76, perpetrated.
peris, 39; peers.
perpetred, 76, perpetrated.
perpetred, 76, perpetrated.
perse, 126 (pers), blue, sky coloured (Cot.).
pert, 105, expert.
pesaunt, 142, weight.
pesaunt, 145, heavy.
pepeled, 118, peopleed.
payne, 12, 322, pain, painstaking.
plaisir, 10, pleasure.
playntes, 12,plaints.
plaisaunce, 14, pleasure.
playsaunt, 7, pleasant.
place, 53 (plaint), story.
place, 319 (plet), play.
pletyng, 33, pr. part. of plete, to plead.
portable, 209, bearable.
portecollys, 253, portcullis.
potence, 117, cross, gibbet.
pouere, 0, poor.
pouldre, 115, powder.
poursieuwe, 155, seek.
poynted, 149, appointed.
prately, 9 (doucement), prettily.
precheament, 196, preaching.
pres, 137 (presse), throng.
pres, 265, 275, ready, now.
preste, 358, priest.
preu, 21 (prens), vaillant.
prayše, 23, praise.
prayseyd, 302, apprised.
prolytour, 310 (proditeur), traitor.
proesse, 15, prowess.
promyssion, 16, promise.
promytte, 15, promise.
pronyttyng, 292, promising.
propice, 168; propyce, 108, propitious.
propis, 261, proposal.
propre, 196, own.
propriete, 153, property.
proyfytte, 3, profit.
proy, 132, prey.
prynat, 40, private.
prynye, 148, six a.m.
pryny, 214, select, intimate.
publyed, 64, published.
pucelle, 179, maid.
punysshe, 13, punish.
purchas, 257, procure.
purfeld, 53; purfylled, 240, trimmed.
purney, 19, purvey.
purveyaunce, 109, provender.
purneyed, 109, purveyed, provided.
pytaunce, 336, allowance.
pyte, 14, pity.

Quarell, 287, a kind of arrow.
Radeur, 329 (radeur), swiftness; 386, violence.
raisonably, 18, reasonably; raisson, 260, justice.
rampyn, 117 (rampia), a light ship.
rannyng, 8, running.
raser, 283, razor.
ranysshed, 7, ravished.
realyd, 145, rallied.
reame, 235; reame, 240, realm.
rebuckyd, 252, struck, attacked.
rechaced, 126, chased back.
reeche, 325, reach.
reconforte, 107, comfort again.
recorded, 263, related.
recontred, 168, encountered.
recule, 124, 231, fall back, retreat.
rede, 2, read.
redenaunce, 4 (reverance), rent, service.
redressid, 193, rearranged.
reforced, 176 (se renforcha), 290 (reforcha), increased, reinforced.
regarde, 209, desert.
regenerated, 140, regenercrated.
regue, 6, reign.
regracy, 23; regreacye, 124, thank.
rejoye, 157, gladden.
relacion, 42, reference.
relessed, 322, relaxed, diminished.
GLOSSARY.

releuyd, 95 (see remit), 103, 131, rose.
relygyon, 181, order.
remenant, 44, remnant.
remewyth, 371, removeth.
remye, 207, 210, restore; remysed, 137.
renommee, 108; renommee, 74 (renommée), renown.
resoynge, 140 (ressongner), to fear (Cot.).
respection, 319, outlook.
restublysshe, 196, establish again.
retche, 14 (challoir), reck, regard.
reuertid, 319, turned.
reueste, 97, endow.
reuested, 40, clothed.
reueytt, 241, revealed.
roche, 248, rock.
or, 22, rose.
roste, 4, roast.
rote, 60, root.
rotyne, 286, rotten.
rught, 67, recked.
route, 136, squadron (Cot.).
royalme, 118; royalme, 245, realm.
rudesse, 28, rudeness.
ryall, 363, royal.
ryalte, 214, royalty.
ryuage, 114 (ripve), shore, landing.
Saaf, 3, except.
sac, 39, sack.
salades, 130, helmets.
saltacyon, 356, safety.
salute, 126, salute; salued, 8; salewed, 10.
Saturday, 15, Saturday.
saudant, 291, sultan.
sauergarde, 17, safeguard.
sauf, 177, except.
sawdees, 148, soldiers' pay.
sawdoyers, 208; sawdyours, 149, soldiers.
sawdan, 105, sultan.
sawte, 229; sawtyng, 291, assault, assaulting.
saynet, 3, saint.
scafoldes, 241 (eschafauds), grandstands.
scaped, 34, escaped.
scarmusshing, 131, skirmishing.
schall, 2, shall.
scouers, 224 (couens), runners.
seaced, 311, ceased.
secale, 39, seal.
seased, 75, seasyd, 358 (saisir, connected with saisir), seized from.
sechyng, 10, seeking.
see, 7, sea.
semblable, 210, similar.
semblaunt, 33, 150, show.
semynge, 7, seeming.
se, 153 (cf. syn) since.
sester, 84; senyster, 137, left.
separed, 302, separated.
seputation, 354, tomb.
sereche, 1, search.
scruytude, 249, feudal dues.
sethen, 163, since.
sette, 17, set, placed; 272 (noun), sect.
seuene nyght, 91, week.
shadd, 22, shed.
shede, 359, sheath.
shelynges, 43, shillings.
shett, 14, shut.
shul, 16, shall.
siege, 133, seat, camp.
siew, 123, follow; siewed, 219; siewyng, 73.
sith, 10, since.
sitte, 23, set.
slee, 24, slay.
slough, 306, slew.
soden, 128, sultan.
soden, 279, boiled.
solas, 306, amusement.
solemply, 323, solemnly.
sommage, 143, baggage.
sommed, 65, summoned.
songe, 7, sang.
onne, 174, sun.
sorow, 13, sorrow.
onne, 360, sun.
sort, 110, spell, sorcery.
souped, 363, supped.
sourdred, 46 (est sour), 50 (sour-dit), sprung forth.
sowle, 41, soul.
sowane, 101, sound.
sparpyelled, 165 (escare), scattered.
spek, 6, 19, speak.
sperhaak, 16; sperohak, sparrow hawk.
speryd, 294, asked.
spoused, 11, espoused.
spyce, 371 (espèce), element.
stablyshed, 17, established.
stalage, 54, stands.
ster, vp, 302 (saillist), jumped up.
stranged of, 48, estranged from.
stake, 234, a pile of wood.
stakered, 82; staker, 353, staggered.
stane, 98, pool.
ster, 185, stir, move.
sterope, 27; sterope, 83, stirrup.
stode, 7, stood.
stoure, 132, 146, tumult, battle.
strange, 183, foreign.
stranger, 10, stranger.
strongest, 53, strongest.
streyle, 118, street.
styd, 94, mounted.
styl, 7, still.
subject, 21, subject.
subsection, 17, subjection.
supposen, 3, suppose.
supposest, 30, intendest.
surprysed, 10, overcome by.
surquyous, 96, arrogant.
suscited, 151 (resusciter), raised from.
sustir, 118, sister.
swette, 7, sweet.
syke, 147, sick.
synewes, 48, becomes silent.
symplenes, 194, ignorance.
syn, 17, 71, 116, since, then.
synester, 258, evil.
synnewes, 138 (mines), veins.
synnar, 313, sinner.
synne, 339, sin.
syth, 26, since.
sythe, 301, scythe.

Tache, 22 (tache), spot; tache, 232, buckle, clasp.
tambours, 110, drums, a kind of tambourine.
targe, 175, shield.
ternyned, 149, terminated.
terryen, 60, landholder.
thaketh, 294 (pris), taketh.
the, 284, they.
thenne, 7, then.
theyely, 359, thiefslike.
thikk, 18, thick.
thoo, 16, those.
thrested, 77, thursted.
throug, 359, threw.
thurst, 7, thirst.
thye, 232, thigh.
tierce, 157, in summer eight of the clock, in winter ten (Cot.).
toar, 96, towards.
tofore, 20; to fore, 178, before.
togidre, 11, together.
toke, 4, took.
top, 105, tuft.
tourn, 15, torrent.
tourned, 9, turned.
tranchis, 43 (trenchée); trenchis, 50, carvings, hewings.
trasse, 278, trace.
traunser, 126, across.
trayff, 320 (traillia); traylles (pl.), 329, cage.
trayttée, 182, treaty.
trenchanmt, 145, sharp.
trew, 1, true.
trews, 276, trace.
tronched, 286, truncheoned.
troussage, 132 (toussages), goods, bundles.
troussed, 141, prepared to leave.
trouth, 17, truth.
tricheman, 274, interpreter.
trusse, 335, pack.
trychery, 110, treachery.
trystefull, 305, sad.
tyres, 53, attire.

Valew, valewe, 41, value.
vaillamits, 122, valiantness.
vasselage, 145 (vaisselage), fealty; 200 (vaisselages), feats of arms (Cot.).
vergoyne, 285 (vergoyne), shame.
vergoyrnouse, 21, ashamed.
verto, 291; vertue, 200, strength.
very, 1, 25, veracious.
vitrupere, 89 (blame), reproach.
vmbrel, 83 (maielle), the shade for the eyes placed immediately over the sight of a helmet, and sometimes attached to the vizor (Halliwell).
vntfortune, 209, misfortune.
vnnethic, 202, 249, scarcely, nearly.
vupurveved, 121 (despourveu), unprovided.
vnyed, 131, united.
volynt, 207, will.
voyded, 209 (ostées), removed.
vypso-dounne, 25, upside down.
GLOSSARY.

vyageours, 362, travellers.
vylayne, 28, bondman.
vylonnye, 251, disgrace.
vynaigre, 114, vinegar.
vyreton, 269, arrow or bolt.
vysyted, 288, examined,
vytupere, 233 (vituperer), shame.

Wakked, 7, was awake.
waloped, 130; waloping, 21, gallop
warantyte, 200; waraunt, 136, protect.
warde, 62, wall of defence.
wardes, 170, guards.
wareyne, 99, preserve, enclosure.
wast, 18, waste.
waymentyng, 13, lamenting.
wedryng, 206, weather.
wele, 11, weal.
wende, 72; weneth, 2; wenyng, 29, weened, thought.
wende, 137, turned.
wepen, 25, weapon.
wered, 21, fought, warred, worried.
were, 129, wear.
werre, 65, war.
wers, 216, worse.
wery, 145, weary.
wete, 115; wot, 12; wote, 120, know.
whom, 52, home.
wood, 272, mad.
woode, 285, wood.
woo, 85, woful.
wood wroth, 247, madly angry.
worship, 111, respect.
worshipfully, 10, honorably.
wounderly, 5, wonderfully.
wraunt, 158, guarantee.
written, 17, written.
worthly, 68, worthy.
wysshyng, 177, wish.
wytted, 310, blamed.

Yaf, 181, gave.
yede, 7, 21, went.
yeft, 16, gift.
yl wyller, 211, ill-wisher.
ymage, 17, image.
ynough, 13, enough.
yonde, 70, yonder.
yonge, 4, young.
ypocras, 54, a spiced and sweetened wine.
yrons, 246 (fier), angry, fierce.
ytaken, 9, taken.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

PART I.—PERSONS.

Adam, page 3.
Alayn of Quyngant, 68, Raymondin's uncle.
Alexandryne, 369, concubine of Sersuell.
Anthenor, King of Antioch, 264; helps to form a league to fight Urian of Cyprus; is defeated, makes a treaty with Urian, and agrees to pay tribute, 292.

Anthono, 6, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; leaves home to succour Christine of Luxembourg, 190; marries Christine, 214; goes to the siege of Pourrencru, 347; captures the Duke of Freiburg, 353.

Appolyn, 283.
Aragon, King of, visits Raymondin at Montserrat, 388; is present at Raymondin's burial, 355.
Argeimount, Lord of, 218, a baron of Poitou, appointed by the Duke Anthony as captain of Luxembourg in his absence at the siege of Prague.
Aristote, 3; Aristotles, 20, quoted.
Asselyn, 183, Earl of Luxembourg, father of Christine.
Austereche, Duke of, fights against the King of Anssay, is defeated, 245.

Bandas, Caliph of, goes against Cyprus with the King of Brandimount, 164; attacks Lymasson, 167; he retreats on hearing of the damage to the fleet by the storm, 168; his fleet captured, 170; fights Urian, 175; makes his escape, 176; defeated at sea by the Master of Rhodes, 177; escapes in a small boat, 177; forms a league against the kings of Cyprus and Armenia, 264; defeated by the Christian forces, and is compelled to make a treaty, 292.

Bar, Duchesse of, Marie, 1, daughter of John le Bon, King of France; born Sept. 12, 1344; married 1364 to Robert, Duke of Bar; died 1404.
Barbary, Sultan of, nephew of King Brandimount, one of the league against Urian, King of Cyprus, 264; believes the league will be successful against the Lusignans on land, 272; loses his arm in a fight with Urian, 290; makes a treaty, 292.

Benedictus, Pope, 334; Benedicte; visited by Raymondin.
Bernadon, 354, son of Odon, Earl of Marche, marries the heiress of the lord of Cabyeres.
Berry, Duke of, John, 1, son of John le Bon, King of France; born Nov. 30, 1340; died June 15, 1416; commands John of Arras to compile the history of Melusine, 2; captures Lusignan Castle, 369.

Bertrand, 18, 102, son of Emery, Earl of Poitiers; succeeds to the
earldom, 40: grants Raymondin a piece of land, 41; goes to Raymondin's wedding, 49.
Bertrand, 214, son of Anthony and Cristine of Luxembourg.
Blanche, 18, daughter of Emery, Earl of Poitiers, goes to Raymondin's marriage, 52.
Brandimount in Tharse, King of, uncle of the Sultan of Damascus, 164; goes against Cyprus to avenge his nephew's death, 164; his fleet damaged by a storm, 165; swears to obtain victory or death, 170; fights Urian, 175; slain, 175.
Claude of Syon, 247, refuses to pay Raymondin his tribute, 246; is attacked by Geffray with the great Tooth, 247; captured, 254; is hung before Valbruyant Castle by Geffray's orders, 256.
Clerevaud, 252, third brother of Guyon of Syon Castle; rebels against Raymondin, 246; is captured by Geffray's squire, 253, and is hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.
Cordes, Admiral of, 268; Querdes, 246; joins the Caliph of Bandus to fight the King of Cyprus, 264; defeated at sea by Geffray, 270; slain by Geffray, 290.
Crystyne, 185, daughter and heiress of the Duke of Luxembourg; the King of Anssay sues for her hand, 183; she refuses because he is a widower, 183; her land attacked, 185; Anthony rescues her, 203; marries Anthony, 214.
Damascus, Sultan of, wants to marry the daughter of the King of Cyprus, 121; is refused because he will not be baptised, 121; goes to fight the king, 115; besieges Famagouse, 121; hears of the arrival of the Lusignans, 124; defeated by Urian, 133; throws a poisoned dart at the King of Cyprus, 136; slain by Urian, 145.
Damascus, Sultan of, jeers at the Christians' power, 277; gets frightened at Geffray, 280; attacks Geffray, 283; has to fly, 285; makes a treaty, 292.
David, King of Israel, 2, quoted.
Dupont, Josselyn, makes the heir of the King of Bretayne jealous of Henry of Leon, 66; is denounced by Raymondin, 72; summoned to appear before the King of Bretayne, 73; his treachery exposed, 75; confesses, 85; ordered to make restitution, 88; hung, 86.
Dysmas, 117, the good thief who was crucified with Jesus.
Earle of Vadosme at war with the Erle of Marche, 345; he has to make peace, and do homage for some of his land, 346.
Eglantyne, daughter and heiress of Frederick, King of Bohemia, 215; left an orphan, 227; marries Regnauld, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 240; becomes the mother of Olyphart, 242.
Elynas, King of Albany, a widower; when hunting he meets Pressine, a beautiful lady, 7; becomes enamoured of her, 9; proposes to marry her, 10; is accepted on condition that he promises to abstain from seeing her while in childbed, 11; has three daughters by her, Melusine, Melior, and Palantine, 11; breaks his promise, 11; his wife and daughters disappear, 12; his daughters shut him up in Brombelyoys, a Northumbrian mountain, 14; his death, burial, and tomb, 17.
Emery, Earl of Poitiers, 18, slain by accident at a boar hunt by his nephew Raymondin, 25.
Florye, daughter and heiress of the King of Little Armenia, falls in love with Guyon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, 162; left an orphan, 178; her father's dying wish is that she should marry Guyon, 179; Guyon marries her, 181.
Florymond, son of Nathas, King of Albany, 7; he has much trouble, 12.
Forests, Erle of, jokes his brother Raymondin about his marriage to Melusine, 56; makes him jealous of Melusine, 285; is slain by Geffray, 392.

Frederyk, King of Behayne, brother of the King of Ansay, 215; besieged by the Saracens at Prague, 215; slain by the King of Craco, 226.

Froymond, 245; Froymonde, 6; Froymont, 308, seventh son of Raymondin and Melusine, 104; the only perfectly formed child Melusine bears, 314; slain, a monk at Mailleses, 305; burnt in the Abbey of Mailleses by Geffray with the great Tooth, 309.

Gallafryn, King of Danette (Damiatta) has his head cut open by Geffray, 283.

Geffray with the great Tooth, sixth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; goes against Claud of Syon and his brethren, 247; hangs them before Valbruyant Castle, 256; pardons Guerin and Gerrard, 263; resolves to fight the Saracens, 264; arrives at Lymasson, 267; defeats the Saracens at sea, 270; plunders Jaffa, 277; captures Beyrouth, 278; kills Gallafryn of Damietta before Damascus, 283; fights the Sultan of Damascus, 287; kills the Admiral of Cordes, 290; the Saracens agree to pay tribute, 292; fights the giant Guedon, 302; slays him, 304; enraged at his brother Froymond becoming a monk, 307; burns the Abbey of Mailleses, his brother Froymond and all the monks, 304; repents, 310; goes to Brombelyo, 323; fights the giant Grimold, 324; follows him into a cave, 327; sees there the tomb of Elynashis grandfather, 326; slays Grimold, 329; learns his mother's fate, 331; slays the Earl of Forest, 332; becomes lord of Lusignan, 358; repents his many misdeeds, 329; goes to Rome and confesses to the Pope, 340; visits his father, 343; visits Reginald and Anthony, 345; rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses, 346; captures Freiburg, 351; fights the Duke of Austria, 353; attends his father's burial, 353; fights with a mysterious knight, 359; promises to build an hospital, 361.

Geruayse, 4 (? Gervaise of Tilbury) quoted.

Godart, 369, declares he has often seen a serpent on the walls of Lusignan Castle.

Great Carmen, 263.

Great Prior of Rhodes invites Urian and Guion to Rhodes, 116; goes to search for the Saracens, 117; cuts off the Saracen retreat, 174; defeats the Calaph of Bandas at sea, 177; sails to the Saracen fleet at Jaffa, 266.

Grymauld, 306; Grymauld, 323, a Northumbrian giant; Geffray with the great Tooth fights him, 324; and on the second day slays him, 329.

Guedon, 293, a giant in Garend, fights Geffray, 301; is slain, 304.

Guerard of Mountfrayn, nephew of Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 256; makes peace with Geffray, 263.

Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 255; submits to Geffray, 261, and is forgiven, 263.

Guion, third son of Raymondin and Melusine, 103; goes with his brother Urian to help the King of Cyprus against the Saracens, 109; receives a ring from Ermin, 126; visits the King of Cyprus, 150; goes once more against the Saracens, 160; driven on the coast of Armenia, 161; falls in love with Flory, the heiress of the King of Armenia, 163; defeats the Saracens, 166; is offered the crown of Armenia, 179; marries Flory, 180; has to defend himself against a Saracen league, 265.

Guyon, brother of Claud of Syon Castle, fights Geffray with the great Tooth, 249; is overcome...
and bound to a tree, 251; hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.

Henry of Leon, father of Raymondin, seneschal of the King of Bretayn, 65; slain by Josselin Dupont, 67.

Henry, son of Alain of Quyngan, and cousin of Raymondin, 70; obtains from Raymondin the Barony of Henry of Leon, 87.

Henry, 178, 257, son of Urian and Hermin of Cyprus.

Horrible, eighth son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 105; has three eyes, and is of a brutal disposition, 105; suffocated, 322.

Locher, 245, son of Anthony and Christine of Luxembourg.

Lymas, Captain of, visits the wounded King of Cyprus, 146; takes a message from him to Urian, 148.

Machomid, 277; Mahon, 275, Mahomet.

Melidee, 183; Metydee, 217, daughter of the King of Ans-say; betrothed to Bertrand, Anthony’s son, 245.

Melior, second daughter of Elinas and Pressine, 11; helps Melusine to shut her father up in the Mountain of Brombeloys, 14; as punishment is sent by her mother to keep a Sperohak in a castle in Armenia until the day of judgment, 15; she gives gifts to knights who can watch the Sperohak three days and nights without sleep, 362; has an adventure with a King of Armenia, 365; tells her history, 366.

Melusyne, 6; Melusigne, 11; Melusine of Albany, 52; eldest daughter of Elinas, King of Albany, and Pressine, 11; taken to Avalon, 12; told of her father’s broken promise, 13; shuts up her father in Brombeloys Mountain, 14; condemned to turn into a serpent every Saturday till she finds a man who will marry her and who promises to keep away from her on those days, 15; meets Raymondin at the Fountain of Soif, 27; wakens him, 29; tells his history, 31; asks him to marry her, 31; obtains a promise that he will not try to see her on Saturdays, 32; gives Raymondin advice, 33; her wedding, 53; thanks Raymondin for his friends’ presence and urges him to keep his promise, 57; she presents rich jewels to her guests, 59; builds Lusignan Castle, 62; gives birth to Urian, 65; advises Raymondin to go to Bretayn to obtain justice from Josselin Dupont, 65; prepares a welcome for her lord, 101; gives birth to Odon and Guyon, 103; builds Partenay and many towns and castles in Poitou and Guyenne, 103; gives birth to Anthony, Geoffray, Froymond, 104, 245, and Horrible, 105; gives permission to Urian and Guion to seek their fortunes abroad, 107; organizes their forces, 109; gives them parting advice, 110; raises an army for Anthony and Regnald, 188; gives them advice, 190; gives birth to Theodoric, 245; Raymondin is made jealous of her by his brother, 295; breaks his promise and visits her on a Saturday, 296; sees her bathing in the form of a serpent woman, 297; she forgives him and consoles him, 299; she hears of the burning of the Abbey of Mailleses by her son Geoffray, 312; her sorrow, 312; she goes to Raymondin and chides him for his over great grief, 313; he upbraids her, and calls her a false serpent, 314; she faints, and on reviving laments her fate, 316; she makes her testament, 318; bids Raymondin farewell, 319; is transformed into a serpent and disappears, 321; her obsequies, 321; visits her infant children, 322; her voice is heard lamenting Raymondin’s death, 354; is seen by Sersuell, Godart, 369, and Yuon of Wales, 370.
Nathas, 11, Mathas, 17, son of
Elynas, King of Albany, by his
first wife; he persuades Elynas to
break his promise to Pressine, 11;
succeeds his father, 12; marries
Ycry's, 12.

Ole, Duke of Bavaria, 223; goes
with Regnald and Anthony to
the siege of Prague, 225.

Odon, Edon, second son of Ray-
mondin and Melusine, birth, 102;
marries the daughter of the Earl
of Marche, 182; visits Regnald
and Anthony, 345; the Earl of
Vandosme does homage to him,
346.

Olyphart, 242, son of Regnald and
Eglantine of Bohemia.

Olyuyer, son of Josselin Dupont, 72;
fights Raymondin, 79; yields, 84;
condemned to be hanged, 86.

Palatyne, youngest daughter of
Elynas and Pressine, sent to the
Mountain of Guygo to watch the
treasure of Elinas until she was
released by a knight of her own
lineage, 6.

Philibert de Mommoret assists Gef-
fray in his fight against the rebel
Guion, 248, 252.

Pressine, meets Elynas, King of
Albany, 7; he is struck with her
beauty and declares his love, 10;
she consents to marry him on con-
dition that he promises not to look
at her when she is in childbed, 11;
her marriage, 11; hated by her
step-son Nathas, 11; has triplets,
Melusine, Melior, and Palatyne, 11;
King Elynas breaks his promise,
11; she leaves him, taking her
dughters with her to Avalon,
12; she shows them the land of
their birth from Mount Elyneos,
13; she tells them of their father's
broken promise, 13; she punishes
her daughters for ill-treating their
father, 15; she buries Elynas, and
builds him a noble tomb, 17.

Raymondin, son of Henry of Leon,
67, and nephew of the Earl of

Poyters, 19; goes on a boar-hunt
with his uncle, 21, whom he acci-
dentally kills, 25; he laments his
fortune and resolves to fly, 27;
at the Fountain of Soif he meets
three fairies, 27, and becomes
enamoured of the eldest, Melu-
sine, 29; he is surprised that
she knows his history, 30; she
asks him to marry her, and
promises to make him a great
lord, 31, on condition that he
will never ask to see her on a
Saturday, 32; she counsels him
to return to Poitiers, and advises
him what to do there, 34; he fol-
lows her advice, and all goes well,
36; she sends him back to Poitiers
to demand of the new Earl a gift
of as much land as he can en-
circle with a hart's hide, 39; he
obtains his land grant, 41; he in-
vites his friends to his wedding,
48; they are surprised at the
riches of his wife, 59; Lusignan
Castle built, 62; named, 64;
Melusine bears him a son named
Urian, 65; he goes to Brut Britain
to avenge an injury to his father,
Henry of Leon, 69; he fights
Oliver, son of Josselin Dupont, 83;
conquers, 84; obtains a decision
in his favour from the King of
Brut Britain, 88; on his return
home he is attacked by the friends
of Josselin Dupont, 94; he repels
the attack, and sends his enemies
to the King of Brut Britain, who
hangs them, 97; he finds a grand
castle on his return home, 100; is
met by Melusine, 101; she bears
him more sons, Odon, Guion, 104,
Anthony, Regnald, Geffray, 104,
Froimond, Horrible, 104, Theo-
doric, 246; a rebellion, in Gar-
ande, 246; he is made jealous by
his brother the Earl of Forest,
and breaks his promise to Melu-
sine by looking at her in her bath
on a Saturday, 296; he sees her
to be half woman and half ser-
pent, 297, and laments that he
has betrayed her, 297; he drives
his brother away for tempting
him, 297, and keeps secret what he has seen, 298; he is forgiven by Melusine, as he has been discreet, 299; he hears that Geffray has burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks, 310; he visits the Abbey, where he is overcome with anger and denounces Melusine as a spirit, 311; he upbraids her and calls her "a false serpent," 314; he repents and is forgiven, 315; Melusine changes into a serpent and disappears from him, 321; he has his son Horrible burnt, 321; he is full of sorrow at the loss of his wife, 321; he gives his lands to Geffray, 333, and goes on a pilgrimage to Rome, 334, where he confesses to the Pope and visits the Holy Places, 334; he then journeys to Montserrat in Aragon, 336, where he becomes a hermit, 337; his death, 354, and burial, 355.

Raymond, Earl of Forest, ninth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; suckled by Melusine after her disappearance from Raymondin, 322; is made Earl of Forest by Geffray, 332.

Regnauld, fifth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 104; goes with Anthony to the siege of Luxenbourg, 111; goes to the siege of Prague, 219; slays King Zelodyus; marries Eglantine of Bohemia, 240; Oliphart, his son, 242; goes to the siege of Pourrencre, 347.

St. Iohan Baptiste, 16.
Sersuill, Lieutenant, in charge of Lusignan Castle on behalf of the King of England, 369.
Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel in Asy, marries a fairy, to whom he gives a promise that he will never look at her when she is naked, 5; he breaks his promise, 5; his wife plunges her head into water, and changes into a serpent and disappears, 5.

Theodoryk, youngest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 246; nursed by his mother after she had left Raymondin, 322; becomes lord of Partenay, 333; left in charge of Geffray's lands, 339; marches against Freiburg, 347, 353; visits his father at Montserrat, 353.

Urian, eldest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 65; wishes to assist the King of Cyprus against the Sultan of Damascus, 109; Melusine provides an army transport and victuals, 109; sails from Rochelle, 115; fights the Sultan of Damascus at sea, 115; lands his army at Cyprus, 119; receives a jewel from Ermine, the heiress of the King of Cyprus, 126; defeats the Saracens, 132, 138; kills the Sultan of Damascus at Famagose, 146; knighted by the King of Cyprus, 153; is offered the heiress of Cyprus to wife, 155; accepts her, 156; his marriage, 157; becomes king, 158; kills King Brandemounct, 175; defeats the Saracen invaders, 176; his son Henry born, 178; defends himself against a new Saracen League.

Ycri, 12, wife of Nathas, King of Albany, and mother of Florymond.

Yuo of Wales, 370, sees Melusine in the form of a serpent.

Zelodyus, Zodyus, King of Craco, 227; besieges Frederick of Bohemia at Prague, 216; kills Frederick, 226, and ill-treats and burns his body, 227; Regnauld slays him, 233; the King of Aussay burns his body, 234.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

PART II.—PLACES.

Aeon, page 219, Aix-la-Chapelle.
Aisne, River, 193.
Albany, 6, 12.
Allemayne, 183; Almayn, 351.
Anssay, 183, may be read Aussay; Alsace.
Aragon, 336.
Ardane, 245, Ardenacs.
Ariean, Grete, 362, Armenia.
Armanye, 161; Armenye, Little Armenia.
Aruall, 89.
Asy, 5, ? Aisy in dept. of Aisne.
Aualon, 12.
Austerlyche, 345.
Auvergne, 1.
Bandas, 163, may be read Baudas, Baghdad.
Bar, Duchy of, 1.
Barselone, 336.
Barselone, 336.
Baruth, 160, V Beyrout.
Bereiz, 6; Bereiz, 17, 97, Brittany.
Brombelyoys, 14; Brombelyo, Mount, 32.
Brut Brytayne, 17, Brittany.
Cahyeres, 355.
Cardillak, 356.
Coles, 122.
Coloyne, 219.
Conlombyers, Forest of, 19, 37, 59, in dept. of Vienne.
Craco, 216.
Cruly, 161, Little Armenia.
Culbaston, 337, Colbató.
Cyprye, 105, Cyprus.
Damask, 164.
Danette, 276, Damietta.
Denmark, 242.
Duras, Castel, 346, on the Meuse.
Eglon, Castle, 103.
Eynfaces, Mount, 13.
England, 356.

Famagoce, 105, 146; Famagousta, Cyprus.
Fontayne of Soyf, 2, or Fontayne of Fayerye, 27.
Forest, 6; Forestz, 18, earldom.
Fraunce, 1.
Frequor, 350, Freiburg.
Garande, 246; garende, 287; guerrande, 89, country of the River Garonde.
Gascoynne, 104.
Guyenne, 104.
Guygo, Mount, 16, a mountain in Armenia.
Houerye, 225.
Hospytal of Rodes, 122.
Jalensy, 331.
Japhe, 265, Jaffa.
Jerusalem, 292.
Langgedok, 338, Languedoc.
Leffe, 217.
Leon, Castel, 67.
Lorayne, 183.
Lucenbourgh, 6, 183.
Lusygnen, 6; Lusignen, 17.
Limass, 146; Limasson, 117, Limassol, Cyprus.
Lynes, 103.
Mailleses, Abbey of, 6; Maillezes, 246.
Malesges, 162.
Marcelly, Castel, 331.
Masyeres, Bridge of, 245, ? Mézières.
Maxence, 103, Abbey of ? Maxent.
Melle, 103.
Merment, 292; Mervant, 103.
Mermount, 300, Tower of the giant Guedon.
Meuse, River, 194; Meuze, 245, 346.
Montferrat, 335, Montserrat in Aragon.
Montiers, Abbey of, 42.
Mouchyne, 243 ( Muchin), ? Munich.
Mountfrayn, 257.
Mountyoued, 331; Mountyouet, 306.
Murmich, 225.
Myrabel, 192.

Nantes, 73.
Nerbonne, 335.
Neufnoustier, Abbey of, 322.
Northumberland, 14, 306.
Norweghe, 242, Norway.
Nuenmarsh, 228 (? Nurenburg).
Nyort, 299.

Parpynen, 336, Perpignan.
Partenay, 6, 103.
Penbroheid, 355, Pembroke.
Penycence, 65.
Poitiers, 118; Poiters, 19; Poytiers.
Pons, 103.
Poterne Tower, 321.
Pourreneru, 346, (?) Porentuy, near Freiburg.
Poytow, 4; Poitow, 17; Poytwo, 41; Pouthieu, 293 (Ponthièn).
Praghe, 215, Prague.

Quercyn, 356.
Quyngant, 68, ? Guingamp.

Regnauld, Castel, 355.
Rochelle, 103.
Roussel, Chastel, in Asy, 5.
Ryne, River, 219, Rhine.

Saint Hylary of Poyters, church, 40.
Salesbury, 1.
Saynt Andrew, Port of, 168.
Saynt Mychel, Capell of, 343.
St. John of Rhodes, 263.
Sassymon, 98.
Soyf, Fontanye of, 37.
Sperhaak Castle, 16; Sperohak, 15.
Storyon, 73.
Syon Castle, 247.

Tallemondois, 104.
Tallemounte, 104.
Tharse, 164, in Asia Minor.
Thonlouse, 335.
Tryple, 278, ? Tripoli in Syria.
Tupple, 160 (Tupple), ? Tripoli, Syria.
Turcke, 145; Tureckye, 265.

Valbruyant Castle, 255.
Vannes, 98.
Vernon, 318.
Vertone, 193.
Vouant, 103.
Vtreght, 242, Utrechht.

Xaintes, 103.
Ycrys, 12.

Zeland, 242, Zealand.